Serfojee Rajah 183…

RULES AND REGULATIONS

FOR THE

FORMATIONS, FIELD EXERCISE

AND

MOVEMENTS

OF THE

FORCES

SERVING UNDER THE

Presidency of Fort St. George,

AS

ESTABLISHED BY GENERAL ORDERS

OF

December 1st, 1801.

Printed by Order.

2625
2625
2584

GOVERNMENT PRESS,
1801.

HEAD QUARTERS:–CHOULTRY PLAIN

1st DECEMBER, 1801.

G. O. By the Commander in Chief.

In order to establish throughout the Forces serving under the Presidency of Fort St. George that exact uniformity in the System of discipline which is indispensably necessary to Military operations, Lieutenant General Stuart is pleased to order that the Troops under his command shall henceforth conform in the strictest manner to the Rules, and Regulations, established by his Majesty, for the Formation, Field Exercise, and Movements, of His Majesty's forces.

It is also the Commander in Chief's pleasure that such parts of the system Ordered by the late Sir Archibald Campbell for the Formations, and Horse Drill, &c. of the Native Cavalry upon the Madras Establishment as are not treated of in the Rules, and Regulations, Established by His Majesty's Command for the Cavalry: as likewise the Rules, and Regulations, for the Sword Exercise ordered by His Majesty to be observed, and practised, by the Cavalry Corps in His Majesty's Service, shall be conformed to by the Cavalry Regiments serving under this Presidency.

The abovementioned Rules, and Regulations, for Cavalry, and Infantry will be circulated from the Adjutant General's Office; and it is the Commander in Chief's Order that on no account, or pretence, whatever, shall any deviation be made from the instructions contained in either.—Exclusive of the responsibility which is attached to Commandants of Corps for an exact observance of those Orders, the Commander in Chief will consider Officers holding General Commands, whether of Garrisons, Cantonments, Provinces or Divisions of the Army, as responsible that the Rules, and Regulations, now established, are most scrupulously adhered to by the Troops serving under their immediate orders.

The Commander in Chief is pleased to order further that every Officer of the Forces serving under the Presidency of Fort St. George, shall be provided with a Copy of these Rules and Regulations, established for the particular branch of the Army to which he belongs; and Commanding Officers are directed to enforce this Order in their respective Corps.

F. PIERCE,
Deputy Adjutant General of the Army

By His Majesty's Command.

Adjutant General's Office,

RULES AND REGULATIONS

FOR THE

FORMATIONS, FIELD-EXERCISE,

AND

MOVEMENTS,

OF

HIS MAJESTY's FORCES.

MADRAS:

PRINTED AT THE GOVERNMENT PRESS.

1802.

26

ADJUTANT GENERAL's OFFICE,
1st June, 1792.

HIS MAJESTY thinking it highly expedient and neceſſary, for the benefit of his ſervice at large, that one uniform ſyſtem of Field Exerciſe and Movement, founded on juſt and true principles, ſhould be eſtabliſhed, and invariably practiſed, throughout his whole Army, is therefore pleaſed to direct, that the Rules and Regulations approved of by His MAJESTY for this important purpoſe, and now detailed and publiſhed herewith, ſhall be ſtrictly followed and adhered to, without any deviation whatſoever therefrom :—And ſuch orders before given, as may be found to interfere with, or counteract, their effect and operation, are to be conſidered as hereby cancelled and annulled. It is his MAJESTY's farther pleaſure, that the General Officers appointed to review his troops ſhall be inſtructed to pay particular attention to the performance of every part of theſe Regulations, and to report their obſervations thereupon, for his MAJESTY's information, ſo that the exact uniformity required in all Movements may be attained and preſerved, and his Royal intentions thereby carried into full effect.

By his Majeſty's Command,

WILLIAM FAWCETT,
ADJUTANT GENERAL.

ADJUTANT GENERAL'S OFFICE,
1st May, 1798.

FIELD MARSHAL HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS THE DUKE OF YORK, Commander in Chief, is pleaſed to direct farther, that every Officer of Infantry ſhall be provided with a copy of theſe Regulations; and the Commanding Officers of Corps are to take care that this order be duly obſerved.

WILLIAM FAWCETT,
ADJUTANT GENERAL.

RULES AND REGULATIONS

FOR THE

FORMATION, FIELD-EXERCISE

AND

MOVEMENTS,

OF

HIS MAJESTY'S FORCES.

THE great object in view, from the following Regulations, is to eſtabliſh one general and juſt ſyſtem of movement, which directing and governing the operations of great, as well as of ſmall bodies of troops, is to be rigidly conformed to and practiſed by every regiment in HIS MAJESTY's ſervice.

To attain this important purpoſe, it is neceſſary to reconcile celerity with order; to prevent hurry, which muſt always produce confuſion, loſs of time, unſteadineſs, irreſolution, inattention to command, &c.; to enſure preciſion and correctneſs, by which alone great bodies will be able to arrive at their object in good order, and in the ſhorteſt ſpace of time; to inculcate and enforce the neceſſity of military dependance, and of mutual ſupport in action, which are the great ends of diſcipline; to ſimplify the execution, and to abridge the variety of movements, as much as poſſible, by adopting ſuch only as are neceſſary for combined exertions in corps, and that can be required or applied in ſervice, regarding all matters of parade and ſhow merely as ſecondary objects; to aſcertain to all ranks the part each will have to act in every change of ſituation that can happen, ſo that explanation may not retard at the moment when execution ſhould take place; to enable the commanding officer of any body of troops, whether great or ſmall, to retain the whole relatively as it were in his hand and management at every inſtant, ſo as to be capable of reſtraining the bad effects of ſuch ideas of independant and individual exertion as are viſionary and hurtful, and of directing them to their true and proper objects, thoſe of order, of combined effort, and of regulated obedience, by the united force of all which a well diſciplined enemy can only be defeated.

The

The rules hereafter laid down will be found few, ſimple and adapted to the underſtanding and comprehenſion of every individual; but they will require perfect attention in all ranks.—In the ſoldier, an equal and cadenced march, acquired and confirmed by habit, independant of muſic or ſound.—In the Officer, preciſion and energy of command; the preſervation of juſt diſtances; and the accurate leading of diviſions on given points of march and formation. Theſe circumſtances, together with the united exertions of all, will ſoon attain that preciſion of movement which is ſo eſſential, and without which valour alone will not avail.

Theſe REGULATIONS are divided into PARTS, and each part ſub-divided into HEADS, and *ſections* of explanation.

PART I.

OF THE DRILL OR INSTRUCTION OF THE RECRUIT.

The ſeveral articles of Inſtruction, and the progreſſion and manner in which they are to be taught, are explained in 4 *Sections*.

PART II.

OF THE PLATOON OR COMPANY.

The Inſtruction, and various operations of the company which enable it to act in battalion, are explained in 265 *Sections*.

PART III.

OF THE BATTALION.

The ſeveral operations, changes of poſition, and movements neceſſary for the battalion, when acting ſingly, or in line with others, are explained in 108 *Sections*.

PART IV.

OF THE LINE.

The principal circumſtances relative to the movements of a conſiderable line are explained in 32 *Sections*.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

RECRUIT.

Without Arms.

	SECT.		Page
Each Recruit separately instructed	1.	*Position of the soldier.*	2
	2.	*Standing at ease.*	2
	3.	*Turning eyes*	2
	4.	*The facings.*	2
	5.	*Position in marching.*	3
	6.	*Ordinary step.*	3
	7.	*The halt.*	3
	8.	*Oblique step.*	3
Three or four recruits formed at open files.	9.	*Dressing when halted.*	4
	10.	*Stepping out.*	4
	11.	*Mark time.*	5
	12.	*Stepping short.*	5
	13.	*Changing the feet.*	5
	14.	*The side or closing step.*	5
	15.	*Back step.*	5
	16.	*The quick step.*	6
Six or eight Recruits in one rank, at close files.	17.	*The quickest step.*	6
	18.	*File marching.*	7
	19.	*Wheeling a single rank from the halt.*	7
	20.	*Wheeling a single rank from the march.*	8
	21.	*Wheeling a single rank backward.*	8
	22.	*Wheeling a single rank, on a moveable pivot.*	8

With Arms.

	SECT.		Page
Each recruit.	23.	*Position of the soldier.*	9
	24.	*Different motions of the firelock.*	9
Six or Eight Files of Recruits, in a Squad.	25.	*Attention in forming the squad.*	9
	26.	*Open order.*	10
	27.	*Close order.*	10
	28.	*Manual order.*	10
	29.	*Platoon exercise.*	10
	30.	*Firings.*	10
	31.	*Marching to the front and rear.*	10
	32.	*Open, and close order on the march.*	11
	33.	*March in file to a flank.*	11
	34.	*Wheeling in file*	12

SECT.

Six or Eight Files of Recruits, in a Squad.

35. *Oblique marching in front.*
36. *Oblique marching in file.*
37. *Wheeling forward from the halt.*
38. *Wheeling backward.*
39. *Wheeling from the march, on a halted, and moveable pivot.*
40. *Stepping out, stepping short, mark time, changing feet, the side step, stepping back.*

END OF FIRST PART.

PART II.

PLATOON OR COMPANY.

41. *Formation of the Platoon.*
42 *Marching to the front.*
43. *The side step.*
44. *The back step.*
45. *File Marching.*
46. *Wheeling from a halt.*
47. *Wheeling forward by sub-divisions from line.*
48. *Wheeling backward by sub-divisions from line.*
49. *Marching on an alignement in open column of sub-divisions.*
50. *Wheeling into line from open column of sub-divisions.*
51. *Sub-divisions wheeling into a new alignement.*
52. *Sub-divisions wheeling into a new direction on a moveable pivot.*
53. *Countermarch by files.*
54. *Wheeling on the center of the platoon.*
55. *Oblique marching.*
56. *Increasing and diminishing the front of an open column halted.*
57. *Increasing and diminishing on the march.*
58. *Sub-divisions pass a defile, by breaking off files.*
59. *Marching in quick time.*
60. *Forming to the front from file.*
61. *Forming from file to either flank.*
62. *To form either flank from column of sub-divisions.*
63. *March in echellon by sections.*
64. *From three ranks, forming in to ranks.*
65. *From two ranks, forming into three ranks.*
66, 67, 68, 69. *Exercise of the company.*

END OF SECOND PART.

CONTENTS.

PART III.

BATTALION.

Sect. — Page.

FORMATION OF THE COMPANY. 26
FORMATION OF THE BATTALION. 27
GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES OF MOVEMENT. 30
74. *Commands.* - - 30
75. *Distance of files.* - 30
76. *Distance of ranks.* - 31
77. *Depth of formation.* - 31
78. *Music and drums.* - 32
79. *Marching.* - - 32
80. *Wheeling.* - - 33
81. *Movements.* - - 35
82. *Points of march.* - 35
83. *The alignement.* - 35
84. *Points of formation.* - 36
85. *Dressing.* - - 37

OPEN COLUMN. - 38
BATTALION OPEN COLUMN. - 39
ASSEMBLY, &c. OF THE BATTALION. - - 42
86. *Exercise of the battalion.* - 42

ENCREASE OR DIMINISH FRONT OF COLUMN. - - 45
87. *Encrease* } *On the march* - 46
88. *Diminish* } 46
89. *Diminish* } *When halted* - 47
90. *Encrease* } 47

PASSAGE OF BRIDGE OF DEFILE FROM LINE. 47
91. *To the front.* - - 47
92. *To the rear.* - - 48
93. *Marching off in column from one flank towards another.* - 48
94. MARCH OF THE BATTALION IN FILE. 49
95. *General formations from file.* - 49
96. *Formation in open column from file.* - 50

COUNTER-MARCH BY FILES. - 50
97. *Counter-march* { *from both flanks.* 51
98. { *from the center.* 51
99. *Counter-march by divisions.* - 51

COUNTER-MARCH IN COLUMN. - 52
100. *Divisions by files.* - 52
101. *The column by divisions, from the rear* 53
102. *By wings standing, and exchanging ground.* - 53
103. *By wings passing thro' each other.* 54

GENERAL MODES OF CHANGE OF POSITION - 54
104. *The several changes of position of a battalion.* - 55
105. *The several entrys on a new line, in open column.* - 56

WHEEL AND MARCH FROM LINE INTO COLUMN, AND FROM COLUMN INTO LINE. - 58
106. 107. *Wheel forward into open line.* 58
108. 109. *Wheel back into open column.* - 59
110. *Wheel into column of sub-divisions.* 59
111. *March in prolongation of the line.* 60
112. 113. *Change of direction on a moveable pivot.* - 60
114. *Wheel on a halted pivot into an alignement.* - 60
115. 116 117. *Wheel of open column into an alignement,* - 60 61 61
118. *Halt, and wheel up of column into line.* - - 62
119. *Wheel of sub-division column into line.* - 63

CHANGES OF POSITION IN OPEN COLUMN FROM LINE. - 64
120. *On a flank halted division.* { *to the front.* 64
121. { *to the rear.* 64

Sect. Page.

122. *On a central division halted.* 65
123. *To a distant position, by filing divisions* 65
124. *When the open column arrives where its head is to remain.* 67
125. *When the open column arrives where its rear is to remain.* 67
126. *When the open column arrives where a central division is to remain.* 67
127. *When the open column enters the new line by the echellon march.* 68
128. *When the divisions of the open column pass each other to form on the line.* 68
129. *When the open column forms in line by the eventail movement.* 69

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE OPEN COLUMN.

130 *Change of position halted.* *on a front* *division* 69
131 *on a central* *division* 69
132 *on a rear* *division* 70
133 *Change to a distant position.* *In front* 70
134 *In rear* 70
135 *To either flank* 70
136 *Formation to flank not the pivot one* 70

CLOSE COLUMN 71

FORMATION OF CLOSE COLUMN FROM LINE. 71

137 *Before or behind a flank company* 71
138 *On a central company* 72
139 *March of column to a flank* 72
140 *March of column to the front* 73
141 *The column halted, takes a new direction* 73
142 *The column marching changes direction* 73
143 *Counter-marching in close column* 73

DEPLOYMENT INTO LINE.

CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES DEPLOYS.

144 *On the front* *division.* 74
145 *On the rear* *division.* 75
146 *On a central* *division.* 75
147 *Column of companies, forms column of two companies.* 75

DEPLOYS.

148 *On the front* *division.* 76
149 *On the rear* *division.* 76
150 *On a central* *division.* 77

OBLIQUE DEPLOYMENTS.

151 *On an oblique line* *advanced* 77
152 *On an oblique line* *retired* 78
153 *Formation of the line in the prolongation of the flank of the column, and on any division.* 78

ECHELLON. 78

CHANGES OF POSITION BY COMPANY ECHELLONS. 78

154 *Wheel of battalion into echellon.* 80
155 *March and halt into echellon.* 81
156 *Wheel back into parallel line.* 81
157 *March up into oblique line.* 82
158 *Formation in line from open column by the echellon march.* 82
159 *The battalion thrown* *forward* *on a flank company* 83
160 *The battalion thrown* *backward* *on a flank company* 84
161 *Change of position, on a central company* 84
162 *Change of position on a distant point* 85
163 *March of direct echellon to the front and formation in line.* 86

ECHELLON CHANGES BY SUBDIVISIONS.

164 *If the battalion is halted.* 86
165 *If the battalion is marching in line.* 87

MARCH OF THE BATTALION IN LINE. 88

166 *When the battalion advances* 89
167 *When the battalion halts, and dresses.* 91
168 *When the battalion retires.* 91
169 *Changes of direction when in movement* 92

PASSAGE OF OBSTACLE.

170 *When front of obstacle is considerable.* 93
171 *When the obstacle encreases* 94
172 *When the obstacle is passed or diminishes* 94
173 *When the battalion fires in passing.* 95
174 *Passing the obstacle by files.* 95
175 *Passing a wood by companies filing. Passing thro' another battalion.* 95
176 *Retiring by alternate companies.* 96
177 *Advancing or retiring by half battalions, and firing.* 97
178 *When the battalion forms a square or oblong.* 98
March by a face.
March by an angle. 98
Oblong formed from open column of march 99
March in open ground, prepared against cavalry. 99

End of Third Part.

Inspection or review.

Light Infantry.

CONTENTS.

PART IV.

THE LINE.

Sect.		Page.
	MOVEMENTS OF A LINE.	101
	OPEN COLUMN OF THE LINE.	103
	GENERAL CHANGES OF POSITION OF A LINE.	104
179.	*Taking up lines of march and formation.*	117
180.	*Open column, enters, marches, forms on an alignement.*	118
181.	*Formation in line, on detached adjutants from column, or assembly in mass of battalions.*	120
182.	*Entry and formation of the rear battalions of a column, on an alignement, when the head ones have halted on it.*	123
183.	*Changes of position.* *On a fixed flank division.*	123
184.	*Changes of position.* *On a fixed central division.*	123
185.	*Changes of position.* *On a moving central division.*	124
186.	*Change of position, by the vourst, or quick movement.*	125
	CLOSE COLUMN OF THE LINE.	126
187.	*From column of march, to form close column, and line.*	126
188.	*Oblique deployments.*	128
189.	*When battalion close column forms square.*	128
190.	*Several close columns, formed from the same line.*	128
191.	*Several close columns form in one line.*	129
192.	*Two columns exchange places.*	129
193.	*Two columns form in one line.*	129
194.	*Two columns form in two lines.*	130
	ECHELLON MOVEMENTS OF THE LINE.	130
195	*Oblique position taken by the echellon march.*	130
196	*When from an advance in echellon, the line changes position inwards.*	131
197.	*When echellons advance direct from flank of line to the front.*	131
198.	*When a line formed on enemy's flank, attacks in echellon.*	132
199.	*When a line formed oblique to an enemy, attacks from a flank.*	133
200.	*Echellon taken from* { *Parallel* / *Oblique* / *Column* } *Position.*	133
	Change of leading flank during Echellon movements.	133
	MARCH OF THE LINE IN FRONT.	134
201.	*Advance in line.*	135
202.	*Halt, and dressing of the line.*	137
203.	*Retire in line.*	138
	Lengthening the line to a flank.	138
204.	*When a line passes a bridge, or defile.*	139
205.	*When a line advances or retires by half battalions.*	140
206.	*Firing in line.*	141
207.	*Square of oblong of several battalions.*	142
	CHEQUERED RETREAT OF THE LINE.	142
	Oblique position taken.	143
	Retreat of two lines.	143

CONTENTS.

Sect. Page.

PASSAGE OF LINES. - - - - 144

When the second line advances to relieve the first. - - 144
When the second line remains posted. - - - - 144
When a height is to be crowned. - - - - 144
When a wing is thrown back. - - - - - 145
When a wing is refused. - - - - - 145

SECOND LINES. - - - - - - 145

208. *Two lines change position on a central point of the first.* - - 146
209. *Two lines change position* { *forward* / *backward* } *on a flank of the first.* - 146, 147
210. *Two lines in march change to a flank position* { *forward* / *backward* } *by an alteration of their direction.* - 148
211.

COLUMN OF ROUTE, - - - - - 149

General Remarks. - - - - - 151

PART I.

INSTRUCTION OF THE RECRUIT.

THE ſeveral heads of inſtruction for recruits are to be attended to, and followed, in the manner and order here ſet forth. It requires in the inſtructors to whom this duty is intruſted, and who are to be anſwerable for the execution of it, the moſt unremitting perſeverance, and accurate knowledge of the part each has to teach, and a clear and conciſe manner of conveying his inſtructions; but with a firmneſs that will command from men a perfect attention to the directions he is giving them. He muſt allow for the weak capacity of the recruit; be patient, not rigorous, where endeavour and good-will are evidently not wanting: quickneſs is not at firſt to be required, it is the reſult of much practice. If officers & inſtructors are not critically exact in their own commands, and in obſerving the execution of what is required from others, ſlovenlineſs muſt take place, labour be ineffectual, and the end proposed will never be attained.

The recruit muſt be carried on progeſſively; he ſhould comprehend one thing before he proceeds to another.—In the firſt circumſtance of poſition, firelock, fingers, elbows, &c. are to be juſtly placed by the inſtructor; when recruits are more advanced, they ſhould not be touched; but from the example ſhewn, and the directions preſcribed, be taught to correct themſelves when ſo admoniſhed. Recruits ſhould not be kept too long at any particular part of their exerciſe, ſo as to fatigue or make them uneaſy; and marching without arms ſhould be much intermixed with the firelock inſtruction—fife, or muſic, muſt on no account be uſed; but the recruit is to be confirmed by habit alone in that cadence of ſtep which he is afterwards to maintain in his march to the enemy, in ſpite of every variety of noiſe and circumſtance, that may tend to derange him.

In the manner hereafter preſcribed, muſt each recruit be trained ſingle, and in ſquad; nor until he is ſteadied in theſe, and in other points of his duty, is he to be allowed to join the Battalion; for one aukward man, imperfect in his march, or whoſe perſon is diſtorted, will derange his diviſion, and of courſe operate on the battalion and line in a ſtill more conſequential manner. Every ſoldier, on his return from long abſence, muſt be re-drilled before he is permitted to act in the ranks of his company.

Remarks upon the neceſſity, utility, or application, of what is hereafter preſcribed, are much as poſſible avoided in the firſt and ſecond parts: ſuch remarks properly belong to the third, or Battalion part, with the principles of whoſe movements it muſt be ſuppoſed an inſtructor is ſufficiently acquainted.

WITHOUT ARMS.

S. 1. *Position of the Soldier.*

THE equal squareness of the shoulders & body to the front is the first and great principle of the position of a soldier.—The heels must be in a line, and closed.—The knees straight, without stiffness.—The toes a little turned out, so that the feet may form an angle of about 60 degrees.—Let the arms hang near the body, but not stiff, the flat part of the hand and little finger touching the thigh; the thumbs as far back as the seams of the breeches—The elbows and shoulders to be kept back; the belly rather drawn in, and the breast advanced, but without constraint; the body upright, but inclining forward, so that the weight of it principally bears on the fore part of the feet; the head to be erect, and neither turned to the right nor left.

The position in which a soldier should move, determines that in which he should stand still.—Too many methods cannot be used to supple the recruit, and banish the air of the rustic. But that excess of setting up, which stiffens the person, and tends to throw the body backward instead of forward, is contrary to every true principle of movement, and must therefore be most carefully avoided.

N. B. The words on the Margin, which are printed in *Italicks*, are the words of command to be given by the instructor.

S. 2. *Standing at Ease.*

Stand at Ease. — On the words *Stand at Ease*, the right foot is to be drawn back about 6 inches, and the greatest part of the weight of the body brought upon it; the left knee a little bent; the hands brought together before the body; but the shoulders to be kept back and square; the head to the front, and the whole attitude without constraint.

Attention. — On the word *Attention*, the hands are to fall smartly down the outside of the thighs; the right heel to be brought up in a line with the left; and the proper unconstrained position of a soldier immediately resumed.

When standing at ease for any considerable time in cold weather, the men may be permitted, by command, to move their limbs; but without quitting their ground, so that upon the word *Attention*, no one shall have materially lost his dressing in the line.

S. 3. *Eyes to the Right.*

Eyes Right. *Eyes Left.* *Eyes Front.* — On the words, *Eyes to the Right*, glance the eyes to the right, with the slightest turn possible of the head. At the words, *Eyes to the Left*, cast the eyes in like manner to the left. On the words, *Eyes to the Front*, the look, and head, are to be directly to the front, the habitual position of the soldier.

These motions are only useful on the wheeling of divisions, or when dressing is ordered after a halt; and particular attention must be paid in the several turnings of the eyes, to prevent the soldier from moving his body, which should be preserved, perfectly square to the front.

S. 4. *The Facings.*

In going through the facings, the left heel never quits the ground; the body must rather incline forward, and the knees be kept straight.

To the Right face.
1ſt—Place the hollow of the right foot ſmartly againſt the left heel, keeping the ſhoulders ſquare to the front.
2d—Raiſe the toes, and turn to the right on both heels.

To the Left face.
1ſt—Place the right heel againſt the hollow of the left foot, keeping, the ſhoulders ſquare to the front.
2d—Raiſe the toes, and turn to the left on both heels.

To the Right about face.
1ſt—Place the ball of the right toe againſt the left heel, keeping the ſhoulders ſquare to the front.
2d—Raiſe the toes, and turn to the Right about on both heels.
3d—Bring the right foot ſmartly back in a line with the left.

To the Left about face.
1ſt—Place the right heel againſt the ball of the left foot, keeping the ſhoulders ſquare to the front.
2d—Raiſe the toes, and turn to the left about on both heels.
3d—Bring up the right ſmartly in a line with the left.

The greateſt preciſion muſt be obſerved in theſe facings, for if they are not exactly executed, a body of men after being properly dreſſed, will loſe their dreſſing, on every ſmall movement of facings.

S. 5. Poſition in Marching.

March. In marching, the ſoldier muſt maintain, as much as poſſible, the poſition of the body as directed in Sect. I. He muſt be well balanced on his limbs. His arms and hands, without ſtiffneſs, muſt be kept ſteady by his ſides, and not ſuffered to vibrate. He muſt not be allowed to ſtoop forward, ſtill leſs to lean back. His body muſt be kept ſquare to the front, and thrown rather more forward in marching than when halted, that it may accompany the movement of the leg and thigh, which movement muſt ſpring from the haunch. The ham muſt be ſtretched, but without ſtiffening the knee. The toe a little pointed, and kept near the ground, ſo that the ſhoe-ſoles may not be viſible to a perſon in front. The head to be kept well up, ſtraight to the front, and the eyes not ſuffered to be caſt down. The foot, without being drawn back, muſt be placed flat on the ground.

S. 6. Ordinary Step.

The length of each pace, from heel to heel, is 30 inches, and the recruit muſt be taught to take 75 of theſe ſteps in a minute, without tottering and with perfect ſteadineſs.

The *ordinary* ſtep being the pace on all occaſions whatever, unleſs greater celerity be particularly ordered, the recruit muſt be carefully trained, and thoroughly inſtructed in this moſt eſſential part of his duty, and perfectly made to underſtand, that he is to maintain it for a long period of time together, both in line and in column, and in rough as well as ſmooth ground, which he may be required to march over. This is the ſloweſt ſtep which a recruit is taught, and is alſo applied in all movements of parade.

S. 7. The Halt.

Halt. On the word *Halt,* let the rear foot be brought upon a line with the advanced one, ſo as to finiſh the ſtep which was taken when the command was given.

N. B. The words *Halt, wheel—Halt, front—Halt, dreſs*—are each to be conſidered as one word of command, and no pauſe made betwixt the parts of their execution.

S. 8. Oblique Step.

To the Left, Oblique March. When the recruit has acquired the regular length and cadence of the ordinary pace, he is to be taught the oblique ſtep. At the words, *To the Left, Oblique—March,* without altering his perſonal ſquareneſs of poſition, he will, when he is to ſtep with his left foot, point, and carry it forward 19 Inches, in the diagonal line, to the left, which gives about 13 Inches to the ſide, and about 13 Inches to the front. On the word *Two,* he will bring his right foot 30 Inches forward, ſo that the right heel be placed 13 Inches directly before the left one. In this poſſeſſion he will pauſe, and, on the word *Two,* continue to march, as before directed, by advancing his left foot 19 Inches, pauſing at each ſtep till confirmed in his poſition ; it being eſſenti-ally

Fig. 1. ally necessary to take the greatest care that his shoulders be preserved square to the front. From the combination of these two movements, the general obliquity gained will amount to an angle of about 25 degrees. When the recruit is habituated to the lengths and directions of the step, he must be made to continue the march, without pausing, with firmness, and in the cadence of the ordinary pace, viz. 75 steps in a minute.

As all marching (the side step excepted) invariably begins with the left foot, whether the obliquing commences from the halt, or on the march, the first diagonal step taken is by the leading foot of the side inclined to, when it comes to its turn, after the command is pronounced.

The squareness of the person, and the habitual cadenced step, in consequence, are the great directions of the oblique, as well as of the direct, march.

Each recruit shall be separately and carefully instructed in the principles of the foregoing eight sections of the drill. They form the basis of all military movements.

Three or four recruits will now be formed in one rank, at very open files, and instructed as follows.

S. 9. *Dressing when halted.*

Dress. Dressing is to be taught equally by the left as by the right. On the word *Dress*, each individual will cast his eyes to the point to which he is ordered to dress, with the smallest turn possible of the head, but preserving the shoulders and body square to their front. The whole person of the man must move as may be necessary, and bending backward or forward, is not to be permitted. He must take short quick steps, thereby gradually and exactly to gain his position, and on no account be suffered to attempt it by any sudden or violent alteration, which must infallibly derange whatever is beyond him. The faces of the men, and not their breasts or feet, are the line of dressing. Each man is to be able just to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him.

In dressing, the eyes of the men are always turned to the officer, who gives the word *Dress*, and who is posted at the point by which the body halts; and who from that point corrects his men, on a point at or beyond his opposite flank.

The faults to be avoided, and generally committed by the soldier in dressing, are, passing the line; the head too forward, and body kept back; the shoulders not square; the head turned too much.

Two, or more men, being moved forward, or backward, a given number of paces, and placed in the new line, and direction, the following commands will be given.

By the *Right, forward--Dress.*
By the *Right, backward--Dress.*
By the *Left, forward--Dress.*
By the *Left, backward--Dress.*

Eyes Front. As soon as the dressing is accomplished, the words *Eyes front*, will be given, that heads may be replaced, and remain square to the front.

No rank, or body, ought ever to be dressed, without the person on its flank appointed to dress it, determining, or at least supposing a line, on which the rank, or body, is to be formed, and for that purpose taking as his object the distant flank man, or a point beyond such flank, or a man thrown out on purpose; — dressing must then be made gradually, and progressively, from the fixed point, towards the distant flank one; and each man successively, but quickly, must be brought up into the true line, so as to become a new point, from whence the person directing proceeds in the correction of the others; and he himself, when so directing, must take care that his person, or his eyes at least, be in the true line, which he is then giving.

S. 10. *Stepping out.*

Step out. The squad marches as already directed in ordinary time. On the word *Step out*, the recruit must be taught to lengthen his step to 33 inches, by leaning forward a little, but without altering the cadence.

This

This ſtep is neceſſary when a temporary exertion in line, and to the front, is required; and is applied both to ordinary and quick time.

S. 11. *Mark time.*

Mark Time.
Ordinary Step.

On the words *Mark Time*, the foot then advancing completes its pace; after which the cadence is continued, without gaining any ground, but alternately throwing out the foot, and bringing it back ſquare with the other. At the words *Ordinary Step*, the uſual pace of 30 inches will be taken.

This ſtep is neceſſary marching in line, when any particular battalion is advanced, and has to wait for the coming up of others.

S. 12. *Stepping ſhort.*

Step Short.
Ordinary Step.

On the word, *Step Short*, the foot advancing will finiſh its pace, and afterwards each recruit will ſtep as far as the ball of his toe, and no farther, until the word *Ordinary Step* be given, when the uſual pace of 30 inches is to be taken.

This Step is uſeful when a momentary retardment of either a battalion in line, or of a diviſion in column, ſhall be required.

S. 13. *Changing the Feet.*

Change Feet.

To change the Feet in marching, the advancing foot completes its pace, the ball of the other is brought up quickly to the heel of the advanced one, which inſtantly makes another ſtep forward, ſo that the cadence may not be loſt.

This may be required of an individual, who is ſtepping with a different foot from the reſt of his diviſion; in doing which he will in fact take two ſucceſſive ſteps with the ſame foot.

S. 14. *The ſide or cloſing Step.*

The ſide or cloſing ſtep is performed from the halt in ordinary time, by the following commands.

Cloſe to the Right—March.
Cloſe to the Left—March.

Cloſe to the Right, March.
Halt.

In cloſing to the right, on the word *March*, eyes are turned to the right, and each man carries his right foot about 12 inches directly to his right (or if the files are cloſed, to his neigbour's left foot), and inſtantly brings up his left foot, till the heel touches his right heel; he then pauſes, ſo as to perform this movement in ordinary time, and proceeds to take the next ſtep in the ſame manner; the whole with perfect preciſion of time, ſhoulders kept ſquare, knees not bent, and in the true line on which the body is formed.—At the word *Halt*, the whole halt, turn their eyes to the front, and are perfectly ſteady. (Vide S. 43.)

S. 15. *Back Step.*

Step back. March.
Halt.

The *Back Step* is performed in the ordinary time and length of pace, from the halt, on the command *Step back,—March*,—the recruit muſt be taught to move ſtrait to the rear, preſerving his ſhoulders ſquare to the front, and his body erect.—On the word *halt*, the foot in the front muſt be brought back ſquare with the other.

A few paces only of the back ſtep can be neceſſary at a time.

S. 16. *The Quick Step.*

Quick, March. The cadence of the ordinary pace having become perfectly habitual to the recruits, they are now to be taught to march a quick time, which is 108 ſteps in the minute, each of 30 inches, making 270 feet in a minute.—The command *Quick, March*, being given with a pauſe between them; the word *Quick*, is to be conſidred as a caution, and the whole to remain perfectly ſtill and ſteady; on the word *March*, they ſtep off with the left feet, keeping the body in the ſame poſture, and the ſhoulders ſquare to the front; the foot to be lifted off the ground, that it may clear any ſtones, or other impediments in the way, and to be thrown forward, and placed firm; the whole of the ſole to touch the ground, and not the heel alone; the knees are not to be bent, neither are they to be ſtiffened, ſo as to occaſion fatigue, or conſtraint.—The arms to hang with eaſe down the outſide of the thigh; a very ſmall motion to prevent conſtraint may be permitted; put not to ſwing out, and thereby occaſion the leaſt turn, or movement of the ſhoulder; the head is to be kept to the front, the body well up, and the utmoſt ſteadineſs to be preſerved.

This is the pace to be uſed in all *filings* of diviſions from line into column, or from column into line; and by battalion columns of manœuvre when independently changing poſition.—It may occaſionally be uſed in the column of march of ſmall bodies, when the route is ſmooth, and no obſtacles occur; but in the march in line of a conſiderable body it is not be required, and very ſeldom in a column of manœuvre; otherwiſe fatigue muſt ariſe to the ſoldier, and more time will be loſt by hurry and inaccuracy, than is attempted to be gained by quickneſs.

The word *March*, given ſingly, at all times denotes that *ordinary* time is to be taken; when the *quick march* is meant, that word will precede the other.—The word *March* marks the beginning of movements from the *halt*; but is not given when the body is in previous motion.

S. 17. *The Quickeſt Step.*

The *quickeſt time*, or *wheeling march*, is 120 ſteps of 30 inches each, or 300 feet in the minute. The directions already given for the march in quick time relate equally to the march in quickeſt time.

This is applied chiefly to be purpoſe of wheeling, and is the rate at which all bodies accompliſh their *wheels*, the outward file ſtepping 33 inches, whether the wheel is from line into column, during the march in column, or from column into line.—In this *time*, alſo ſhould diviſions double, and move up, when paſſing obſtacles in line; or when in the column of march, the front of diviſions is encreaſed, or diminiſhed.

Three or four recruits in one rank, with intervals of 12 inches between them, ſhould be practiſed in the different ſteps, that they may acquire a firmneſs and independence of movement.

Many different times of march muſt not be required of the Soldier.—Theſe three muſt ſuffice, ORDINARY TIME (75 ſteps in the minute) QUICK TIME (108 in the minute), WHEELING, or QUICKEST TIME (120 in the minute).

PLUMMETS, which vibrate the required times of march in a minute, are of great utility and can alone prevent or correct uncertainty of movement; they muſt be in the poſſeſſion of, and conſtantly referred to by, each inſtructor of a ſquad,—the ſeveral lengths of plummets, ſwinging the times of the different marches in a minute, are as follows:

		In.	Hund.
Ordinary time, - - - - - - - - -	75 ſteps in the minute, - -	24	96
Quick time, - - - - - - - - - -	108 - - - - - - - - -	12	03
Quickeſt, or wheeling time, - - - - -	120 - - - - - - - - -	9	80

A muſket ball ſuſpended by a ſtring which is not ſubject to ſtretch, and on which are marked the different required lengths, will anſwer the above purpoſe, may be eaſily acquired, and ſhould be frequently compared with an accurate ſtandard in the Adjutants, or Serjeant

Serjeant Major's possession. The length of the Plummet is to be measured from the point of suspension to the center of the ball.

Accurate distances of steps must also be marked out on the ground, along which the Soldier should be practised to march, and thereby acquire the just length of pace.

Six or eight recruits will now be formed in a rank, at close files, having a steady, well-drilled Soldier on their flank to lead,— and FILE MARCHING may be taught them.

S. 18. *File Marching.*

To the--face. The recruits must first *face*, and then be instructed to cover each other exactly in file, so that the head of the man immediately before, may conceal the heads of all the others in his front.—The strictest observance of all the rules for marching is particularly necessary in marching by files, which is first to be taught at the *ordinary time*, and afterwards in *quick time.*

March. On the word *March*, the whole are immediately to step off together, gaining at the very first step 30 inches, and so continuing each step without encreasing the distance betwixt each recruit, every man locking or placing his advanced foot on the ground, before the spot from whence his preceding man had taken up his,--no looking down, nor leaning backward is to be suffered, on any pretence whatever,--the leader is to be directed to march straight forward to some distant object given him for that purpose, and the recruits made to cover one another during the march, with the most scrupulous exactness,--great attention must be paid to prevent them from marching with their knees bent, which they will be very apt to do at first, from an apprehension of treading upon the heels of those before them.

S. 19. *Wheeling of a single rank, in ordinary Time from the Halt.*

Right Wheel. At the word, *To the Right Wheel*, the man on the right of the rank faces to the right; on the word *March*, they step off together, the whole turning their eyes to the left (the wheeling flank), except the man on the left of the rank, who looks inwards; and, during the wheel, becomes a kind of base line for the others to conform to, and maintain the uniformity of front.---

March. The outward wheeling man always lengthens his step to 33 inches,---the whole observe the same time, but each man shortening his step in proportion as he is nearer to the standing flank on which the wheel is made,---during the wheel, the whole remain closed to the standing flank; that is, they touch, without incommoding their neighbour; nor must they stoop forward, but remain upright,--opening out from the standing flank is to be avoided, closing in upon it, during the wheel, is to be resisted.---

Halt, Dress. On the word *Halt, Dress*, each man halts immediately, without jumping forward, or making any false movements.

When the recruits are able to perform the wheel with accuracy in the *ordinary time*, they must be practised in wheeling in *quickest time*.

Nothing will tend sooner to enable the recruit to acquire the proper length of step, according to his distance from the pivot, than continuing the wheel without halting for several revolutions of the circle.--And also giving the word *Halt, Dress*, at instants not expected, and when only a 6th, 8th, or any smaller proportion of the circle is completed.

S.

S. 20. *Wheeling of a ſingle rank, from the March.*

Halt, Right Wheel.

Halt, Dreſs. March.

The recruits are firſt to be taught to perform this wheeling at the *ordinary time*, and afterwards in the *quickeſt*, or *proper wheeling time*,---the rank, marching to the front at the ordinary time, receives the word of command, *Halt, Right Wheel*, the man on the right of the rank inſtantly halts, and faces to his right; the reſt of the rank, turning their eyes to the wheeling flank (as directed in the preceding ſection), immediately change the ſtep together to *wheeling time*; as ſoon as the portion of the circle to be wheeled is completed, the words *Halt, Dreſs*, will be given (a pauſe of 2 or 3 ſeconds may be made) and then *March*, on which the whole rank ſteps off together at the ordinary time.

S. 21. *Wheeling backwards a ſingle Rank.*

On the Right backwards, Wheel.

March.

Halt.

At the word *On the Right backwards, Wheel*, the man on the right of the rank faces to his left; at the word *March*, the whole ſtep backward in wheeling time, dreſſing by the outward wheeling man; thoſe neareſt the pivot man making their ſteps extremely ſmall, and thoſe towards the wheeling man encreaſing them as they are placed nearer to him.---The recruit in this wheel muſt not bend forward, nor be ſuffered to look down; but by caſting his eyes to the wheeling flank, preſerve the dreſſing of the rank.---On the word *Halt*, the whole remain perfectly ſteady, ſtill looking to the wheeling flank, till they receive the word *Right Dreſs*.

The recruits ſhould be firſt practiſed to wheel backwards at the ordinary ſtep; and at all times it will be neceſſary to prevent them from hurrying the pace; an error ſoldiers are very liable to fall into, particularly in wheeling backwards. Where large bodies wheel from line into column, this wheeling is neceſſary to preſerve the covering of pivot flanks, and the diſtances of the diviſions, which the line is to break into.

S. 22. *Wheeling of a ſingle Rank on a moveable Pivot.*

In wheeling on a moveable pivot, both flanks are moveable, and deſcribe concentric circles round a point, which is removed a few paces from what would otherwiſe be the ſtanding flank; and eyes are all turned towards the directing pivot man, whether he is on the outward flank, or on the flank wheeled to.

Right ſhoulders forward.

Forward.

When the wheel is to be made to the directing pivot flank (ſuppoſe the left),--the rank marching at the ordinary pace, receives the word, *Right Shoulders, forward*; on which the pivot man, without altering either the time or length of his pace, continues his march on the circumference of the leſſer circle, and tracing out a conſiderable arch, on the principle of dreſſing, gradually brings round his rank to the direction required, without obliging the other flank, which is deſcribing the circumference of a larger circle, to too great hurry:--On the word *Forward*, ſhoulders are ſquared, and the pivot marches direct to his front.

Left ſhoulders forward.

When the directing pivot is on the outward flank, and has to deſcribe the circumference of the larger circle, on the word *Left ſhoulders, forward*, he will, without changing the time, or length of his pace, gradually bring round the rank to the required direction, ſo as to enable the inward flank to deſcribe a ſimilar arc of a leſſer circle, concentric to the one he himſelf is moving on. —During both theſe wheels, the rank dreſſes to the proper pivot, and when he deſcribes the ſmaller circle of the wheel, the other flank, which has more ground to go over, will quicken its march, and ſtep out.—When the pivot deſcribes the greater circle of the wheel, the other flank, which has leſs ground to go over, will ſtep ſhorter, and gradually conform.—In the firſt caſe, the recruit muſt be cautioned againſt opening out from the pivot; and, in the latter, from crowding on him.

The juſt performance of this mode of wheeling depends ſo much on the directing pivot, that a well drilled ſoldier ſhould, at firſt, be placed on the flank named, as the proper pivot, and changed occaſionally.—It is uſed, when a column of march (in order to follow the windings of its route) changes its direction in general, leſs than the quarter circle.

WITH

WITH ARMS.

S. 24. *Position of the Soldier.*

WHEN the firelock is given, and is shouldered, the person of the soldier remains in the position described (Section 1.) except that the wrist of the left hand is turned out, and the better to embrace the butt, the thumb alone is to appear in front, the four fingers to be under the butt, the left elbow is a litte bent inwards, without being separated from the body, or being more backward or forward than the right one.—The firelock is placed in the hand, not on the middle of the fingers, and carried in such manner that it shall not raise, advance, or keep back one shoulder more than the other; the butt must therefore be forward, and as low as can be permitted without constraint; the fore part nearly even with that of the thigh, and the hind part of it pressed by the wrist against the thigh; the piece must be kept steady and firm before the hollow of the shoulder; should the firelock be drawn back, or attempted to be carried high, in that case, one shoulder will be advanced, the other kept back, and the upper part of the body distorted, and not placed square with respect to the limbs.

Each recruit must be separately taught the position of shouldered arms, and not allowed to proceed until he has acquired it.

S. 24. *Different motions of the Firelock.*

The following motions of the firelock will be taught and practised as here set down, until each recruit is perfect in them; they being necessary for the ease of the soldier in the course of exercise.

As mentioned in the manual exercise.
- Supporting arms.
- Carrying arms.
- Ordering arms.
- Standing at ease.
- Attention.
- Shouldering from the order.

The recruit must be accustomed to *carry* his arms for a considerable time together; it is most essential he should do so, and not be allowed to support *them* so often as is practised, under the idea of that long *carrying* them is a position of too much constraint.

A platoon, company, or battalion, are never to MARCH, or HALT, or FORM IN LINE, or to DRESS (which are situations where the greatest accuracy of front is required), but with *carried Arms.*— When such bodies are standing and halted, arms may be occasionally *supported.*—When marching in column, or that small divisions are moving any distance in file, firelocks may also be *supported.*

S. 25. *Attention in forming the Squad.*

When the SQUAD or division (consisting of from six to eight files) is ordered to *fall in*, each man with carried arms, will as quick as possible take his place in his rank; beginning from the flank to which he is ordered to form; he will dress himself in line by the rule already given; assume the ordered position of a soldier, and stand perfectly still, and steady, until ordered to stand at ease, or that some other command be given him.—Attention must be paid, that the files are correctly closed; that the men in the rear ranks cover well, looking their file leaders in the middle of the neck;—that the ranks have their proper distance of one pace (30 inches) from each other;—That all the ranks are equally well dressed:—That the men do not turn their heads to the right, or left; and that each man has the proper unconstrained attitude of a soldier.

The

S. 26. *Open order.*

Rear Ranks take Open Order.

March.

The recruits being formed in three ranks at close order, on the word *Rear Ranks take Open Order*, the flank men on the right and left of the centre, and rear ranks, step briskly back one and two paces respectively, face to their right, and stand covered, to mark the ground on which each rank is to halt, and dress at open order; every other individual remains ready to move.—On the word *March* the dressers front, and the centre and rear ranks fall back one and two paces, each dressing by the Right the instant it arrives on the ground.

S. 27. *Close order.*

Rear Ranks take Close Order.
March.

On the word *Rear ranks take Close Order*, the whole remain perfectly steady; at the word *March*, the ranks close within one pace, marching one and two paces, and then halting.

S. 28. *Manual Exercise.*

ACCORDING to REGULATION.

S. 29. *Platoon Exercise.*

ACCORDING TO REGULATION.

S. 30. *Firings.*

When the recruits have acquired the management of their arms, and are perfect in the motions of the manual, and platoon exercises, they will be instructed at closed ranks in firing.

Direct to their front.
Obliquely to the right and left.
By files.

S. 31. *Marching to the front and rear.*

Fig. 2.

Caution.
March.

The squad, or division, is to be particularly well dressed; files correct; arms carried; the rear ranks covering exactly, and each individual to have his just attitude and position before the squad is ordered to move.—The march will be made by the right or left flank, and a proper trained man will therefore conduct it.—The word *Squad*, or *Division*, may be given as a caution; and at the word *March*, each man steps forward a full pace.—The recruit must not turn his head to the hand to which he is dressing, as a turning of the shoulders would undoubtedly follow.—His elbows must be kept steady, without constraint; if they are opened from his body, the next man must be pressed upon; if they are closed, there arises an improper distance which must be filled up; in either case waving on the march will take place, and must therefore be avoided.

Halt, front,
March.

Turning to the right or left, or about, in march, is not to be at first practised; but the squad is to *halt, front*, by command, and then *march*.

On many occasions where a body, great or small, after a movement to the rear, or in file, is immediately to resume its proper front; instead of the words to halt, and face about, the word *Halt front*, as one command, will be given, when it is instantly to face to its proper front in line. Nor in general should there be any sensible pause between the halt front of any body; and it is after fronting, that the dressing, if necessary, is ordered to take place.

As the being able to march straight forward is of the utmost consequence, he who commands at the drill will take the greatest pains in making his squad do so;—For this purpose he will often go behind his squad, or division, place himself behind the flank file by which the

the squad is to move in marching, and take a point, or object, exactly in front of that file; he will then command *March*, and, remaining in his place, he will direct the advance of the squad by keeping the flank file always in a line with the object.—It is also from behind, that one soonest perceives the leaning back of the soldier, and the bringing forward or falling back of a shoulder; faults which ought instantly to be rectified, as productive of the worst consequence in a line, where one man, by bringing forward a shoulder, may change the direction of the march, and oblige the wing of a battalion to run, in order to keep dressed.

In short, it is impossible to labour too much at making the soldier march straight forward, keeping always the same front as when he set off.—This is effected by moving solely from the haunches, keeping the body steady, the shoulders square, and the head to the front; and will without difficulty be attained by a strict attention to the rules given for marching, and a careful observance of an equal length of step, and an equal cadence, or time of march. Changing from *ordinary* to *quick time*, and from *quick* to *ordinary time*, must always be preceded by a previous, but instantaneous *halt*; although this may not appear essential for the movements of a squad, division, or battalion, it is absolutely so for those of a larger body, and is therefore required in small ones.

Right Turn. *Left Turn.* — *Turning* on the march, in order to continue it, though inaccurate and improper for a large body, is necessary; when companies, or their divisions, are moving in file, and that without halting it is eligible to make them move on in front; or when moving in front, it is proper without halting to make them move on in file.

As helps for fixing the true time, or cadence of the march, the plummet must be frequently resorted to; the words *left, right,* may when necessary be repeated, slowly for ordinary time, and quicker for quick time.—Strong taps of the drum, if in just time, and regulated by the plummet, are also directed to be given immediately before the word *March*, thereby to imprint the required measure on the mind of the recruit; but they are on no account, or in any situation, to be given during the march.

S. 32. *Open, and close order, on the march.*

Rear Ranks take Open Order. — The squad, when moving to the front in ordinary time, receives the word *Rear ranks take open Open Order*; on which the front rank continues its march, without altering the pace, and the center and rear ranks mark the time, viz. the center one, and steps off at the second step; the rear stepping off on the third pace.

Rear Ranks take Close Order. — On the word *Rear Ranks take Close Order*, the center and rear ranks step nimbly up to close order, and instantly resume the pace, at which the front rank has continued to march.

S. 33. *March in file to a flank.*

The accuracy of the march in file is so essential in all deployments into line, and in the internal movements of the divisions of the battalion, that the soldier cannot be too much exercised to it. The whole battalion, as well as its divisions, is required to make this flank movement without the least opening out, or lengthening of the file, and in perfect cadence, and equality of step.

To the—face March. — After *facing*, and at the word *March*, the whole squad steps off that same instant, each replacing, or rather overstepping the foot of the man before him; that is, the right foot of the second man comes within the left foot of the first, and thus of every one, more or less over-lapping, according to the closeness, or openness of the files, and the length of step.—The front rank will march straight along the given line, each soldier of that rank must look along the necks of those before him, and never to right or left: otherwise a waving of the march will take place, and of course the loss, and extension of the line, and distance, whenever the body returns to its proper front.—The center and rear ranks must look to, and regulate themselves by, their leaders of the front rank, and always dress in their files—Although file marching is in general made in quick time; yet it must also be practised, and made in ordinary time. The same position of feet, as above, takes place in all marching in front, where the ranks are close, and locked up.

With

With a little attention and practice this mode of marching, which appears so difficult, will be found by every soldier to be easier than the common method of marching by files, when on every halt the rear must run up to again the ground it has unnecessarily lost.

S. 34. *Wheeling in file.*

The squad, when marching in file, must be accustomed to wheel its head to either flank; each file following successively, without losing, or encreasing distance.—On this occasion, each file makes its separate wheel on a pivot moveable in a very small degree, but without altering its time of march, or the eyes of the rear ranks being turned from their front rank.—The front rank men, whether they are pivot men, or not, must keep up to their distance, and the wheeling men must take a very extended step, and lose no time in moving on.

The head of a company or battalion marching in file, must change direction in the same manner on the moveable pivot, by gradually gaining the new from the old direction, and thereby avoiding the sudden stop that otherwise would take place.

S. 35. *Oblique Marching in front.*

Right Oblique.	When the Squad is marching in front, and receives the word *To the Right, oblique;* each man, the first time he raises the right foot, will, instead of throwing it straight forward, carry it in the diagonal direction, as has been already explained in Sect. 8. taking care not to alter the position of his body, shoulders, or head.—The greatest attention is to be paid to the shoulders of every man in the squad, that they remain parallel to the line on which they first were placed, and that the right shoulders do not fall to the rear, which they are very apt to do in obliquing to the right, and which immediately
Forward.	changes the direction of the front.—On the word *forward*, the incline ceases, and the whole march forward.—In obliquing to be left, the same rules are to be observed, with the difference of the left leg going to the left, and attention to keep up to the left shoulder.

The same instructions that are given for ordinary time, serve also for quick time; but this movement, though it may be made by a squad, or division, cannot be required from a larger body in quick time.

Obliquing to the right, is to be practised sometimes with the eyes to the left; and obliquing to the left, with the eyes to the right; as being absolutely necessary on many occasions; for if one of the battalions of a line in advancing be ordered to oblique to the right, or to the left, the eyes must still continue turned towards its center.

S. 36. *Oblique marching in file.*

In obliquing to the right, or left, by files, the center and rear rank men will continue looking to their leaders of the front rank.—Each file is to consider itself as an entire rank, and is to preserve the same front, and position of the shoulders, during the oblique, as before it began.—This being a very useful movement, the recruits are often to be practised in it.

S. 37. *Wheeling forward from the halt.*

Right Wheel.	The directions already given for the wheeling of a single rank (vide Sect. 19.) are to be strictly attended to in this wheel of the squad.—On the word *Right (or left) Wheel*, the rear ranks, if at one pace distance, lock up.
March.	At the word *March*, the whole step together in the quickest time, and the rear ranks during the wheel, incline so as to cover their proper front rank men,
Halt.	At the word *Halt*, the whole remain perfectly steady.

S. 38. *Wheeling backward.*

The ſquad muſt be practiſed in wheeling backward in the quickeſt time.—In this wheel, the rear ranks may preſerve their diſtance of one pace from each other.—Great attention ſhould be paid, to prevent the recruits from fixing their eyes on the ground. (Vide Sect. 21.)

S. 39. *Wheeling from the March, on a halted, and moveable Pivot:*

The directions for wheeling on a *halted*, and on a *moveable* pivot, have already been given, in Sects. 20, and 22.——The ſquad ſhould now be practiſed in both, until the recruits are thoroughly confirmed in thoſe movements.

S. 40. *Stepping out,—Stepping ſhort,—Marking the Time,—Changing the Feet,—The ſide ſtep,—Stepping back.*

The ſquad muſt likewiſe be practiſed in *ſtepping out, ſtepping ſhort, marking the time, changing the feet, the ſide ſtep*, and *ſtepping back*, the inſtructions for which have been fully detailed in the foregoing ſections.

It cannot be too ſtrongly inculcated, or too often recollected, that upon the correct *equality* of *march*, eſtabliſhed and practiſed by all the troops of the ſame army, every juſt movement and manœuvre depends. When this is not attended to, diſunion, and confuſion, muſt neceſſarily take place, on the junction of ſeveral battalions in corps, although, when taken individually, each may be in moſt reſpects well trained: It is in the original inſtruction of the recruit, and ſquad, that this great point is to be laboured at and attained.—The *time* and *length* of ſtep, on all occaſions, are preſcribed. The TIME is infallibly aſcertained, by the frequent corrections of the *plummet*, which, when ſo applied, will ſoon give to each man that habitual meaſure ſo much deſired; and therefore every driller muſt have it conſtantly in his hand; and, as it has been already obſerved, before any ſquad, or larger body is put in march, 5 or 6 ſtrong taps of the drum ſhould often be given in exact time, as regulated by the plummet; which will imprint the true meaſure on each ear, and prepare for taking an accurate ſtep at the word *March*. The length of ſtep is only to be acquired by repeated trial, and therefore, before the recruit, or ſquad, is put in motion, each inſtructor ſhould aſcertain the ſpace on which he is to drill his men; he will therefore (ſuppoſing that he himſelf is accurate in his paces, and that there is ground for that purpoſe) mark out an oblong ſquare of 40 paces by 20, or 30, the corners of which he will aſcertain by halberts, ſtones, or in any other viſible manner; along the ſides of this figure he will march the pivot flank of the ſquad, making correct wheels, and halts at the angles.—The time of March being ſo exactly aſcertained, he will then ſee that the ſides of the oblong are gone over at the known number of ſteps; and if there be any inaccuracy, he will lengthen or ſhorten the ſtep, till the ſquad marches with the utmoſt preciſion; every man preſerving his juſt poſition, and all the other indiſpenſible attentions in marching being ſtrictly obſerved. Where there is a ſufficiency of *ground*, the ſquads will occaſionally march over greater ſpaces, but the diſtances ſhould in the ſame manner be exactly aſcertained, ſo that there may be no doubt as to the true length of the ſtep.—In proportion to the ſtrength of ſquads or drills, one or more formed ſoldiers ſhould accompany each, to march on the flanks, give diſtances, and, in other points, to regulate the motions of the drill.

D. D.

END OF PART FIRST.

PART II.

Of the Platoon, or Company.

S. 41. *Formation of the Platoon.*

THE recruit being thoroughly grounded in all the proceeding parts of the drill, is now to be instructed in the movements of the platoon, as a more immediate preparation for his joining the battalion: for this purpose from 10 to 20 files are to be assembled, formed, and told off in the following manner, as a company in the Battalion.

The platoon FALLS IN, in three ranks at close order, with shouldered firelocks; the files lightly touching, but without crouding; each man will then occupy a space of about 20 inches. — The commander of the platoon takes post on the right of the front rank, covered by a serjeant in the Rear Rank. — Two of the Serjeants will form a fourth or supernumerary rank, three paces from the rear rank.

The platoon will be told off into sub-divisions, and if of sufficient strength, into four sections; but as a section should never be less than five files, it will often happen that for the purposes of march, three sections only can be formed.

The four best trained soldiers are to be placed in the front rank, on the right and left of each sub-division.

When thus formed, the platoon will be practised in

Opening, and Closing of } Ranks, - - - - (Sec. 26 and 27.)

Dressing { to the front, to the rear, in an oblique direction, } by the right and left;

and be exercised in the several motions of the firelock, as have been shewn in the preceding part.

Close order is the chief and primary order in which the battalion, and its parts, at all times assemble, and form. — *Open order* is only regarded as an exception from it, and occasionally used in situations of parade, and show. — In close order, the rear ranks are closed up to within one pace; the length of which is to be taken from the heels of one rank to the heels of the next rank. — In open order, they are two paces distant from each other.

In order to distinguish the words of command given by the instructor of the drill (who represents the commander of the battalion), from those given by the commander of the platoon, or its divisions, the commands of the former are in CAPITAL Letters, those of the latter in *Italick*.

S. 42. *Marching to the Front.*

FIG. 2. In the drill of the platoon, the person instructing must always consider it as a company in battalion, and regulate all its movements upon that principle; he will therefore, before he puts it in motion to front, or rear, indicate which flank is to direct, by giving the word EYES RIGHT, or EYES LEFT;

MARCH. and then MARCH. — Should the right be the directing flank, the commander of the platoon himself will fix on objects to march upon in a line truly perpendicular to the front of the platoon; and when the left flank is ordered to direct, he and his covering serjeant will shift to the left of the front rank, and take such objects to march upon, — TO MARCH on one object only, and to pre-

serve

ſerve a ſtraight line, is an operation not to be depended on; the conductor of the platoon before the word MARCH is given, will therefore endeavour to remark ſome diſtinct object on the ground, in his own front, and perpendicular to the directing flank: he will then obſerve ſome nearer and intermediate point in the ſame line, ſuch as a ſtone, tuft of graſs, &c. theſe he will move upon with accuracy, and as he approaches the neareſt of thoſe points, he muſt from time to time chuſe freſh ones in the original direction, which he will by this means preſerve, never having fewer than two ſuch points to move upon. If no object in the true line can be aſcertained, his own ſquareneſs of perſon muſt determine the direction of the march.

A perſon placed in the rear of a body can, more readily than if placed in its front, determine the line which is perpendicular to ſuch front; and could we ſuppoſe ranks and files moſt perfectly correct, the prolongation of each file would be a perpendicular to the front of the body.

As the MARCH of every body, except in the caſe of inclining, is made on lines perpendicular to its then front, each individual compoſing that body muſt in his perſon be placed, and remain perfectly ſquare to the given line; otherwiſe he will naturally and inſenſibly move in a direction perpendicular to his own perſon, and thereby open out, or cloſe in, according to the manner in which he is turned from the true point of his March.—If the diſtortion of a ſingle man operates in this manner, and all turnings of the head do ſo diſtort him, it may be eaſily imagined what that of ſeveral will occaſion, each of whom is marching on a different front, and whoſe lines of direction are croſſing each other.

Accuracy and ſquareneſs of poſition, the equality of cadence and ſtep, the light touch of the files; which is never to be relinquiſhed, juſt diſtances, and true lines of movement, will give, without apparent conſtraint, the head being turned, or the leaſt trouble taken in dreſſing, the utmoſt deciſive exactneſs in the marches, and operations of the largeſt bodies.

The platoon during its march in line, will occaſionally be ordered to

Step out,	vide Sect.	10.
Mark time,	———	11.
Step ſhort,	———	12.
Open, and *cloſe ranks,*	———	32.
Oblique,	———	35.

S. 43. *The Side Step.*

The *ſide*, or *cloſing ſtep*, muſt alſo be frequently practiſed; it is very neceſſary and uſeful on many occaſions, when halted, and when a very ſmall diſtance is to be moved to either flank: —As for inſtance, to open, or cloſe files; to join one diviſion to, or open it from another; to regain an interval in line; to move a whole battalion or parade, 20 or 30 paces to a flank; to regulate diſtances between cloſe columns before deploying: alterations made in this manner are imperceptible from the front, and better made than by facing, and file marching: the words of command muſt be decided and ſtrong.

TO THE RIGHT CLOSE. MARCH. HALT. — When the whole platoon is to cloſe, at the word TO THE RIGHT CLOSE, the platoon officer takes one ſtep to the front and inſtantly faces about, the recovering ſerjeant replacing him: On the word MARCH, the whole move together agreeably to the directions (in Sect. 14). On the word HALT, the platoon officer reſumes his place, having ſtepped in the ſame manner as the men, but fronting them, and thereby aſſiſted in preſerving the direction.

S. 44. *The Back Step.*

STEP BACK MARCH. — The platoon muſt be accuſtomed from the halt, at the words STEP BACK—MARCH, to ſtep back any ordered number of paces in the ordinary time and length, as it is an operation that may be frequently required from a battalion.

S. 45. *File Marching.*

LEFT FACE. — In marching by files, the commander of the platoon will lead the front rank; therefore when the movement is by the left, on the word TO THE LEFT FACE, he, and his covering ſerjeant, will inſtantly ſhift to the left flank of the

QUICK MARCH *Halt, Front.* — the platoon; at the word QUICK MARCH, the whole ſteps off together (vide Sect. 18); and on the word *Halt, Front,* the leader, and his ſerjeant, will return to their poſts on the right.

S. 46. *Wheeling from a Halt.*

RIGHT WHEEL. MARCH. *Halt, Dreſs.* — In wheeling either forward, or backward from a halt, the commander of the platoon, on the word RIGHT OR LEFT WHEEL, moves out, and places himſelf one pace in front of the center of his platoon: during the wheel, he turns towards his men, and inclines towards that flank which has been named as the directing, or pivot one, giving the word *Halt, Dreſs*, when his wheeling man has juſt completed the required degree of wheel: he then ſquares his platoon, but without moving what was the ſtanding flank, and takes his poſt on the directing flank.

S. 47. *Wheeling forward by Sub-diviſions from Line.*

CAUTION. — On the Caution BY SUBDIVISIONS, TO THE RIGHT WHEEL, the commander of the platoon places himſelf one pace in front of the center of the right ſub-diviſion, at the ſame time the men on the right of the front rank of each ſub-diviſion face to the right.

MARCH. Fig. 3. A. *Halt, Dreſs.* — At the word MARCH; each ſub-diviſion ſteps off in wheeling time, obſerving the directions given in (Sect. 19 and 37). The commander of the platoon turning towards the men of the leading ſub-diviſion, and inclining to its left (the proper pivot flank) gives the word *Halt, Dreſs*, for both ſub-diviſions, as his wheeling man is taking the laſt ſtep that finiſhes the wheel ſquare; and inſtantly poſts himſelf on the left, the pivot flank.—The ſerjeant coverer, during the wheel, goes round by the rear, and takes poſt on the pivot flank of the ſecond ſub-diviſion.—It is to be obſerved, that the commander of the platoon invariably takes poſt with the leading ſub-diviſion; therefore, when the platoon wheels by ſub-diviſions to the left, the commander of the platoon moves out to the center of the left ſub-diviſion, and during the wheel inclines towards the right, now become the proper pivot flanks of the ſub-diviſions.

The *proper* pivot flank in column, is that which, when wheeled up to, preſerves the diviſions of the line in the natural order, and to their proper front; the other may be called the *reverſe* flank.

In column, diviſions cover and dreſs to the proper pivot flank: to the left when the right is in front: and to the right when the left is in front.

S. 48. *Wheeling backward by Sub-diviſions from line.*

CAUTION. — The platoon will alſo break into open column of ſub-diviſions by wheeling backwards.—When the right is intended to be in front; at the caution BY SUBDIVISIONS OF THE LEFT, BACKWARD WHEEL, the commander of the platoon moves out briſkly and places himſelf in front of the center of the right ſub-diviſion.—The man on the left of the front rank of each ſub-diviſion at the ſame time faces to the right,

MARCH. Fig. 4. A *Halt Dreſs.* — On the word MARCH, each ſubdiviſion wheels backward in quickeſt time, as directed in Sect. 21. and Sect. 38. During the wheel, the commander of the platoon turns towards his men, inclining at the ſame time to the left, or pivot flank, and on completing the wheel, gives the word *Halt, Dreſs*, to both diviſions: he, and his covering ſerjeant, then place themſelves on the left flanks of their Sub-diviſions.

It may be conſidered as a rule almoſt general (the reaſons for which are given in the following part) that all wheels of the battalion, or line, (when halted, and when the diviſions do not exceed 16, or 18 files) into column, ſhould be backward.—And all wheels from column into line, forward.—The only neceſſary exceptions ſeem to be in narrow ground, where there is no room for ſuch wheels.

S. 49. *Marching on an Alignement, in Open column of Sub-divisions.*

The platoon having wheeled backwards by subdivisions from line, (as directed in the foregoing Section) and a distant marked object in the prolongation of the two pivot flanks being taken; the commander of the platoon, who is now on the pivot flank of the leading sub-division, immediately fixes on his intermediate points to march on, (vide Sect. 42.) On the word MARCH, given by the Instructor of the drill, both divisions step off at the same instant; the leader of the first division marching with the utmost steadiness and equality of pace on the points he has taken; and the commander of the second division preserving the leader of the first in an exact line with the distant object; at the same time he keeps the distance necessary for forming from the preceding division; which distance is to be taken from the front rank.—These objects are in themselves sufficient to occupy the whole attention of the leaders of the two divisions; therefore they must not look to, nor endeavour to correct the march of their divisions, which care must be entirely left to the non-commissioned officers of the supernumerary rank.

Fig. 4. A.

S. 50. *Wheeling into Line from Open column of Sub-divisions.*

HALT. The platoon being in open column of sub-divisions, marching at the ordinary step on the alignement, receives the word HALT, from the instructor of the drill; both divisions instantly halt, and the instructor sees that the leaders of the divisions are correct on the line in which they have moved; he then gives the word (supposing the right of the platoon to be in front) by sub-divisions TO THE LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE; on which the commander of the platoon goes to the center of his sub-division, the two pivot men face to their left exactly square with the alignement, and a serjeant runs out and places himself in a line with them, so as to mark the precise point at which the right flank of the leading sub-division is to halt, when it shall have completed its wheel. At the word MARCH, the whole wheel up in quickest time; during the wheel, the commander of the platoon, turning towards his men, inclines to the wheeling flank, and gives the word *Halt, Dress*, at the moment the wheel of the division is completing; the commander of the platoon, if necessary, corrects the internal dressing of the Platoon on the serjeant and pivot men; this dressing must be quickly made, and when done, the commander of the platoon gives the word *Eyes Front*, in a moderate tone of voice, and takes post in line as directed in Sect. 41.

LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.

MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

Eyes front.

In all wheels of the divisions of a column that are to be made on a halted pivot in order to form line, the flank firelock of the front rank on the hand wheeled to, is such pivot, not the officers who may be on that flank, and whose business is to conform to it.

All wheelings by sub-divisions, or sections, from line into column, or from column into line, are performed on the word given by the commander of a battalion, when the whole of a battalion is at the same instant so to wheel, or on the word given by the commander of the company, when companies singly, or successively, so wheel: they are not to be repeated by the leaders of its divisions.

S. 51. *In Open column of Sub-divisions wheeling into an Alignement.*

Halt, Wheel. The platoon being in open column of sub-divisions, marching in ordinary time; when its leading division arrives at the ground, where the wheel is to commence, it receives the word *Halt, right or left wheel*, from its commander; on which the rear ranks, if at one pace distance, lock up; the flank front rank man alone halts, and faces into the new direction, while the others quicken their pace to the wheeling time, and regulate their step by the outward hand (to which they have turned their eyes), until the wheel is completed.—He then gives the word *Halt, Dress*, for his division to dress to the hand

Halt, Dress.

March. hand it is to move by; and whenever the second division, which has continued to advance in ordinary time, arrives close on the wheeling point, he gives his division the word *March*, and moves on in ordinary time, so as its rear ranks does not occasion even a momentary stop to the division behind it, *Halt, Wheel. Halt, Dress. March.* which at that instant receives the word *Wheel*, then *Halt, Dress*, and finally *March*, whenever the leading division has gained its proper distance from it.

The officer conducting the leading (and every other) division of the column in march, on any given point or object where it is to wheel into a new direction, and to its proper pivot hand on a halted pivot; always st ps at that point, or object, close on his own outward hand, and gives the word WHEEL, when the front rank of his division has taken ONE pace beyond such object; he thus allows pace for his own person (when the wheel is finished) to move on close behind the new direction of march.

But if the proper pivot flank is to be the wheeling one, each commander of a division gives his word *Wheel*, as he successively arrives at such a distance from the point on which he has moved, as that at the completion of the wheel, his division may *halt* perpendicular to the new line, but with the given point, of course, behind the proper pivot; and that he also in his own person be on the new direction, prepared to give his word *March*, and to proceed.

The sub-divisions must take care that they continue their march correctly upon, and wheel exactly at the point where the leading one wheeled, and that they do not shift to either flank, which, without much attention they are apt to do.

In this manner the sub-divisions succeed each other; and if the words of command be justly given; no stop made on arriving at the wheeling point; the wheels performed at an increased time and step; and the proper halt, dressing, and pause, be made after the wheel; no extention of the column will take place, but the just distances between the divisions will be preserved.

The officer conducting the directing flank of a division may, during the Wheel, be advanced one or two paces before it, and remain so, facing to the flank, that he may the more critically be enabled to give the word *Halt*; at which instant, he will again place himself on the flank ready to judge his distance, and to give the word *March*.

S. 52. *In Open column of Sub-divisions wheeling into a new direction, on a moveable Pivot.*

Right Shoulders forward. The commander of the leading sub-division, when at a due distance from the intended new direction, will give the word *Right* (or left) *Shoulders forward* (vide Sect. 22), and he himself carefully preserving the rate of march, without the least alteration of step or time, will begin to circle in his own person from the old into the new direction, so as not to make an abrupt wheel, or that either flank shall be stationary; the rest of his division on the principle of dressing will conform to the direction he is giving them: *Forward.* when this is effected he will give the word *Forward.*—The leader of the second sub-division, when he arrives at the ground on which the first began to wheel, will in this manner follow the exact tract of the first, always preserving his proper distance from him.

Thus without the constraint of formal wheels; a column, when not confined on its flanks, may be conducted in all kinds of winding and changeable directions: for if the changes be made gradual and circling, and that the pivot leaders of divisions pursue their proper path at the same uniform equal pace, the true distances of divisions will be preserved, which is the great regulating object on this occasion, and to which every other consideration must give way.

To which ever hand the wheel is made on a moveable pivot, it is made within, and cuts off the angle formed by the intersection of the old and new directions.

In wheeling in column of march on a fixed pivot, the outward file, whether officer or man, is the one wheeled on.

S. 53.

S. 53. *Countermarch by Files.*

The platoon, when it is to countermarch, must always be considered as a division of a battalion in column; the instructor of the drill will therefore, previous to his giving the caution to countermarch, signify whether the right or left is supposed to be in front; that the commander of the platoon, and his covering serjeant, may be placed on the pivot flank before such caution is given, as it is an invariable rule in the countermarch of the divisions of a column by files, that the facings be made from the flank, then the pivot one, to the one which is to become such.

FACE. — On the word, TO THE RIGHT, or left, FACE, the platoon faces, the commander of it immediately goes to the other flank, and his covering serjeant advancing to the spot which he has quitted, faces to the right about.—At the word

QUICK MARCH. — QUICK MARCH, the whole, except the serjeant coverer, steps off together, the platoon officer wheeling short round the rear rank (viz. to his right, if he has shifted to the right of the platoon; or to his left, if he be on the left of it); and proceeds, followed by the platoon in file, till he has conducted his pivot front rank man close to his serjeant, who has remained immoveable; he then gives the words *Halt*, *Front*, and *Dress*, squares, and closes his platoon on his serjeant, and then replaces him.

Halt, Front, Dress.

All countermarches by files necessarily tend to an extension of the files; unity of step is therefore absolutely indispensible, and the greatest care must be taken that the wheel of each file be made close, quick, and at an increased length of step of the wheeling man, so as not to retard or lengthen out the march of the whole.

Companies or their divisions, when brought up in file to a new line, are not to stand in that position, till the men cover each other minutely: but the instant the leading man is at his point, they will not receive the word *Halt*, *front*, and in that situation close in, and dress correctly.

S. 54. *Wheeling on the center of the Platoon.*

The platoon must be accustomed to wheel upon its center, half backward, half forward, and to be pliable into every shape, which circumstances can require of it; but always in order, and by a decided command.

The words of Command are,

PLATOON, ON YOUR CENTER TO THE { RIGHT, / LEFT, / RIGHT ABOUT, / LEFT ABOUT, } WHEEL.

When the wheel to be made is to the right, or right about, the right half platoon is the one to wheel backward, and the left forward.—The reverse will take place, when the wheel is to be made to the left, or to the left about.—On the word MARCH, the whole move together in the quickest time, regulating by the two flank men, who, during the wheel, preserve themselves in a line with the center of the platoon;—as soon as the required degree of wheel is performed, the commander of the platoon gives the word *Halt*, *Dress*, and instantly squares it from that flank, on which he himself is to take post.

MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

S. 55. *Oblique Marching.*

The instructor of the drill will have the oblique march frequently practised, in platoon, in sub-divisions, and in file: (Vide Sect. 35, 36.) He will see when in divisions, that the rear ranks lock well up, and cover exactly;—when in file, that the exact distances are preserved between the files: and in both cases, that the platoon during its march continues parallel to the position, from which it *commenced* obliquing.

S. 56. *Increasing and diminishing the front of an open column halted.*

Fig. 5. B. *Increasing.*

FORM PLATOON. *R. S. division left Oblique. Q. March. Forward.*

The platoon standing in open column of sub-divisions (suppose the right in front) receives from the instructor of the drill a caution to Form Platoon—— The commander of the platoon turning round instantly orders, *Rear Subdivision, left Oblique, - Q. March.* When it has obliqued so as to open its right flank, he gives the word *forward*; and on its arriving in a line with the first division he orders, *Halt, Dress,* and takes post on the left, the pivot flank of the platoon.

Fig. 5. A. *Diminishing.*

FORM SUB-DIVISIONS. *Left Subdivision, inwards face.*

On the cautionary command from the instructor of the drill to FORM SUB-DIVISIONS, the serjeant coverer falls back to mark the point where the left flank of the subdivision is to be placed.—The commander of the platoon advancing one step, orders *Left Subdivision, inwards face,* and instantly on facing, the three leading files disengage to the rear.

Q. March. Halt, Front, Left, Dress,

At the word *Q. March,* the file passes round, and behind the serjeant, and at the proper instant receives the words; *Halt, Front—Left, Dress.*—The commander of the platoon is now on the left flank of the first sub-division, and his serjeant on that of the second.

It is to be observed as a general rule in diminishing the front of a column, by the doubling of sub-divisions or sections (whether the column be halted or in motion) that the sub-division or section on the *reverse* flank, is the one behind which the other sub-divisions, or sections, double. ——Thus when the right is in front, the doubling will be in the rear of the right division; and, vice versa, when the left is in front; by which means, the column is at all times in a situation to form line to the flank, with its divisions in their natural order, by simply wheeling up on the pivot flanks.—And in encreasing the front of a column, the rear sub-divisions, or sections, oblique to the hand the pivot flanks is on; so that when, the Right is in front, the obliquing will be to the left; and the reverse when the left is in front.

S. 57. *Increasing and diminishing the front of an open column on the March.*

Fig. 6. B. *Increasing.*

FORM PLATOON. *Left Oblique, Q. March. Forward. Ordinary.*

The platoon marching at the ordinary time in open column of subdivisions (suppose the right in front), receives from the instructor of the drill the cautionary cmmand, FORM PLATOON; the commander of the platoon instantly turning round gives the words, *Left oblique—Quick march*; on which the rear sub-division obliques to the left, and as soon as its right flank is open, receives the word, *Forward.*—When it gets up to the first sub-division (which has continued to march, with the utmost steadiness, at the ordinary pace), the commander of the platoon gives the word *Ordinary,* and takes post on the pivot flank towards which he has been moving.

Fig. 6. A. *Diminishing.*

FORM SUB-DIVISIONS. *Left Subdivision, Mark time. Quick Oblique Forward.*

When the instructor of the drill gives the caution to FORM SUBDIVISIONS, the commander of the platoon advancing one step, immediately orders, *Left sub-division, mark time*; this it does until the right one, which continues its march steadily at the ordinary pace, has cleared its flank; he then orders the left sub-division, *Quick oblique,* and when he perceives that it has doubled properly behind the right one, he gives the word, *Forward,* on which it takes up the ordinary march, and follows at its due distance of wheeling, he himself being then placed on the pivot flank of the sub-division, and his serjeant on that of the second.

The same directions that apply to encreasing or diminishing by sub-divisions, apply equally by sections, which individually repeat the same operations.

Increasing

Increasing and reducing the front of a column, is an operation that will frequently occur in the march of large bodies; and it is of the utmost importance that it be performed with exactness.—The instructor of the drill must therefore be particularly attentive, that the transition from one situation to the other be made as quick as possible; that the leading division continues its march at the regular time and length of pace, and the exact distances between the divisions be accurately preserved.--During the operation, the ranks must be closed, arms carried, and the greatest attention required from each individual.

S. 58. *The Platoon in open column of Sub-divisions to pass a short Defilè, by breaking off Files.*

Fig. 7. C. The platoon is supposed in open column of sub-divisions, with the right in front, marching in ordinary time; when the leading division is arrived within a few paces of the defilé, it receives from the instructor of the drill an order to break off a certain number of files, (suppose three.)---The commander of the leading division instantly gives the words, *Three files on the left, right turn*; the named files immediately turn to the right, and wheel out in rear of the three adjoining files.---The commander of the sub-division himself closes into the flank of the part formed.---When the second sub-division comes to the spot where the first division contracted its front, it will receive the same words of command from its own leader, and will proceed in like manner.

BREAK OFF 3 FILES.

Three files, right turn.

Should it be required to diminish the front of the column one or two files more, the commander of the leading division will, as before, order the desired number of files to *turn*; on which those already in the rear will incline to the right, so as to cover the files now ordered to break off, and which are wheeling out in the manner already prescribed.

Two files, right turn.

In this movement, the files in the rear of the sub-divisions must lock well up, so as not to impede the march of the succeeding division.

As the defilé widens (or the instructor of the drill shall direct) the commander of the leading sub-division will order files to move up to the front, by giving the word, *One, two,* or *three files to the front*; on which the named files turn to their front (the left), and lengthening their pace, march up, file by file, to the front of their sub-division, and immediately resume the ordinary pace.--- Those files which are to continue in the rear will oblique to the left, lengthening also their step, till they cover, and are closed up to the three files on the left flank of their sub-division.

Three files to the front.

S. 59. *Marching in Quick Time.*

The platoon must frequently be practised to march in quick time, particularly in file, until the men have acquired the utmost precision in this movement, which is so essential in all deployments from close column.—The platoon will also occasionally be marched in front at the same step, as it may be frequently required from small bodies.

S. 60. *Forming to the front from file.*

The platoon when marching in file may form to its front, either in sections, sub-divisions, or in platoon.—The right flank being supposed to lead, on the word, HALT, FRONT, the platoon instantly halts, and faces to its left: the CAUTION is then given, BY SECTIONS, SUB-DIVISIONS, OR PLATOON, ON THE LEFT BACKWARD WHEEL, and at the word MARCH, the wheel ordered is made, in the manner directed in Sect. 48.

HALT, FRONT. CAUTION. MARCH.

But in situations where it may have been necessary to order an extension of files, (such as will sometimes occur in marching through the streets of a town) a body thus moving, in order to avoid incorrect distances between the divisions, may form to the front in the following manner, either by platoon, sub-divisions, or sections.--On the word, TO THE FRONT FORM PLATOON; the front rank man of the leading file alone halts, and is instantly covered by his center and rear rank men: every other file of the platoon makes a half

FRONT FORM PLATOON.

face

face to the left, and ſucceſſively moving up, dreſſes on the right file; when the commander of the platoon ſees it is properly dreſſed, he gives the word, *Eyes left*, and places himſelf on the pivot flank.

Eyes left.

FRONT FORM SUB-DIVISIONS.

Front form.

Should the order have been, TO THE FRONT FORM SUB-DIVISIONS, (FORM SECTIONS), the leading ſub-diviſion, or ſection, will proceed in the manner already detailed for the platoon; the ſucceeding ſub-diviſions, or ſections, will each continue moving on, until its front file arrives at the proper forming diſtance from the diviſion in its front, when it will receive from its commander the word, *To the front form*, and will inſtantly form up by files, in the manner already deſcribed.

S. 61. *Forming from file to either flank.*

The Platoon marching in file (ſuppoſe from the right) has only to halt, and front to be formed to the left flank.

Right form.

To form to the right it will receive the word, *To the right form*; the front rank man of the leading file, inſtantly turns to his right, and halts; his center and rear rank men at the ſame time move round and cover him.---All the other files of the platoon make a half turn to their left, and move round ſucceſſively, in a line with the right hand file; the center and rear rank men of each file, keeping cloſed well up to their file leaders.

S. 62. *To form to either Flank, from Open column of Sub-diviſions.*

HALT, LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE. MARCH.

The platoon marching in the ordinary time in open column of ſub-diviſions, to form to its left, receives the words, HALT, LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.—MARCH, &c. and proceed as has already been ſhewn in Section 50.

RIGHT FORM PLATOON.

Halt, right wheel.

Halt, right dreſs.

Left oblique.

Forward.

Halt, Right wheel.

Halt, dreſs up.

To form the platoon to its right flank, the inſtructor of the drill gives the cautionary word of command, TO THE RIGHT FORM THE PLATOON; on which the commanders of the ſeveral diviſions ſhift to the right flank, and the commander of the leading ſubdiviſion inſtantly gives the word to his diviſion, *Halt, right wheel*; and when it has wheeled ſquare, he orders, *Halt, right dreſs*; goes to the right flank of his diviſion, and dreſſes it on the intended line of formation.---The commander of the other ſub-diviſion, on the leading one being ordered to wheel, gives the word, *To the left oblique*, and gradually inclines, ſo as to be able to march clear of the rear rank of the diviſion forming; this being well effected, the word, *Forward*, will be given to the diviſion, and it will move on in the rear of the one formed.—When the ſecond ſub-diviſion is arrived at the left flank of the firſt, its commander gives the word, *Right wheel*, then *Halt, dreſs up*; on which the diviſion moves up into the line, with the one formed; and its commander, from the left of his firſt diviſion, dreſſes his own on the given flank point as quickly and as accurately as poſſible, and reſumes his proper platoon place.

S. 63. *The Platoon moving to the front, to gain ground to a flank, by a March in Echellon, by Sections.*

Fig. 8.

In the drill of the platoon, when the ſoldier is completely formed, he may be taught to march in echellon, by ſections. This is a very uſeful movement for a Battalion, or large body moving in line, that is required to gain ground to a flank, and may be ſubſtituted inſtead of the oblique march.—It will be performed in the following manner.

SECTIONS, RIGHT.

FORWARD.

The platoon marching to the front in the ordinary time, receives the word, BY SECTIONS TO THE RIGHT; the right hand men of the front rank of each ſection, turning in a ſmall degree to their right, mark the time two or three paces, during which the ſections, are wheeling in ordinary time on their pivot men; at the fourth pace, and at the word, *Forward*, the whole move

move on direct to the front that each section has now acquired, and the commander of each section, having taken post on the right of his division, the platoon continues its march in echellon.

FORM PLATOON. FORWARD. On the word, FORM PLATOON, the pivot men mark the time for three paces, turning back in a small degree to their left, the original front, and the sections instantly wheel backward into line; at the fourth pace the whole move forward. When the platoon is in two ranks only, two paces instead of three will be sufficient to mark time, and to step off at the third, instead of the fourth pace.

S. 64. *From three Ranks forming in two Ranks.*

FORM TWO DEEP. LEFT FACE. Q. MARCH. Fig. 9. *Halt, front. Dress up.* The platoon halted, is ordered, FORM TWO DEEP; the rear rank men of the left sub-division instantly step back one pace; on the word LEFT FACE, the rear rank of both sub-divisions face; the word QUICK MARCH is then given, on which the men of the rear rank of the left sub-division step short, until those of the right get up to them; they then move on with them in file; as their rear is clearing the left flank of the platoon, the commander (who has shifted to this flank during the movement) gives the word *Halt, front, dress up,* he instantly dresses them on the standing part of his platoon, and resumes his post on the right.—One third, or one more sub-division, is thus added to the front of the company.

If a battalion is standing in open column, it may thus encrease the front of its companies, before it forms in line:—But if it is already in line, and is thus to encrease its front, its companies must take sufficient intervals from each other, before their respective rear ranks can come up.—If a battalion in line is posted, and without deranging its front is to lengthen out a flank by the aid of its rear-rank; it would order that rank to wheel backwards by sub-divisions: The last sub-division of each company would close up to its first one: All the sub-divisions (on the head one) would move forward to open column: An officer would be named to command those of each two companies: The open column would move on, and wheel into line on the flank of the Battalion.—In this manner also would a line of several battalions lengthen itself out by the rear ranks of each.

S. 65. *From two Ranks forming into three Ranks.*

Fig. 9. FORM THREE DEEP. RIGHT FACE. Q. MARCH. *Halt, front.* The platoon being halted and told off into three sections, it receives the word FORM THREE DEEP; on which the third section instantly steps back one pace; the word RIGHT FACE is then given, and the man on the right of its front rank, on facing, disengages a little to his right; on the word QUICK MARCH, the front rank men of the third section step off, those of the other rank mark the time till they have past, and then follow.—When the leading man has got to the right of the platoon, the commander gives the word *Halt, front,* on which each man halts, faces to his left, and instantly covers his proper file leader.

A rear rank which has lengthened out, and formed on the flank of its battalion, would return to its place, by wheeling back into open column of sub-divisions; marching till each arrived at its flank point; the leading rank of each would wheel up and cover; and the second rank would move behind it, and also wheel up.

S. 66. 67. 68. 69.

Exercise of Company. In pursuance of the foregoing instructions, and on the principles they contain, every company of a battalion must be frequently exercised by its own officers, each superintending a rank, or an allotted part of the whole.—And on the space of 70 or 80 yards square, can every circumstance be practised that is necessary, to qualify it for the operations of the battalion.—That space being pointed out by under officers, or other marks, as directed at the latter end of the first part, the company will exercise, both at open and close without arms, and with arms, as follows.

By

By Ranks.

1. March in single file, by successive ranks, along the 4 sides of the square.—The same, by twos.

2. March, and wheel, by ranks of fours:—File off singly and double up, preserving proper distances, and not quickening on the wheel.

3. March, and wheel, by sub-divisions of ranks.

4. March, and wheel, by whole ranks.

5. March to front, and to rear; ranks at 10 paces asunder.

6. March the company in a single rank, to front, and to rear, by a flank, and by the center.

7. Oblique by ranks.

8. Open, and close files, and intervals, by the side step.

9. March in file, to either flanks.

10. Ranks successively advance 6 or 8 paces; halt, and dress.—Ranks successively fall back 6 or 8 paces; halt, and dress.

11. Advance, or retire 2 or 3 flank men; the ranks dress to them.

12. Open, and close ranks.

At Close Ranks, and Files.

13. March, and wheel in all directions, by sub-divisions, and by company.—Shorten step, and lengthen it, the march to be made both in ordinary and quick time,—The wheels to be made in wheeling time.

14. Advance, and retire, 2 or 3 flank files, and dress to them.

15. Open, and close to the flank, by the side-step.

16. Change front by the countermarch by files.

17. March to the flanks, close and without opening out.—Form to the front, or to either flank.

18. March oblique.

19. Sub-divisions double on the march, and again form up, by obliquing.

20. Wheel backwards by sub-divisions.--March along the line, to prolong it:—form to the flank, by wheeling up; or to the front by obliquing.

21. File from the flank of company to the rear, as in the passage of lines: *Halt, front*;—Close into pivot file:--Wheel up, as in forming in line.

22. From 3 deep, form 2 deep.

23. From 2 deep, form 3 deep.

24. Exercise of the firelock, manual, and platoon, by ranks, and company.

25. Firings by files, sub-divisions, and company.

The necessary pauses, and formations, betwixt these movements, in order to connect them, must of course be made.—They may be practised in whatever succession shall at the time be found proper.—The greatest precision must be required, and observed, in their execution, according to the rules already laid down.

Every officer must be instructed in each individual circumstance required of a recruit, or a soldier; also in the exercise of the sword: and accustomed to give words of command, with that energy, and precision, which is so essential.—Every officer, on first joining a regiment, is to be examined by the commanding officer; and, if he is found imperfect in the knowledge of the movements required from a soldier, he must be ordered to be exercised that he may learn

their

their juſt execution. Till he is maſter of thoſe points, and capable of inſtructing the men under his command, he is not to be permitted to take the command of a platoon in the battalion.

Squads of officers muſt be formed, and exerciſed by a field officer: they muſt be marched in all directions, to the front, oblique, and to the flank; they muſt be marched in line, at platoon diſtance, and preſerve their dreſſing and line from an advanced center; they muſt be placed in file at platoon diſtance, and marched as in open column; they muſt change direction, as in file, and cover anew in column. In theſe, and other ſimilar movements, the pace and the diſtances are the great objects to be maintained.---From the number of files in diviſion, they muſt learn accurately to judge the ground neceſſary for each, and to extend that knowledge to the front of greater bodies. They muſt acquire the habit of readily aſcertaining, by the eye, perpendiculars of march, and the ſquareneſs of the wheel.

An officer muſt not only know the poſt, which he ſhould occupy in all changes of ſituation, the commands which he ſhould give, and the general intention of the required movement; but he ſhould be maſter of the principles, on which each is made; and of the faults that may be committed, in order to avoid them himſelf, and to inſtruct others.—Theſe principles are in themſelves ſo ſimple, that moderate reflection, habit, and attention, will ſoon ſhew them to the eye, and fix them in the mind; and individuals, from time to time, when qualified, muſt be ordered to exerciſe the battalion, or its parts.

The complete inſtruction of an officer enlarges with his ſituation, and at laſt takes in the whole circle of military ſcience:—From the variety of knowledge required of him, his exertion muſt be unremitting, to qualify himſelf for the progreſſive ſituations at which he arrives.

Beſides the inſtruction peculiar to the under officers, they ſhould be exerciſed in the ſame manner as the officers are, as they are frequently called on to replace them:---The neceſſity alſo of order, ſteadineſs, ſilence, and of executing every thing deliberately, and without hurry, ſhould be ſtrongly inculcated in the infantry ſoldier.

D. D.

END OF PART SECOND.

PART III.

OF THE BATTALION.

A perfect Uniformity in the Formation and arrangement of all companies and battalions, is indifpenfible for the Execution of juft and combined Movements.

FORMATION OF THE COMPANY.

THE company is always to be fized from flanks to center.

The company is formed three deep.

The files lightly touch when firelocks are fhouldered and carried, but without crouding; and each man will occupy a fpace of about 22 inches.

Clofe order is the chief and primary order, in which the battalion and its parts at all times, affemble and form.—Open order is only regarded as an exception from it, and occafionally ufed in fituations of parade and fhow.—In clofe order; the Officers are in the ranks, and the rear ranks are clofed up, within one pace.—In open order; the Officers are advanced three paces, and the ranks are two paces diftant from each other.

Each company is a platoon.—Each company forms two fub-divifions and alfo four fections.—But as fections fhould never be lefs than five files, it will happen, when the companies are weak, that they can only (for the purpofes of march) form three fections, or even two fections.

When the company is fingly formed; the captain is on the right, and the enfign on the left, of the front rank, each covered by a ferjeant in the rear rank. The lieutenant is in the rear, as alfo the drummer and the pioneer in a fourth rank, at three paces diftance.
The left of the front rank of each fub-divifion is marked by a corporal.– The right of the left fub-divifion may be marked by the other corporal.

When neceffary, the places of abfent officers may be fupplied by ferjeants, thofe of ferjeants by corporals, and thofe of corporals by intelligent men.

When the company is to join others, and the battalion, or part of it, to be formed; the enfign and his covering ferjeant quit the flank, and fall into the fourth rank, until otherwife placed.

S. 70. *When the company is to take open order from clofe order.*

Rear Ranks take Open Order. At this command, the flank men on the right and left of the rear ranks, ftep back to mark the ground on which each rank refpectively is to halt, and drefs at open diftance; they face to the right, and ftand covered; every other individual remains ready to move.

March. At this command, the rear rank dreffes front, and the rear ranks fall back one and two paces, each dreffing by the right, the inftant it arrives on its ground:—the officers move out in front three paces, and divide their ground: one ferjeant is on each flank of the front rank:—the pioneer remains behind the center of the rear rank:—the drummer places himfelf on the right of the right ferjeant.

S. 71. *When the Company is to take close order from open order.*

Rear Rank take Close Order.	The officers, serjeants, drummer, face to the right.
	The ranks close within one pace, marching one and two paces, and then halting.
March.	The officers move round the flanks of the company in their respective posts:—the serjeants and drummers fall back, and each individual resumes his place, as in the original close order.

The above regards the company when single; but when united in the battalion, other posts are allotted to the drummer and pioneer.

FORMATION OF THE BATTALION.

The battalion is ten companies, - - - - { 1 Grenadier, 8 Battalion, 1 Light. — Strength of the battalion.

Each company consists at present of - - - { 3 Officers, 2 Serjeants, 3 Corporals, 1 Drummer, 30 Private.

When the companies join, and the battalion is formed, there is to be no interval between any of them, grenadier, light company, or other; but every part of the front of the battalion should be equally strong. — Formation of the battalion.

Each company which makes a part of the same line, and is to act in it, must be formed and arranged in the same manner.

The companies will draw up as follows from right to left:—grenadiers;—1st captain and major;—4th and 5th captain;—3d and 6th captain;—2d captain and lieutenant-colonel;—light company.——The colonel's company takes place according to the rank of its captain:—the four eldest captains are on the right of the grand-divisions:—officers commanding companies or platoons, are all on the right of the front rank of their respective ones. — Position of the companies in battalion.

The eight battalion companies will compose four grand divisions;—eight companies or platoons,—sixteen sub-divisions,—thirty-two sections when sufficiently strong to be so divided, otherwise twenty-four, for the purposes of march.—-The battalion is also divided into right and left wings.—-When the battalion is on a war establishment, each company will be divided into two platoons.—-When the ten companies are with the battalion, they may then, for the purposes of firing or deploying, be divided into five grand divisions from right to left. — Divisions.

The battalion companies will be numbered from the right to the left, 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.—The sub-divisions will be numbered 1. 2. of each;—the sections will be numbered 1. 2. 3. 4. of each;—the files of companies will also be numbered 1. 2. 3. 4. &c.—The grenadier and light companies will be numbered separately in the same manner, and with the addition of those distinctions.—These several appellations will be preserved, whether faced to front or rear.

The companies must be equalized in point of numbers, at all times when the battalion is formed for field movement; and could the battalions of a line also be equalized, the greatest advantages would arise; but though from the different strengths of battalions this cannot take place, yet the first requisite always must, and is indispensible. — Companies equalized.

Ranks are at the distance of one pace, except the fourth or supernumerary rank, which has three paces. — Formation of the battalion at close order.

All the field officers and the adjutant are mounted.

The commanding officer is the only officer advanced in front, for the general purpose of exercise when the battalion is single; but in the march in line, and in the firings, he is in the rear of the colours.

The lieutenant-colonel is behind the colours, six paces from the rear rank.

The major and adjutant are six paces in the rear of the third and sixth companies.

One officer is on the right of the front rank of each company or platoon, and one on the left of the battalion; all these are covered in the rear rank by their respective serjeants; and the remaining officers and serjeants are in a fourth rank behind their companies.—It is to be observed, that there are no coverers in the center rank to the officers or colours.

The colours are placed between the fourth and fifth battalion companies, both in the front rank, and each covered by a non-commissioned officer, or steady man in the rear rank.---One serjeant is in the front rank betwixt the colours; he is covered by a second serjeant in the rear rank, and by a third in the supernumerary rank.--The sole business of these three serjeants is, when the battalion moves in line, to advance and direct the march as hereafter mentioned. The place of the first of those serjeants, when they do move out, is preserved by a named officer or serjeant, who moves up from the supernumerary rank for that purpose.

Use of the fourth or supernumerary rank. The fourth rank is at three paces distance when halted, or marching in line.--When marching in column, it must close up to the distance of the other ranks.--The essential use of the fourth rank is, to keep the others closed up to the front during the attack, and to prevent any break beginning in the rear; on this important service, too many officers and non-commissioned officers cannot be employed.

The Pioneers are assembled behind the center, formed two deep, and nine paces from the third rank.

The drummers of the eight battalion company's are assembled in two divisions, six paces behind the third rank of their second and seventh companies. -The grenadier and light company drummers and fifers are six paces behind their respective companies.

The music are three paces behind the pioneers in a single rank, and at all times, as well as the drummers and pioneers, are formed at loose files only, occupying no more space than is necessary.

The staff of chaplain, surgeon, quarter-master, and surgeon's mate, are three paces behind the music.

Officers. In general, officers remain posted with their proper companies; but commanding officers will occasionally make such changes as they may find necessary.

Replacing serjeants. Whenever the officers move out of the front rank, in parade, marching in column, wheeling into line, or otherwise, their places are taken by their serjeant coverers, and preserved until the officers again resume them.

When the line is halted, and especially during the firings when engaged, the serjeant coverers fall back into the fourth rank, and observe their platoons.

S. 72. *When the Battalion takes Open Order.*

Rear Ranks take Open Order. At this command--the flank men on the right of the rear ranks of each company step briskly back to mark the ground on which each rank respectively is to halt. They *face* to the right, and cover as pivots, being regulated and dressed by the adjutant or serjeant-major on the right.--Every other individual remains ready to move.

March. At this command--the flank dressers face to the front, and the whole move as follows.

The rear ranks fall back one and two paces, each dressing by the right the instant it arrives on the ground.

The officers in the front rank, as also the colours, move out three paces--those in the rear, togeher with the music, move through the intervals left open by the front rank officers, and divide themselves, viz. the captains covering

ing the ſecond file from the right, the lieutenants the ſecond file from the left; and the enſigns oppoſite the center of their reſpective companies.

The muſic form between the colours, and the front rank.

The ſerjeant coverers move up to the front rank, to preſerve the intervals left by the officers.

The pioneers fall back to ſix paces diſtance behind the center of the rear rank.

The drummers take the ſame diſtance behind their diviſions.

The major moves to the right of the line of officers.—The adjutant to the left of the front rank.

The ſtaff place themſelves on the right of the front rank of the grenadiers, viz. chaplain, ſurgeon, quarter maſter, mate.

The lieutenant colonel, and the colonel (diſmounted), advance before the colours, two and four paces.

The whole being arrived at their ſeveral poſts—Halt—Dreſs to the right—and the battalion remains formed in parade, in the order in which they they would receive a ſuperior officer.

When the battalion is reviewed ſingly, then in order to make more ſhow—the diviſion of drummers may be moved up, and formed two deep on each flank of the line—the pioneers may form two deep on the right of the drummers of the right—and the ſtaff may form on the right of the whole.

S. 73. *When the Battalion reſumes cloſe order.*

Rear Ranks take Cloſe Order.

The lieutenant colonel, officers, colours, ſtaff, muſic, face to the right.

The drummers and pioneers (if on the flanks) face to the center.

The ſerjeants (if in the front rank) face to the right.

March.

The rear ranks cloſe within one pace, moving up one and two paces, and then halting.

The muſic marches through the center interval.

The ſerjeants, drummers, pioneers, &c. &c. reſume their places, each as in the original formation of the battalion in cloſe order.

The officers move through and into their reſpective intervals, and each individual arrives, and places himſelf properly at his poſt in cloſe order.

On particular occaſions, and when neceſſary, officers commanding platoons, who in line are on the right of their platoons, ſhift to the left to conduct the heads of files, or the pivot flanks of their diviſions in column or echellon. **Poſting of Officers.**

When the battalion wheels by companies or ſub-diviſions to either flank into column; both colours and the file of directing ſerjeants always wheel to the proper front, and place themſelves behind the third file from the new pivot. **Colours.**

There is no ſeparate colour reſerve; the pioneers, muſic, &c. ſufficiently ſtrengthen the center; but in the firings the two files on each ſide of the colours may be ordered to reſerve their fire. **Colour reſerve.**

The conſtant order of the light company when formed in line, and united with the battalion, is at the ſame cloſe files as the battalion.—Their extended order is an occaſional exception. **Light Company.**

When the light company is detached, and the grenadier company remains, it will be undivided on one flank of its battalion, whenever there are ſeveral battalions in line: but when the battalion is ſingle, it is permitted to be occaſionally divided on each flank. **Grenadiers.**

When the grenadier or light companies are detached, and make no part of the line, they may be formed two deep, if it is found proper.

With

With a very few obvious alterations, these general rules take place when a company or battalion is permitted or ordered to form in two ranks only – and which, on the present low establishment of our battalions, may often be done for the purposes of exercise and movement on a more considerable front: it is also evident that they generally apply whether the companies are strong or weak, and whether a greater or lesser number of them compose the battalion.

GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES PREPARATORY TO THE MOVEMENTS OF THE BATTALION.

S. 74. *Commands.*

All words of command, and particularly the words HALT or MARCH, must be given short, quick and loud, so as to be caught and repeated from right to left of a line, or from front to rear of a column, in the shortest time possible.

All Alterations, in carrying ARMS; change of PACE; WHEELING; FACING; OBLIQUING; HALTING; MARCHING; and in general every operation of the battalion whether in line or column, which ought be executed by the whole battalion at the same instant, are made by each in consequence of one word from the commander of each: but there are also many occasions in column, and in forming line, where the leaders of divisions repeat, or give the words or *March*, *Wheel*, *Halt*, *Front*, *Dress*, &c. to their several divisions, as is necessary.

Every officer must be accustomed to give his words of command, even to the smallest bodies, in the full extent of his voice, and in a sharp tone:—by such bodies he must not only be heard, but by the leaders of others who are dependant on his motions.—The justness of execution, and the confidence of the soldier, can only be in proportion to the firm, decided, and proper manner in which every officer of rank gives his orders.—An officer who cannot thoroughly discipline and exercise the body entrusted to his command, is not fit in time of service to lead it to the enemy; he cannot be cool, and collected in the time of danger; he cannot profit of circumstances from an inability to direct others; the fate of many depends on his ill or well acquitting himself of this duty.—It is not sufficient to advance with bravery; it is requisite to have that degree of intelligence, which would distinguish every officer according to his station: nor will soldiers ever act with spirit and animation, when they have no reliance on the capacity of those who do conduct them.

In the midst of surrounding noises, the eye and the ear of the soldier should be attentive only to his own immediate officer; the loudness of whose commands, instead of creating confusion and unsteadiness reconcile to the hurry of action.

On all occasions when words of command are not heard, if the directing body has made a change of situaton, the rest of the body will conform to it, as soon as the intelligence of the officer has pointed out what is meant to be done; and the eye will often shew the propriety and moment of movement, when the ear has not received the explanatory command.

The field officers and adjutant of the battalion are at all times mounted.—In order the more readily to give ground in movements, speedily to correct mistakes, to circulate orders, to dress pivots, when they ought to cover in column in a straight line, and especially to take care when the column halts, that they are most speedily adjusted before wheeling up into line.—These operations no dismounted officer can effectually perform, nor in that situation can he see the faults, or give the aids which his duties requires.

S. 75. *Distance of Files.*

Except in the instruction of recruits and squads, on some occasions of regimental parade or inspection, and in the peculiar exercise of the light company, open files are not to be used, and at all times the battalion, or its most

most minute parts are to form, move, and act at Close Files, so that each soldier when in his true position under arms, shouldered, and in rank, must just feel with his elbow the touch of his neighbour with whom he dresses; nor in any situation of movement in front, must he ever relinquish such touch, which becomes in action the principal direction for the preservation of his order, and each file, as connected with its two neighbouring ones, must consider itself a complete body, so arranged for the purpose of attack, or effectual defence.

It cannot be doubted, when a battalion arrives at its object of attack at CLOSE FILES, that both its impulse and quantity of fire, in the same extent of front, is greater than when the files are more open; and should crowding be apprehended, it is at all times more eligible to have a division obliged to fall out of the line and double, than to have openings in it, where the enemy must certainly penetrate.

The perfect and correct march of a battalion or line formed at OPEN FILES seems hardly attainable, because its principal guidance, the touch of the files, does not exist; each man is necessarily employed to preserve a required distance from his neighbour, he is obliged for that purpose to turn his head, this distorts his body, and gives him a direction contrary to the perpendicular line he should march on, a constant opening and closing takes place, and the whole move loose and unconnected.—If this must necessarily happen in a single battalion, the influence on a line may be easily imagined, and also the condition in which it will arrive near an enemy; who if he is formed at CLOSE FILES, if his dressing and line are chiefly determined by the touch; if the eyes alone are glanced towards the center of battalions; if the figure of each individual is full to the front; if the whole move square along their just lines without crouding, at an uniform and cadenced pace, which habit alone, unchecked by false and adventitious aids, has given:—He at every instant of movement or attack will be firm, united, and animated with that sense of his own superiority, which perfect order and due consistence will always give.

S. 76. *Distances of Ranks.*

There are two distances of ranks, *Open* and *Close*.—When open they are two paces asunder.—When close they are one pace.—When the body is halted and to fire, they are still closer locked up.

Close ranks or order is the constant and habitual order at which troops or at all times formed, and move.—*Open* ranks or order, is only an occasional exception, made in the situation of parade.

The distances of files and ranks relate to the trained soldier, but in the course of his tuition, he must be much exercised at open files and ranks to acquire independance and the command of his limbs and body.

S. 77. *Depth of Formation.*

The fundamental order of the infantry, in which they should always form and act, and for which all their various operations and movements are calculated, is in *three ranks*:---The formation in *two ranks* is to be regarded as an occasional exception that may be made from it, where an extended and covered front is to be occupied, or where an irregular enemy, who deals only in fire is to be opposed.---But from the present low establishment of our battalions, they are during the time of peace permitted, in order to give the more extent of front in their operations, to continue to form and use it, in many of their movements and firings, at the same time not omitting frequently to practise them in three ranks.

The formation in two ranks, and at open files, is calculated only for light troops in the attack and pursuit of a timid enemy, but not for making an impression on an opposite regular line, which vigorously assails, or resists.---No general could manage a considerable army, if formed and extended in this manner.---The great science and object of movement being to act with superiority on chosen points; it is never the intention of an able commander to have all his men at the same time in action; he means by skill and manoeuvre to attack a partial part, and to bring the many to act against the few; this cannot be accomplished by any

any body at *open* files, and *two* deep.---A line formed in this manner would never be brought to make or to ſtand an attack with bayonets, nor could it have any proſpect of reſiſting the charge of a determined cavalry.---In no ſervice is the fire and conſiſtency of the third rank given up; it ſerves to fill up the vacancies made in the others in action, without it the battalion would ſoon be in a ſingle rank.

S. 78. *Muſick and Drums.*

The uſe of MUSICK OR DRUMS to regulate the march is abſolutely forbid, as incompatible with the juſt and combined movements of any conſiderable body, and giving a falſe aid to the very ſmalleſt.---They never perſevere in the ordered time or in any other, are conſtantly changing meaſure, create noiſe, derange the equality of ſtep, and counteract the very end they are ſuppoſed to promote. The ordered and cadenced MARCH can be acquired and preſerved from the eye and habit alone, and troops muſt by great practice be ſo ſteadied as to be able to maintain it, even though drums, muſick, or other circumſtances, ſhould be offering a different marked time.---On occaſions of parade and ſhow, and when troops are halted, they are properly uſed, and, when circumſtance do not forbid it, may be ſometimes permitted as inſpiriting in column of march, where unity of ſtep is not ſo critically required.---But in all movements of manœuvre whatever, and as at any time directing the cadence of the ſtep, or in the inſtruction of the recruit, officer or battalion, they muſt not heard.

S. 79. *The March.*

General intention. 1. All military movements are intended to be made with the greateſt quickneſs, that is conſiſtent with order, regularity, and without hurry or fatigue to the troops.---The uniformity of poſition, cadence, and length of ſtep, produce that equality and freedom of march, on every thing depends, and to which the ſoldier muſt be carefully trained, nor ſuffered to join the battalion until he is thoroughly prefected in this moſt eſſential duty.

Degrees of march. 2. The different degrees of march have been already detailed in the firſt and ſecond parts, and to theſe muſt the ſoldier be trained and accuſtomed without drum, or muſic, and by habit alone taught to acquire the given times, and length.---To the equal and unvaried cadence and length of ſtep thus attained, can troops alone truſt for the preſervation of their line in advancing upon an enemy, when duſt, the ſmoke of artillery, rain, fog, and many other local circumſtances, make it impoſſible to depend on diſtant points, the uncertain time given by timed muſicians, or any other adventitious help.

3. A company or diviſion may occaſionally run, a battalion may ſometimes march quick, but the hurrying of a large column, or of a body moving in front, will certainly produce confuſion and diſorder. It is never to be riſqued when an enemy is in preſence and to be encountered; though it may ſometimes be neceſſary where a poſt or ſituation is to be ſeized.

Side ſtep. 4. The uſe of the ſide or cloſing ſtep has been already mentioned S. 43.---If more than one platoon is to cloſe, at the words, &c. CLOSE---MARCH---HALT---the cloſing body proceeds as directed S. 13. 43. If the body which is to cloſe is truely formed, and has no falſe openings, in it which are to be corrected, but that the whole is meant to be ſhifted to a named flank; the word from the commanding officer puts in march, and halts the whole. But if the intention is to correct improper intervals between platoons or files, the word from the commanding officer puts the whole that are to cloſe in march towards the ordered hand; and each platoon officer ſeparately and ſucceſſively gives his word *Halt* at the proper inſtant that his platoon has cloſed to that hand; this he is the better enabled to do from being himſelf out of the rank, and facing his platoon.

Halts. 5. All halts are made to the point, to which the troops while in march are looking; by bringing up the rear foot to the advanced one, ſo as to finiſh the ſtep which is taking, when the command is given; and after which no dreſſing or movement whatever is to be made, until a ſeparate order directs it.

6. The

6. The oblique march enables a body to preserve its parallel direction, and at the same time to gain ground to the flank, as well as to the front, without filing or opening out.—It is particularly necessary for the battalion in line, when intervals are to be corrected, and in the forming up, and doubling of its divisions.---With a body of any extent, it is a very nice operation to execute. Each battalion in line obliques without turning eyes from its own center.—One degree of obliquing only (under the angle of about 25°) is to be required from an extended front of troops, and even in that it is exceeding difficult to preserve them: but the smaller divisions of the battalion will often be obliged in forming up, or in doubling, especially when in movement, to oblique more or less sharply, according to circumstances.—S. 8. 35. 55.

Oblique march. Fig. 1.

S. 80. *Wheeling.*

Wheeling in general.

1. A single rank or division might at all times wheel to a *halted flank*, without alteration of the time at which it is then marching; by the outward wheeling man preserving the usual length of step, and the others properly shortening theirs to remain dressed with him:---The same might take place in column, whose divisions were equal, and when the wheel is under 16th of the circle.---But when it exceeds that portion, it becomes necessary in order to clear the ground, prevent false distances, and a lengthening out; that the divisions successively make their wheels to their *halted flank* at a pace considerably quicker, than what the body of the column is moving at.

Wheels made on halted or moveable pivots. Fig. 4. B.

2. Wheels of divisions of a battalion or line, are made on a halted pivot, or on a moveable pivot.---When on a HALTED pivot they are made from line into column, or from column into line; and also generally by the column of manœuvre or march in movement, when the front of it is considerable, and when the wheel by which its direction is to be changed approaches to, or exceeds the quarter circle.---When on a MOVEABLE pivot, they are only used and occasionally ordered in the column of march, when its front is small, and that its path is winding, and changeable; in that case both flanks are moveable, and describe concentric circles round a point which is removed a few paces from what would otherwise be the standing flank.

On a halted pivot. Fig. 4. B.

3. The various circumstances attending the wheels on the HALTED pivot have been detailed in the first and second parts.---Although the pause made after the *Halt,—Dress*, gives time in large fronts for exact dressing, yet in small ones, where that pause is short, there is no time for such exactness, the attention to, and preservation of the true distance, being then the material object.—Whenever the wheel made is less than the quarter circle, the pause after the wheel will be considerable; should the wheel be greater than the quarter circle it must be accelerated, otherwise more than one division will be arrived and arrested at the pivot point.—Should a column be marching in quick time, it is evident that its wheels must be in proportion quickened, to disengage in time the pivot point for each successive division.

On a moveable pivot. Fig. 4 B.

4. When the column of sections, sub-divisions, or companies, is obliged frequently to change its direction of march, and that it is permitted to do it on the MOVEABLE pivot (S. 21. 52.) instead of a halted pivot. -If the pivot leader describes the smaller circle of the wheel, he leaves the point on which he marched, and where the old and new directions interfect, close to his own hand wheeled to.—When he describes the greater circle, he leaves such point wide from his own wheeling hand.---In both cases the more considerable the sweep he makes from the old to the new direction, the easier and more gradually can the other flank conform, and therefore when this mode is made use of, the column is supposed to have sufficient room on its flanks to allow of the necessary operations: for if both flanks cannot be kept in progressive movement during the change of direction, the wheels cannot be thus made, but must be executed quick, and on *fixed* pivots, otherwise the ground would not be clear for the succeeding divisions, and they would stop each other, and interfere.--In this manner will the column on a small front follow the windings of a route, be conducted through an open wood, or trace out the irregular edge of a height, which it is to occupy; and indeed, on all common occasions of route marching, where perfect correctness is not required, it will thus change into new directions.

Wheel of divisions backwards.

5. Wheels of divisions may be made either forward or backward.---In general (and always in progressive movement), they are made forward, but particular occasions require that they should be made BACKWARD, on the pivot flank.---In this manner may the line wheel into open column of platoons, sub-divisions, or sections: the flank sides of the square, or oblong, may thus wheel into column, when the body is to be put in march: the line already formed may be thus prolonged when necessary to either flank, as the pivots are thus preserved: it is also advantageously used in marching off parades, where guards are of diffe-

rent

rent ſtrengths, and is often eſſentially neceſſary in narrow grounds.---By this means although diviſions ſhould be unequal, either in the ſame battalion, or in a line, yet all their pivot flanks will after the wheel remain truly dreſſed; of courſe the diſtances will be juſt; the line of marching accurately preſerved, and each diviſion by afterwards wheeling up will exactly occupy the identical ground it quitted.--Whereas in wheeling FORWARD from line into open column, even if the diviſions are of equal ſtrength, the pivots and diſtances after the wheel will not be true, becauſe the different ſizes of men, and the leaſt over or under wheel of any one diviſion will derange them, which in practice will infallibly happen.--But if the diviſions are of unequal ſtrength, independant of the pivots neceſſarily not covering, the diſtances which the column marches off at, muſt be all changed during the march, otherwiſe when the column is to wheel up, and form, ſtrong diviſions would have to wheel into the ſpace, which the weaker ones had left, and *vice verſa*; the conſequence and confuſion thence ariſing is obvious.

Fig. 21. B.

Fig. 21 A.

General rule.

6. To prevent therefore ſuch inconvenence it muſt be regarded as a rule almoſt general— That all wheels by companies or ſmaller diviſions, from battalion or line (when halted) into open column ſhould be made BACKWARD, and all wheels from open column into line FORWARD: The only neceſſary exceptions ſeem to be ſome caſes in narrow grounds, where there is not room for ſuch wheels.—If the diviſion does not exceed 16 or 18 file, it may readily wheel back without facing about; but if the diviſion is ſtronger and the ground uneven, it muſt *Face about--Wheel*—and then *Halt, front.*

When wheels of diviſions are made backwards, or forwards.

7. In wheeling BACKWARD from line into column, when the right is to be in front, the wheel is made ON the left; and when the left is to be in front, the wheel is made on the right.---In wheeling FORWARD the ſtanding flank man faces outward from his diviſion:— In wheeling BACKWARD he faces inward to his diviſion.---In wheeling FORWARD, the proper pivot flank of the column is the wheeling one: In wheeling BACKWARD, the pivot flank is the ſtanding one, and remaining fixed, the diviſions however unequal will always cover on that hand, which will not be the caſe if the wheel is made forward. In wheeling FORWARD, the command is TO THE RIGHT, (or) TO THE LEFT, WHEEL: In wheeling BACKWARD, the command is ON THE RIGHT, (or) ON THE LEFT, BACKWARD WHEEL.

Circumſtances in wheeling.

8. As the circumference of the quarter circle which a diviſion deſcribes in its wheel, is one half more, (nearly) than its front; it is neceſſary that in open column, it ſhould, in the time that it takes to march over a ſpace equal to the extent of its front, not only complete the wheel of the quarter circle, but be enabled to move on at its juſt diſtance from its preceding diviſion, and not to ſtop that which ſucceeds it. The wheel muſt therefore be quickened, or the ſtep lengthened, (or part of both applied) in proportion to the general march.

Number of files in a diviſion, each occupying 22 inches	5.	10.	12.	14.	15.	16.	18.	20.	30.	40.	50.	100.
Front of diviſions in Ordinary paces of 30 inches.	P. I n 3.20.	7.10	8.24	10.8	11.	11.22	13.6	14.20	22.	29.10	36.20	70.10

9. A diviſion conſiſting of 10 files, and each occupying 22 inches, will at paces of 30 inches take 7 paces 10 inches for its front.---Now 75 ſteps in a minute being the ordinary time, and 120 the wheeling time, 75 : 120 :: 7¼ : 11 2-3ds nearly the number of wheeling paces of 30 inches each, which the wheeling man can take while the following diviſion is making its 7⅓ ordinary paces in front, and 11 of which exactly completes the quarter circle: but if each of theſe 11 paces is lengthened with 3 inches, then the wheel will be completed in 10 ſteps, and a pauſe of one pace and 2-3ds of a pace, or 5-6ths of a ſecond of time, will be reſerved for the *Halt, Dreſs*, and *March* of the diviſion, after it has at 10 long paces of 33 inches completed the wheel.---This pauſe will encreaſe or diminiſh according to the greater or leſſer extent of the wheeling body, and in the above proportions of time and ſtep, it is 1-7th of the time employed by ſuch body in wheeling the quarter circle.—— This allowance, which is barely ſufficient in a diviſion of 10 files, and which cannot well be encreaſed, either by length of ſtep, or quickneſs of time, ſhews how pointed and quick the commands muſt be, not to occaſion a loſs of ground to each ſucceſſive diviſion at the points of wheeling.

Neceſſary recollections.

10. It appears that the front of any diviſion or body, is in ordinary paces of 30 inches, nearly 3-4ths of the number of files of which it is compoſed.—That the circumference of the quarter circle which it deſcribes is in wheeling paces of 33 inches, the ſame as the number of files on which it is compoſed. ——That the number of files being once aſcertained in each diviſion, the officer commanding it muſt on all occaſions recollect the number of paces that

that are equal to his front; alſo the number of wheeling paces which the flank man muſt take to complete the quarter circle; alſo the ſpare time, which he has to regulate the *Halt*, *March* of his diviſion after wheeling.

Wheeling paces required to deſcribe.	The 6th of the circle, or an angle of 60°.	are 2-3ds	of the number of files of which the front conſiſts.
	The 8th - -	45°. — $\frac{1}{2}$	
	The 16th - -	$22^\circ\frac{1}{2}$ — $\frac{1}{4}$	
	The 32d - -	$11^\circ\frac{1}{4}$ — $\frac{1}{8}$	

11th.—The field officers and adjutants muſt always recollect the number of paces the front of the battalion and its diviſions occupy, in order to take up ground exactly in all formations.

S. 81. *Movements.*

1. Every movement muſt be divided into its diſtinct parts, and each part executed by its explanatory and ſeparate words of command.

2. Alterations of poſition in conſiderable bodies ſhould begin from a previous halt; except giving a new direction to the heads of columns, or increaſing or diminiſhing their front, which may be done while in motion.

3. The exerciſe of ſmall bodies, when within the command of one voice, appears more ſhowy from the keeping ſuch bodies conſtantly in motion, and by changing from one manœuvre to another while on the march.—But ſuch movements, and the formations made from them, muſt be on accidental points, and however brilliant in battalion practice, and review appearance, where the leſſon of the day has been previouſly arranged, they can only be conſidered as occaſional exceptions, not applicable to large bodies where hurry muſt be avoided, and where concert and relative poſition are indiſpenſible.

4. As the principle of moving, forming, and dreſſing upon given, and determined points is juſt, all quick alterations of poſition of a conſiderable body, attempted while on the move, and not proceeding from a previous halt (however ſhort) are falſe, and defective, the effects of which, though not ſo apparent in a ſingle battalion, would be very obvious in a line or column of any extent.—A pauſe between each change of ſituation, ſo eſſentially neceſſary to the movements of great bodies, ſhould ſeldom be omitted in thoſe of ſmall ones; ſquareneſs of dreſſing, the exact perpendiculars of march, and the correct relative poſition of the whole, are thereby aſcertained.—Such alterations of ſituation made from the halt, may when neceſſary ſucceed each other quickly; and in many caſes no unneceſſary time need be taken up in ſcrupulous dreſſing, but every one may be inſtantly apprized of the following movement, which circumſtances require.

S. 82. *Points of March.*

1. Every leader of a body which is to move directly forward in front, muſt take care to conduct it in a line truly perpendicular to that front.—To march ſtraight on one object only with certainty and without wavering, is not to be depended on; two objects therefore placed and preſerved during the march in the ſame ſtraight line, are neceſſary for the purpoſes of correct movement, when the intent is truly to prolong a given line.

2. Two objects will therefore in general be prepared for the direction of any conſiderable body: But ſhould a leader, either in file or in front, have only one marked point of march aſcertained to him, he will himſelf inſtantly look out for his ſmall intermediate points, which are always to be found, which he will from time to time renew, and which are to preſerve and determine the accuracy of his movement towards the more diſtant point. (V. S. 42.)

S. 83. *The Alignement.*

1. To march or form in the ALIGNEMENT, is to make troops march, or form in any part of the ſtraight line which joins two given points. —On the juſtneſs and obſervance of this line, depends the accuracy of the moſt eſſential movements and formations, and therefore every relative help muſt be applied to enſure it.

2. In formations of defence the lines occupied may be curved, and following the advantages of the ground, but in thoſe of attack, the lines muſt be ſtraight, otherwiſe the troops in advancing muſt inevitably fall into confuſion.

Fig. 12. 3. When troops are to form in a ſtraight line, two neceſſary points in it muſt always be previouſly aſcertained.—One the point of APPUI (A. a. a.) at which one flank of the body, whether ſmall or great, is to be placed, and the other the point of FORMATION or DRESSING (D.) on which the front of the body is directed.

Fig. 12. 4. When the Battalions, or diviſions of a battalion come up ſucceſſively into line, the outward flank of the laſt formed and halted body is always conſidered as the point of APPUI (a. a.) or ſupport of the ſucceeding one, and in this manner is the general line prolonged from each ſucceſſive point of Appui, towards the given diſtant point of formation (D.)---The looking and lining of the ſoldier in forming is always towards the point of Appui, and the correction of dreſſing is always from that point towards the oppoſite hand.---This great principle is to be obſerved, from the ſmalleſt body to the moſt conſiderable corps, and regulates the formation of the diviſions, the battalion, and the line.

S. 84. *Points of Formation.*

Neceſſity of formations made on given points.

1. In the movements of a ſingle battalion, and in the taking up of a new poſition, it may not ſeem material whether a flank is placed a few yards to the one hand or other, or whether the line formed on is exactly directed on any certain point.---But when a battalion makes a part of a more conſiderable body, then all its poſitions being relative to other battalions and to given points, if its formations are not accurate and juſt, it will create general confuſion, and give falſe directions and diſtances to thoſe whoſe ſituation muſt be determined by it.--The neceſſity therefore of every ſingle Battalion being accuſtomed to make its changes of poſition, and formations on determined points, is apparent, and is an object which commanding officers muſt always hold in view, and have their adjutants and others prepared and inſtructed accordingly.

Baſe line, and method of prolonging it.

2. The line on which troops in column move, or are ſucceſſively to form, is taken up to any extent by the prolongation of an original ſhort and given BASE, eſtabliſhed where they firſt begin to enter, or form on that line, the direction of which is determined by the views of the commander, and which can ſeldom fail to point on ſome diſtant and diſtinct object, that will ſerve to correct the poſition of the different perſons who ſucceſſively, as their ſeperate bodies require it, prolong the line from the ſeveral points already eſtabliſhed in it.----- In general, therefore the point (A.) where a formation or entry into an alignement is to be made being marked by a fixed perſon, the commander will place a ſecond (o.) 30 or 40 paces, without the firſt, exactly in the direction which he determines to give up to his new line, and which will generally be on ſome diſtant object. Theſe two perſons will mark a baſe, which by adjutants (a. a. a.) or others ſucceſſively aligning themſelves backwards on the two firſt placed men, and on each other, may be prolonged to any required length, at the ſame time that the diſtant point (D.) ſerves for the commander, who perhaps alone knows it, to correct them upon.

Fig. 13.

Methods of aſcertaining points of movement or formation.

Fig. 13.

3. Two original or baſe points (o. A.) which are to be prolonged or formed upon, ſhould not be too cloſe together, otherwiſe the direction of the line muſt be indiſtinct, and the farther they are aſunder the better can a line be taken upon them.---Where two points (o. A.) are to be given in a certain direction towards a diſtant one (D.) the innermoſt (A.) ſhould be firſt determined, and the outer one (o.) is immediately and eaſily taken over the innermoſt and the diſtant one (D.) of correction.---Should the outer one (o.) be firſt taken, time is loſt in directing the ſhifting of the inner one (A.) before it is truly lined on the more diſtant point (D.); beſides the point (A.) in many changes of poſition of a line or column is naturally the firſt aſcertained (being the pivot flank of a company on which the change is to be made, or the point of march towards which the column is moving) and from thence the diſtant point (D.) is then taken, which gives the new direction, and depends on the eye and intention of the commander; the eaſy aſcertaining of (o.) follows of courſe.--- Or the commander, after aſcertaining (A.) will fix (o.) *ad libitum*, and find out (D.) if ſuch object preſents itſelf in the prolongation of the other two.--At any rate (A.) is the point firſt to be determined on.

Poſition of prolongers of lines.

4. When the Perſons who prolong a line are on horſeback, the head of the horſe of each ſtanding perpendicular to that line is the object, and when they diſmount their own breaſt is

the

the object, which the shoulders of the leaders of the divisions of a column in march, rase in passing, and which is in the line of the head of the horse—It is also the breast of such other men, as may be posted on foot, which the several leaders in the like manner rase, as they successively arrive at them.

Although the leaders of the two first divisions of a column march on the persons placed in the line, yet if its direction happens to be on some remarkable object, they should as soon as possible discover it, or be shewn it as the general correction of the march.

5. When a number of officers or serjeants (s. s. s. s.) are to be individually, successively, and separately advanced, in order to give a direction on which pivots of the divisions of a column are to stand; or flanks of divisions which successively come into line are to be halted, or on which the dressing of a battalion is to be corrected—Two such persons will be truly, and previously placed, and the others the more exactly to attain a perfect line, instead of attempting at once to dress by each other's breasts, will first cover in FILE with precision at their required distances, and then carefully front as directed, before their several divisions move up to them.—Were such persons to endeavour to take up their ground at first, by dressing in a line; the least inclination backward or forward of the body, and the certainty of the shoulders turning, when the eyes are directed to a flank, would make it a difficult operation: But in FILE, when each places himself square on the line, covering the necks of those before him, the inclination of the body backward or forward does not affect the direction, and the end proposed is at once attained. Fig. 14. Methods of prolonging a line by officers or serjeants.

6. In successive forming of divisions into line, as from close column, from echellon, &c. the first division (A. a.) that arrives in, and is truly formed on it, may be considered as the BASE, which is constantly prolonging for the others; the men, as they come up, endeavour to line well on the part already formed, and the officer corrects that lining on the distant point, in the true prolongation which is prepared for him by his Adjutant or other persons, just beyond where the flank of his battalion is to extend, and thus battalion after battalion arrive in line. Fig. 12.

7. The ascertaining of the points necessary for the movements and formations of the battalion, is the particular business of the Adjutant in the field; and in this exercise he may be assisted by two detached persons placed behind each flank of the battalion, who are properly trained, quickly to take up such line as he shall give them; but for this purpose they are not to run out before their aid is wanted, nor are they to make any unnecessary bustle, and when the operation for which they were sent out is accomplished, they will immediately return behind their proper flank.

S. 85. *Dressing.*

1. In DRESSING when halted, a small turn of the head is necessary, and is allowed in order to facilitate it.——When the word *Dress* is alone given, it means to the hand to which the troops are then looking, and when eyes are at the same time to be turned to a new point in order to dress, it should be so expressed by the addition of *right, center,* or *left.*——But whenever the word *Halt, Dress,* is given by an officer to his division, it always implies that the men are looking, or are to look to such officer, who is then on the flank of Appui.

2. All DRESSING is to be made with as much alacrity of officer and soldier as possible, and the dresser of each body, as he accomplishes the operation, will give a caution *Front,* that heads may then be replaced, and remain square to the front. If the body to be dressed is extensive, as that of a battalion or parade, the dresser must justly place one division before he proceeds on that which is beyond it.

3. On all occasions without exception of FORMING and DRESSING in line, it must be remembered that the soldiers come into line with their eyes directed to the general point of *Appui* (A) where the leading flank is to rest, and of course towards whatever part of a line is nearer that point than themselves, which may be already formed before them, and is to them a direction.——But the officer in dressing (without exception) is placed on that flank of his division or body towards which the men's eyes are turned, and from thence he makes his corrections of the other flank on the distant points (D) which is previously marked by the adjutant, or some other person placed in the true general line; therefore, on all occasions, by the men's lining themselves to one hand, and the officers correcting to the other, the most perfect line may be obtained.——Should it be neglected to give or prepare such points of correction, the dressing of the line would be irregular and slow, and depend entirely on the men taking it up from each other, and from the first formed flank, which is an imperfect method, Fig. 15. General attentions of dressing in all formations.

and

and can never produce a just line, capable of marching forward in due order.——The having such points quickly and successively prepared the instant before they are wanted, and without any noise, or apparent bustle, so that no delay may be made in the operations of the battalion or line, is one of the great attentions of the Commanding Officer and Adjutant, to which also the intelligence of the trained persons placed behind the flanks will much contribute.

Points necessary to be given in movements, or formations. Fig. 13.

4. If the open column is to enter on an alignement, there must be three prepared points; one (A.) where it enters, and which serves as a future point of correction in march, and in forming; and two more (a. D.) always advanced before it.

Fig. 16.

5. If the close column is to form in line on a flank division, it must have a point (D.) of march and correction beyond the other flank, and intermediate small points must also be taken by the leader of the front division, in order to preserve its direction of movement. If it forms on a central division, it must then have a point of correction to each flank (D. D.) and march justly on intermediate ones.

Fig. 12. 15.

6. If a battalion takes a new position by the echellon march, there must be a point, (A.) given where its leading flank enters the line and forms on it, and another (D.) just beyond its extreme flank on which the dressing of each division is corrected.

Fig. 14. 18.

7. If the battalion changes position to a flank, by the filing of divisions, the prolongation of two points (A. o.) given in front of the pivot flank of its leading division, will determine the direction of the other pivots.---If the change is central, one central point (a.) and one (o. o.) on each side of it being prolonged, will determine in like manner the line of the other pivots.

8. The commander will himself generally have a distant point, on which he will determine those battalion points, and which will serve him as his point to correct the whole.—Independent, therefore of the partial helps which advanced serjeants may give to the formation and dressing of their several divisions, it may be observed with respect to one or more battalions, that in marching in front, or in column, *two* advanced points and *one* rear point are necessary: and in successive formations into line, besides its point of *Appui* which each body moves up to, *one* distant point taken in the determined direction, and beyond where the battalion is to extend, is essential for the correction of its dressing, and in this line is every division exactly brought up, and dressed.

OPEN COLUMN.

Formation of columns

1. ALL COLUMNS are supposed formed from line for the convenience of movement, and for the purpose of again extending into line.--Every column of march or manœuvre must be formed by a regular succession of the divisions from right to left of the line, or of such of its parts as compose the column, for whatever is the relative position of a body in line, such ought it to be in column: and where several connected co. columns are formed, the same flanks of each should be in front, but whether rights or lefts will depend on circumstances.-- —Columns formed from the center of battalions or lines, should seldom be made, are partial, and not adapted, as the others are, to movements and formations in all situations.

Columns of march, and manœuvre.

2. The chief objects of the OPEN column are, facility of movement, the quick formation of the line to the flank, and the change of situation in the shortest lines from one position to another.—It is named the column of march or ROUTE, when applied to common marches, where the attention of men and officers are not so much kept on the stretch.—It is named the column of MANŒUVRE, when being within reach of the enemy the greatest exactness is required, in order to its speedy formation at any instant into line, during its transition from one position to another.

Front and extent of column.

3. Columns of march or manœuvre will generally be composed of companies or sub-divisions.—For the purposes of movement they need not exceed 16, or 18 files, nor should they be under 6 files in front, when the formation is three deep, otherwise there will not be space to loosen the ranks, and the battalion will, of course be lengthened out.—An open column occupies the same extent of ground as when in line, minus the front of its leading division: But a body obliged to march any distance in file, will at least occupy one half more ground than it requires in line; such situation is therefore to be avoided.

4. From

4. From line the column is formed, and marches to the front, flanks, rear, or in any intermediate oblique direction, with either its right or left in front.—In each case, the battalion or line WHEELS the quarter circle by divisions to either flank and HALTS. The whole MARCH. The leading division *wheels* into, or moves on, in the prescribed direction, and the rest follow in column. Formation of the open column from line

5. The open column, or the column at half or quarter distance, may also be formed oblique or perpendicular to the line, on any given division; by the other divisions (according to which flank is ordered to lead) wheeling, filing, and placing themselves in front, and rear of the given one.

6. Columns of march or manœuvre will be formed with the left in front, whenever it is probable that the formation of the line will be required to the right flank; and *vice versâ*, when required to the left flank.

BATTALION OPEN COLUMN.

1. IN column divisions cover and dress to the proper pivot flank: to the left when the right is in front; and to the right, when the left is in front.——The *proper* pivot flank in column is that which, when wheeled up to, preserves the divisions of the line in their natural order, and to their proper front: The other may be called the *reverse* flank. Dressing in column. Fig. 13.

2. In column rear ranks (if not ordered to be locked up) are one pace asunder.---When a considerable distance is to be marched, they may be opened half a pace more, but without encreasing the distances of divisions, which remain such as are prescribed according to the object of the movement; and which are always taken from front rank, to front rank. Distance of ranks.

3. The post of commanding officers in column, is each near the flank of the leading division of his battalion.

4. Each division of which a column is composed, is conducted by a leader placed on its pivot flank of the front rank, which is his general post—In a column of companies or platoons, such leader is the platoon Officer.—In a column of sub-divisions, the officer leads the head sub-division of his company; and his covering serjeant in battalion the second,—In a column of sections, the platoon officer leads the head section of his company; his serjeant the middle one; and an officer or serjeant from the rear the last one.——When divisions are filing from column into a new position, their several leaders conduct their heads.—When any considerable continuation of the march is the object, and that pivot officers are permitted to be in front of their divisions, their flank posts must be occupied by non-commission officers, who remain answerable under their direction for the preservation of the proper distances. Leading officers.

5. In open column, the artillery, music, drummers, &c. of battalions, wheel with and remain closed up to the rear of their respective divisions.—In column at half or quarter distance, they may occasionally, if there is space, move in file, on the flank which is not the pivot one--Instead of being kept collected, they may in column of march be sent to their respective companies to remain in the rear of each; but on no occasion whatever is the assembling of them to be allowed to lengthen out, or interfere with the movements of the battalion or column, or to encrease the intervals betwixt battalions in column. Music, Drummers, &c

6. On all occasions of wheeling from line into open column (except where the narrowness of ground prevents it) the divisions WHEEL BACKWARDS on their pivot flanks.—The advantage so great, and the necessity so evident, of having the *pivots* remain covering each other truly, as well as having just distances preserved, is thereby secured, which will never be the case in *wheeling forward*, from the different strength of Battalions in a line, and of companies or divisions in the same battalion.——In wheeling backward, if divisions do not exceed 16 or 18 file, they may readily WHEEL back without facing about, but if divisions are stronger and the ground uneven, they must FACE about—WHEEL—and then *Halt, front*, Fig: 21: 59.

7. When an open column is to form in line to its proper front, the divisions will always WHEEL FORWARD on their pivots: but should it be meant to reverse the front, the PIVOTS themselves must then wheel forward, which will prevent any false distances, that unequal divisions would occasion, although the flanks they do wheel upon, may not then be in a regular line.—Should the divisions of the column be of equal strength, the front may then be reversed by wheeling back upon the pivots, which will preserve the regularity of the alignement, Wheeling forward into line: Fig: 25:

8. Platoons

Wheeling on the center:

8. Platoons muft be accuftomed to wheel occafionally upon their CENTER, half backward, half forward, and to be pliable into every fhape which circumftances may require, but always in order, and by the decided commands of their officers.

Filings.

9. All marches of battalions are made in column of companies, or other divifions, never by files where it can poffibly be avoided. —— Filings are only applied to the internal movements and formations of the divifions of the battalion, and in fome changes of pofition, not to any confiderable manœuvres of the entire battalion, or of greater bodies.

Wheelings in column.

10. All wheelings, and filings made from the halt, from line to form in column, or from column to form in line, are made at a quick ftep.

Opening or clofing of rear ranks.

11. When the rear ranks clofe or open on the march, in the one cafe they will ftep nimbly up, in the other they will flacken their pace until the due diftance is attained.— In both cafes the front rank continues to proceed at its then rate of march.

Peculiar attentions in the open column of manœuvre.

12. In an open column of manœuvre of one or more battalions, the divifions ought as much as poffible to be equalized.—The whole muft be put in march at the fame inftant, and the ftep preferved equal, as to time and length whether marching on level or inclined ground.—Every divifion muft trace out the exact track which the leading one does; nor muft any part make a partial alteration of pace.—Thefe circumftances obferved, which will preferve the juftnefs of wheeling diftances, and the covering of pivot flanks; and no embarraffments being allowed in the intervals of battalions, an exact line to the flank is at any inftant procured, by the wheel of the quarter circle; and all clofing in, unfteady fhifting, and after dreffing, is avoided.

Fig. 40 B.

Countermarch by files.

13. The countermarch by files of the divifions of a column each on its own ground, changes a column that is ftanding with its right in front, into a column with its left in front, and thereby enables it to return along the ground it has gone over, and to take new pofitions without altering or inverting the proper front of the line. (S. 53. 100.)

Fig. 41. 42.

Countermarch by divifions.

14. The countermarch by divifions fucceffively from the rear to the front, changes the leading flank of the battalion column, but allows it to continue its former direction of march, and is a previous manœuvre often neceffary and required to enable a battalion to take up a relative pofition. (S. 101.)

All countermarches neceffarily change the pivot flanks of columns.

Fig. 22. 24.

Wheels in Column.

15. Open column of companies will in general wheel on a *fixed* pivot, except that in the continuation of a march, they have fufficient ground gradually to make their changes of direction on a moveable one, if fo ordered.—Columns of fubdivifions or fections will always wheel on a *moveable* pivot when it can be done.—Columns at half or quarter diftance, muft alfo make their neceffary wheels on a *moveable* pivot, otherwife a ftop muft enfue.

The front of column not to be altered, when marching in an alignement.

16. No doubling up, encreafing, or diminifhing the front of the column, muft be made, after entering on a ftraight alignement, in order to form in line. Such operation, when neceffary fhould be performed, before the line of formation is entered on.

Fig. 24. 25.

17. In whatever manner the leading divifion of a battalion column arrives in a ftraight alignement on which it is to form, a mounted officer always gives the point where it enters.— And when arrived at its ground, that it halts and is to form, the commanding officer from that divifion corrects, if neceffary the pivot files on the fixed diftant points, before the divifions wheel up into line.

Pivot Officers.

18. Pivot officers of columns when marching in an alignement, muft be fteady on the flanks of their divifions, as they give the true wheeling diftance, and covering of the pivots in their own perfons: They muft not look to or endeavour to correct the march of their divifions; that care muft be left to ferjeants and other officers in the rear. The pivot files of men (that they alfo may be truly covered when halted), muft be clofe to, but not touch or derange, their leaders in the march.—The pivot files of the open or clofe column in march are always directed and conducted on the given points of march, whether the column is moving in a line on which it is to form, or whether it is moving up to a point where it is to change its direction; and the leading officer in column always leaves the object on which he has marched, or at which he wheels, clofe on his outward hand.

Fig. 24.

Officers and colours in the alignement.

19. When marching in a ftraight alignement there muft never be more than one officer (or leader) on the pivot flank of each divifion, all others are either on the oppofite flank, or in rear of the divifions.---Nor are fuch leaders then covered in the rear ranks by their ferjeants, in order that they may the more eafily fee, and diftinctly cover, each other in the given line.

The

The colours cover the 3d files of men from the pivot, and must be ready to move up when the line is to be formed.

20. In marching in an alignement on advanced points, such points must be known and visible to the leader of the second as well as of the first division; because such second leader must preserve his first, and the given points in the true line, and on the accuracy of the position of those two leaders depends the covering of the rear ones.--- Officers who have an indistinct sight, can never lead the two first divisions of a column marching in a straight alignement, and must therefore on such occasion be replaced by other persons, whose accurate vision enables them to preserve and prolong the just line which the whole are to follow.

Officers that conduct the two leading divisions of a column, must not be short-sighted.

21. All marching in the alignement must be made in ordinary time, and taken up before, or from the point where it is entered with precision; the pivot officers are then peculiarly answerable for distances, and exact covering of the flanks.—To march with accuracy in an alignement in quick time, so as at any instant to be ready to wheel up into line, and (without a considerable pause) to move on, is an operation hardly to be expected, and seldom to be required.

Marching in an alignement.

22. When the column of companies halt to form: pivot flanks are in an instant corrected from the leading division by commanding officers of battalions.---Leading officers move into the front of their platoons.---Their covering serjeants place themselves on the right of each if the wheel is to be the left; or otherwise behind the pivot file if the wheel is to be to the right.---Pivot men of the front rank face square into the new direction.--- The whole wheel up, and halt.---Officers dress the interior of their platoons, and then replace their serjeants who are now in the front rank.---If any farther dressing is necessary, it must be ordered and made by a mounted field Officer.

Wheeling into line from open column.

23. If the battalion after wheeling up from column into line, is not critically well dressed, the fault must be in the internal parts of the divisions: This must be immediately corrected (by each platoon officer) on the pivot men, who on no account must move, or shift, but remain so many given or fixed points on whom the battalion is exactly lined.---Each platoon officer thus only dresses within his own platoon; if a more accurate dressing is required, it is afterwards given by a field officer.

Dressing on pivots.

24. In general the whole of a battalion will be halted on its ground, stand in column, and its pivots be adjusted, before it wheels up and forms: but if necessary, and where parts of it arrive in the line by *filing*, they may form successively as they come up.—If part of a battalion should therefore be ordered to wheel into line while the other divisions are not yet in it, the pivot men of those divisions (and not the officers) must cover on the formed part of the line before they wheel up.—And when several battalion columns changing position enter separately, and are to form in the same line, each may be successively wheeled up, if so ordered or intended, when its adjoining one has three or four of its divisions standing in column on the line.

Forming in line.

Fig. 25.

25. When a point of entry is marked in a new alignement, the *pivot* flank of the leading division of a column is always directed on such point.—If the line is to be formed, and the head flank placed at such point of entry, the head division will rest its pivot on the line, and at a distance equal to its front from such point.—If the rear flank is to be at that point, the pivot of the rear division will halt at it. —If the point is an intermediate one, a central division will halt at it.—The line will be formed by the wheeling up of divisions, when they are severally placed upon it.

26. On some occasions (as in passing lines, forming close columns, &c.) the platoon or divisions of a battalion in line are ordered to FILE to front, rear, or into column without first wheeling the quarter circle.—An explanatory caution being given, at the word for the battalion to FACE, the platoons face to the point directed, and at the same instant the three leading files of each throw themselves to the flank according as they are to move, so as to be disengaged from the last file of the preceding platoon.—In this situation each leader is enabled at the word MARCH, to move independent, without check, and on his proper point.

Disengaging heads of files.

Fig. 36.

27. The rear divisions of a battalion, or more considerable column in march, constantly follow every turning and twist which the head makes; each successively changing its direction at whatever point the leading division may have so done.—When at any accidental movement the column is ordered to HALT, and FORM in line, the pivot men of platoons must remain steady where they are found at the word HALT, and the divisions will wheel up into what will probably be a curved, but a just line.—If the march in column is again to be resumed, the line breaks backward, and the rear divisions at their ordered distances will continue to follow the exact path traced out by the head; nor are the following divisions

March in column.

of

of a column ever to deviate from this rule, or endeavour of themselves to get into a straight line, when the general direction is a winding one, until an express order is given for that purpose: which can hardly ever be the case until the head of the column is halted, with a determination to form the line in a straight direction.

March of the column through a wood, or in embarrassed ground.

Fig. 26.

28. The march in column through a thin wood, or in ground where impediments frequently change the direction of its head, or along the winding of heights which are to be occupied, will be best made by sub-divisions, or by sections of five or six files in front.—The *pivot* files will preserve exact distances from each other, choose their own ground, and wind as the trees or other impediments permit, along a general direction:—When the column *halts* and forms, the line will be a continued curve, which can afterwards be easily made straight, if circumstances require it.—In such situations, at no time if it is possible should any of the *pivot* flank leaders be obliged to double or quit the continued line of march; but the other files may be (when impediments are to be passed) much opened or loosened from those pivots, who in the mean time moving free and preserving wheeling distances, are in a situation at every instant to *halt* and form in line, the others closing in to them.

Obstacles in march in an alignement.

Fig. 27.

29. Should the march in a straight alignement be at any time interrupted by pools of water, or any other obstacle which is impassable, the march will be continued straight to that obstacle, the obstacle will be surrounded (and always if possible by deviating to the reverse flank so as to remain behind the line), and the same straight line will again on the other side be taken up by the pivots, at the point in it which a detached person has prepared.—Allowance will be made, when the line is to form, for the breadth of such obstacle, by the doubling of as many divisions as will fill up the vacancy (when it can be done) which is thereby occcasioned in the line; nor must any small interruptions in the line, that can possibly be surmounted, ever make the pivots deviate from the straight line, when the intention of forming on the line is evident and known to all.

Assembly of the Battalion, and General Circumstances of Exercise.

Assembly of the battalion.

The companies having been inspected by their officers on their particular parades, should arrive and stand on the parade of the battalion in open column of companies, and with either right or left in front.—The ground is given by which every division first arrives on it, and the others arrange themselves in front or rear accordingly.—In this situation are reports made to the commanding officer; companies equalized; music, drummers, pioneers, &c. assembled at their proper stations; all other individuals of the battalion placed; pivot files, and just wheeling distances corrected.—The battalion is then formed in line by wheels of the quarter circle, and by word from the commanding officer; the colours are sent for and posted; and the whole are thus in readiness to move, by sub-division or company column.

March to the ground of exercise.

The march to, and from the field in column, should be considered as one of the most material parts of exercise, and be made with attention, equality of step, just distances, and perfect order.--The front of the march should be frequently encreased and diminished in the manner prescribed (S. 87.), and the battalion at different periods formed by wheels to the flank, to shew that distances have been duly preserved.

Excercise by companies.

Fig. 19.

The exercise of the battalion must frequently be preceded by that of companies in detail, according to the instructions given in the second part.—Therefore when the battalion is arrived on its ground, the officers will be assembled, and those commanding companies informed what particular parts, (referring for this purpose to the numbers marked in the exercise of the company) in what succession, and for what length of time, or how often, each operation of the company is to be repeated.—The companies will then by a regular process be separated, by taking intervals in one line, or in two lines, so that each shall have a free space of 40 or 50 yards square.--They will on that ground begin and finish in nearly the same instants of time, each of the ordered points of exercise.

S. 86. *Exercise of the Battalion.*

Detail of exercise by the battalion.

The above being accomplished, the companies will be ordered to assemble in line, or in column, and the BATTALION again united and formed will proceed to its particular

EXERCISE,

EXERCISE, as contained in the following articles, which may be claſſed and arranged according to circumſtances, and the views of commanding officers: the modes of executing being detailed hereafter under their proper heads.

The Battalion ſtanding in Open Column.

Fig. 74. — 1. The column will cloſe to half, quarter, or cloſe column, and again take open diſtances either from the front or rear diviſion. S. 153.

Fig. 40. B. — 2. The companies may ſingly countermarch by files. S. 100.

Fig. 41. — 3. The flanks of the column may be changed by the rear company becoming the front one, in conſequence of a countermarch of the whole column from the rear. S. 101.

Fig. 49. — 4. The poſition of the column may be changed to either flank, by the companies facing, filing into the new direction, and halting with their pivot flanks on it. S. 123.

5. The open column will form in line.---By wheeling up when the whole is in the alignement.---By halting the head diviſions in the line; filing the rear ones into it, and then wheeling up the whole.---By the head diviſion halting on the line, and the rear ones wheeling back into echellon poſition, after which they move up into line. S. 118. 124. 127.

Fig. 47. 48. — 6. A front, center, or rear diviſion of the column may be placed in a new given direction, and the reſt by file marching will take up their ground. S. 120. 121. 122.

7. The column at half or quarter diſtance will form.—By filing into line. Obliquing into line.—Diviſions wheeling ſucceſſively into line, and taking open diſtances.

8. The diviſions may face to either flank, march the lock ſtep, halt, and again front into column. S. 123.

9. The cloſing ſtep may be practiſed by the whole column at once. S. 43.

Fig. 28. 29. 30. — 10. The front of the column in march will be increaſed and diminiſhed, and the column will occaſionally wheel to the flank into line to ſhew the preſervation of diſtances. S. 87.

Fig. 59. 13. — 11. From line the companies, or other diviſions, may wheel backwards on their pivots into open column, and to either hand. S. 108.

Fig. 52. — 12. March and prolong the line to the flank. S. 115.

Fig. 49. *Wheel up into Line.* S. 118.

Fig. 47. 48. 80. — 13. Change of poſition on a central or flank company by filing, or by the echellon march of companies. S. 120. 159.

14. The battalion may march in file to the flank at the lock ſtep, and front. S. 94.

15. The battalion may take 20 or 30 ſide ſteps to the flank without opening out. S. 43. 79.

16. The battalion may advance in line, and halt. S. 166.

17. The battalion may retire in line, and halt front. S. 168.

18. The alternate companies will form two lines and march to front and rear, preſerving intervals. S. 175.

Fig. 46. — 19. Paſſage in file through a ſecond line, or wood, to front or rear, from a flank of each company. S. 174.

20. Paſſage

20. Paſſage of the obſtacle in the march of the battalion, by diviſions doubling as ordered. S. 170.

21. The oblique march of the battalion, and change of direction by gradual alteration of the ſhoulders. S. 169.

Fig. 14. 22. The battalion halted to be dreſſed, by advancing the platoon officers, and moving up the men. S. 167.

23. The whole or a wing of the battalion to be thrown forward on the center or flank, by placing a few files, and the reſt turning their ſhoulders, and gradually dreſſing up.—The ſame done backwards gradually at a ſhort ſtep without facing about.—Eyes being directed to the point of forming on all occaſions.

Fig. 75. 76. 24. The battalion will advance, and retire in echellons of companies.—Form in line on any named one.—Throw backward or forward any number of companies into echellon.—Wheel them into oblique line.

25. The battalion retiring in two lines by alternate companies, may make a degree of wheel during the movement, ſo as to give a new direction to the line.

Fig. 31. 33. 35. 26. The battalion may paſs a defile or bridge, to front or to rear. S. 91, 92.

Fig. 39. 27. The battalion may countermarch by files from one to the other flank.—Alſo upon the center from both flanks.—Alſo from, and upon the center. S. 97. 98.

Fig. 40. A. 28. The battalion may countermarch by diviſions from one to the other flank.—Alſo upon the center from both flanks. S. 99.

Fig. 37. 38. 29. March of the battalion by diviſions from one flank towards the other, either behind or before the front, each diviſion wheeling and following ſucceſſively the one that precedes it. S. 96.

30. The battalion from line forming the ſquare or oblong, marching, and again forming in line.—Or from the ſquare marching off in double column through a defile.

In Cloſe Column.

Fig. 64. 65. 66. 31. The cloſe column is formed on any named company. S. 137.

32. The direction of the cloſe column is changed. S. 141.

Fig. 74. 33. The cloſe column is opened out from the front or rear, and again cloſed upon any diviſion. S. 153.

Fig. 70. 71. 72. 34. The cloſe column of two companies in front is formed from the column of one company in front. S. 147.

Fig. 67. 68. 69. 35. The line formed either from the column (of one or two companies in front) halted, on a front, rear, or central diviſion.—Or from the column moving in file to its flank, on a front or rear diviſion.—Or by an oblique deployment of its diviſions. S. 144. 148.

36. The exerciſe of the firelock in all its parts, both by companies and battalion, and eſpecially loading and firing.

The FIRINGS may be applied and intermixed with theſe movements as found proper, and ſuch other circumſtances of formation and exerciſe as ſpace allows of, and as occur to commanding officers, may, agreeable to the eſtabliſhed modes laid down, be from time to time executed.—But the above have been more particularly ſelected, as including almoſt all the various movements that can be required in the operations of the battalion when ſingle, or united with others in line: They may be combined according to the ground, and to the views of the commander, and may ariſe from different ſituations by altering or adding the connecting circumſtances, and the particular detail of their execution is to be found in the ſections referred to.

The

The light company and grenadiers are generally ſuppoſed acting in line with the battalion: But the light company may be occaſionally placed half of it behind each flank of the battalion; in that ſituation it is ready to cover the front, rear, or flanks of the column when in march, to protect the forming of the line, or to cover its retreat.—For theſe purpoſes it may from time to time be detached, and act in diviſions or individually as circumſtances may require, and in the manner ſpecified in its particular exerciſe.—It can ſeldom be obliged to run or hurry; in ſuch caſes as demand it, it will march quick, but in order, with files looſe but not too open, and always under the command and guidance of its officers. Light Company.

On all occaſions of common parade, a guard, a battalion, or its parts, ſhould never aſſemble, or be diſmiſſed, without performing ſome one operation or other of movement, and of the firelock.---In this manner, by ſimple, and imperceptible practice, the ſteadineſs and inſtruction of every individual is attained, and officers become perfect in the three great and important field duties of preciſion and energy in their commands; exact diſtances of march; and the correct dreſſing, and covering of pivots.---The time often unneceſſarily conſumed in the field in detail and manual exerciſe will alſo be ſaved, and the battalion be there ſolely employed in executing the preſcribed movements applied to ſuch circumſtances, and varieties of ground as preſent themſelves to the commanding officer; the modes of execution being already thoroughly underſtood, and inſtantly applied by each individual. Mode of inſtruction.

Single companies or battalions when at exerciſe muſt generally conſider themſelves as part of a line, and not always detached, or independent bodies: Their movements and formations ſhould be on a ſuppoſition of lining with other troops already placed on their flanks.—Two or more perſons ſeparated at a proper diſtance from one another, and from the company or battalion, may repreſent the flanks and center of an adjoining battalion, and may always firſt take their ſtation in the new line. This would cauſe the formations to be made on determined, not on accidental points; the practice of which latter uſage much tends to occaſion that incorrectneſs and deficiency, which ſometimes appears when any number of our battalions are directed to move, act or form, in concert.—In general the battalion ſhould not be looked on as a perfect or ſeparate body, but only as a member of the line; its movements as relative to and dependent upon thoſe of others, and its principal operations ſhould be calculated accordingly. Attention in exerciſe. Fig. 26.

In exerciſe the two flank companies may be occaſionally ſeparated from the battalion, and repreſent the center of two other Battalions; one of them will be named as the directing one in march, and the halt and dreſſing of the battalion will be made from its own center towards each of them, as is directed for a line of battalions. Fig. 29.

DIMINISHING OR ENCREASING THE FRONT OF THE COLUMN.

The column of march or manœuvre, in conſequence of obſtructions in its route which it cannot ſurmount, is frequently obliged to diminiſh its front, and again to encreaſe it, when ſuch difficulties are paſſed; it is one of the moſt important of movements, and a battalion which does not perform this operation with the greateſt exactneſs and attention, ſo as not to lengthen out in the ſmalleſt degree, is not fit to move in the column of a conſiderable corps.

The encreaſe or diminution of the front of the column is performed by the battalion, when in movement or when halted.—In movement this operation is either done by each company ſucceſſively, when it arrives at the point where the leading one of the column performed it, or elſe by the whole companies of the battalion at the ſame moment.—In either caſe the chief of the battalion, at the inſtant that it ſhould begin to reduce or encreaſe its front, gives the general CAUTION ſo to do, and the chiefs of companies give their words of execution to the ſub-diviſions or ſections to double behind, or move up quick to the regulating ones, which preſerve their original diſtances from each other, and never alter the pace at which the column was marching, but proceed as if they were totally unconnected with the operation that the others are performing.

When the column of companies is to be reduced to that of ſub-diviſions or ſections, it will always be done by the others doubling from their pivot flank, behind their reverſe flank, ſub-diviſion, or ſection, ſo that the battalion may remain ready to form in line by a ſimple wheel up to the flank; therefore the doubling will be behind the right when the right is in front, or behind the left when the left is in front.—When the front of the column is to be encreaſed, the ſub-diviſions or ſections that doubled will move up to their leading one by a

quick

quick incline.—As in diminishing or encreasing the front of the column in march, the pivot division is the one that quits its direction, the exactness of pivots after such operation will appear to be interrupted; but this is of no consequence, and instantly regained in a column of march; it can hardly ever take place in a column of manœuvre, which has entered a line on which it is to form.

S. 87. *When a Battalion column of companies in March diminishes its Front, either by companies successively, or the whole Battalion at once.*

When the leading company arrives within 12 or 15 paces of the point where it is necessary to diminish its front; the commander will give a loud CAUTION that the sub-divisions are to be double either by companies successively, or the whole battalion at once.

Fig. 6. A. *If successively.*——The leader of the head company proceeds as directed (S. 57.) and each other does the same when it arrives on the spot where its preceding one doubled.

Fig. 5. *If at once.*——On the general CAUTION from the battalion commander, each company leader, without waiting for each other, proceeds as directed (S. 57.)

S. 88. *When the Battalion column of Sub-divisions in march forms column of companies.*

The battalion commander gives a loud CAUTION, that column of companies are to be formed either successively, or by the whole battalion at once.

Fig. 6. B. *If successively,*——Each inclines up as directed (S. 57.) when its leading sub-division arrives on the ground, where its preceding one formed up.

Fig. 30. *If at once.*——On the general CAUTION from the battalion commander, Each company-leader proceeds as directed (S. 57.) without waiting for each other.

When divisions double back or form up in column, ranks must be closed, arms carried, and the transition from one situation to the other made as quick as possible; and as soon as the column is in its new order, the pivot flank leaders place themselves on those pivots.

When the front of a column is to be diminished, and the obstacle is before the part which is not to double, such part must incline after the doubling is made in order to pass it: but timely attention is to be given, to bring up, if possible, by inclining the part which is not to double, square to the opening through which it is to pass, before such doubling begins.—And when a diminution of front is immediately to follow an alteration in the direction of the march, such alteration should be made with a gradual sweep, so as to give the head of the column its new perpendicular direction, when at least 12 or 15 paces from the point of breaking off.

The successive breakings of each division of the column at the point of difficulty, and its subsequent moving up again as soon as it has passed it, is the most general practice, but is the most likely to lengthen it out, which is the great evil to be avoided.——The reduction of front by the whole battalion at once, is therefore the most eligible; and for the same reason, the encrease of front (when the rear of it has cleared the difficulty) by the whole battalion, is to be preferred.

As in a considerable column, the successive doubling or forming up of companies would be performed by each, when it arrived on the identical spot where the leading one of the column doubled or formed up:——So when this operation is done successively by battalions, each will at once in the same manner perform it when its head is arrived at the spot, (and of which it must be apprized) where the head of the preceding battalion was, when it so doubled or moved up.

Fig. 5. B.

Fig. 5. B. 28.—S. 89. *When the battalion column of Companies is halted, and to diminiſh its Front.*

CAUTION. The chief will give the CAUTION to form column of ſub-diviſions or ſecti-ons; on which the covering ſerjeants will fall back, and mark the future pivot flank of the doubling ſub-diviſions.

Inwards Face. Q. March. Halt, front. Dreſs. The leaders of each company will inſtantly give the word *Face inwards* (diſengaging their heads) *Q. March; Halt, front* to their ſub-diviſions or ſections, when behind the ſtanding ſub-diviſion or ſection, and dividing juſtly the diſtances that exiſted between companies; the flank leaders will then place themſelves on the pivots.

Fig. 30. 5 B. S. 90. *When the Battalion Column of Sub-diviſions or Sections is halted, and to encreaſe its Front to Companies.*

CAUTION. The chief will give the CAUTION to form Companies.

To the— Oblique. Q. March, Forward. Halt, dreſs. The leader of each company immediately orders the bodies that move up, *To the—Oblique—Q. March—Forward—Halt, dreſs,* when joined to the ſtanding ſub-diviſion or ſection.——The leader then places himſelf on the proper pivot flank of his company.

Should a column be retiring with the rear rank leading, the diviſions will double as already preſcribed, ſo as to preſerve the ſub-diviſions or ſections in their natural order for forming: and when the ground allows, will again encreaſe the front of the column.

When the column has to paſs a bridge, or ſhort defilé, and that there is a certainty of immediately after reſuming the front which it has diminiſhed, then ſuch part of the reverſe flank of the leading diviſion as the defilé will receive will paſs it in front, and ſuch part of the pivot flank as is neceſſarily ſtopt will by command *Face inwards* and follow cloſe in file; on quitting the defilé, the filing part will form up at a lengthened ſtep, but the general rate of the column will at no time be altered: In this manner diviſion ſucceeds diviſion, without any improper extenſion taking place. But if the column muſt continue any time on a reduced front, then it ſhould ſo be diminiſhed by the doubling back of diviſions. Fig. 29.

When a cloſe column, or one at quarter diſtance is to paſs a defilé, before it enters, it muſt ſtand on ſuch a front as will require no farther reduction; and therefore on approaching the defilé, a halt if neceſſary muſt be made, and ſuch operation performed, as will enable it to enter on ſuch front as it can maintain in paſſing.—When the defilé is paſſed, a new arrangement will determine the advance of the column. Fig. 31.

PASSAGE OF A BRIDGE, OR SHORT DEFILE FROM LINE.

S. 91. *A Battalion formed in line may have to paſs a ſhort Defilé, or Bridge in its Front.*

If before a flank.—It will from that flank wheel into column, croſs on ſuch front as will fill the defilé, and the column will be cloſe or open according as, after paſſing, it may be required either to deploy into line, or to prolong any given direction. Fig. 91.

If before the Center.—The two center ſub-diviſions may ſtand faſt; the reſt of the battalion will break inwards by ſub-diviſions; the whole will march forward in double column.—When paſſed, the center ſub-diviſions ſtand faſt; the others wheel to right and left, march to the flanks, and ſucceſſively wheel up into line, (or) they proceed in march, and remain in double column 'till the

Fig. 93.

head

head arrives at ſuch point, and is placed in ſuch direction as the line is to be formed in.—Should the bridge or defilé only allow 6 in front to paſs, when the head of the double column arrives cloſe at it, its two diviſions having two paces diſtance betwixt them, will file from their inward flanks to the front, paſs, and then move up into column as before, being in the ſame manner followed by every other diviſion.

But as many inconveniences attend all central columns, when a poſitive poſition is not to be occupied immediately after paſſing a bridge or defilé; therefore in moſt caſes the march in battalion column from one flank, and on ſuch front as is neceſſary, is preferable; for from that order, every poſſible after-ſituation is accurately and eaſily taken up; ſuch as the windings of height; the ſkirting of a wood; or the prolonging of any given ſtraight direction.

The battalion may alſo form cloſe column of any given front, on the diviſion which is oppoſite the bridge or defilé, paſs in that ſhape, and extend as ordered after paſſing.

S. 92. *A Battalion formed in Line may have to paſs a Defilé or Bridge in its rear.*

Fig. 32. *If in the Rear of a Flank.* It will march off from the other flank behind the rear in column of companies or ſub-diviſions ſucceſſively, the front rank leading; wheel behind the ſtanding flank; paſs; and again wheel, and prolong any given direction.

Fig. 35. *If in the rear of the Center.*—It will march off as before from each flank, by columns of ſub-diviſions behind the rear, the leading ones when near meeting, will wheel inwards; paſs in double column; and then, if ordered, the diviſions will wheel outwards ſucceſſively, and take up a line parallel to the one it quitted... If the bridge or defilé will not allow above ſix men to paſs in front, the double column, when it arrives at the entrance, will file to the front from its inward flanks as before directed; paſs; move up into column; and either extend into line to each flank; or move on in any given direction.—In this way will the battalion be leſs liable to lengthen, than if it at once files from both flanks behind the center; paſſes; and again takes up its ground in file.

If after paſſing in files or columns, the march is to be continued forward; ſhould the wings be in file, they will form up to columns of ſub-diviſions; the proper leading wing, according as the front of the line ſhould be, will march on, and the other will follow it by countermarching its diviſions ſucceſſively from its rear; and in this manner the whole will be in column of ſub-diviſions, which may be ordered, if proper, to form companies.

Fig. 31. The battalion may alſo form cloſe column of front equal to the breadth of the defilé, behind or on the diviſion neareſt to it and facing either way: it will then paſs; and proceed according to circumſtances.

S. 93. *Where a column of Diviſions is ſucceſſively to march off by wheeling from a Flank of a Battalion formed in Line, and that its Direction is towards the other flank.*

Fig. 34. A. *If the Movement is made cloſe along the Front.*—The leading flank diviſion wheels up and marches along the line, and each other diviſion ſucceſſively wheels up behind it at the proper time, ſo as to follow in column, and to have its proper diſtance. Should the new direction make a ſmall angle with the line, each diviſion muſt move forward quick and ſucceſſively to that direction, as its turn comes, before it commences its wheel, and ſo as not to loſe its diſtance.

Fig. 34. B. *If the movement is made cloſe along the Rear.*—The leading flank diviſion wheels 3-4ths of the circle, and each other one ſucceſſively half of the circle, ſo as to have the remaining quarter to wheel, when its preceding diviſion arrives

arrives at its pivot. Should the line of march make a fmall angle with the old pofition, then each divifion, after wheeling its half circle, will have to advance to that line in due time, and fucceffively, before it makes its remaining part of the wheel which brings it into column.

The open column may alfo in the before cafes be advantageoufly formed by the fucceffive FILING of divifions, in the following manner, When the march is made from one flank of the battalion towards the other, and either along the front, or rear.

The leading divifion will *Face; March* out perpendicular to the line, its own length; *Halt, Front*; *March*; and then proceed.—The divifion next it will *Face*, difengage its head towards the column; and when the leading divifion arrives, the other will then *March* quick in file; *Halt, Front; March*; and thus follow divifion after divifion, each being ready and timing its feveral operations, fo that the true diftances are preferved. Fig. 36. A.

It is to be obferved, that in marches made in this manner along the FRONT, the divifions face outwards or towards the moving flank of the battalion, and difengage their heads to the front: But in thofe made along the REAR, they face inwards or towards the ftanding flank, and difengage their heads to the rear.—This method is peculiarly ufeful when the column moves to the rear, as much wheeling is avoided, and each divifion can with quicknefs and accuracy take its place in column. Fig. 36. B.

S. 94. MARCH OF THE BATTALION IN FILE.

The march of the battalion in file, and without opening out, can hardly be required except in fmooth ground, and for the purpofes of countermarching, or of clofing, or opening an interval in line.

FACE. MARCH. HALT. FRONT.

At the word FACE, &c. the whole face to the hand ordered, and the officers take one fide ftep to the front out of the rank, and are re-placed by their ferjeants. At the word MARCH, the whole ftep off correctly.—At the word HALT, the whole halt.—And at the word FRONT, they front, and officers and ferjeants refume their places.—The officers being out of the ranks during the march (and which will take place whenever more than one company is to march in file) are of ufe in preferving the line and ftep.

S. 95. *General Formations of the Battalion from File.*

A battalion which has been obliged to move in file will form.

1. *To either Flank*, by halting and facing to right or left as is neceffary.

2. *To the front* of the march by halting, facing to the flank; wheeling up by companies into open column, and then applying the formations of the open or clofe column to its required fituation.—Or without halting and facing to the flank; the column of companies at once may be formed, by the files making a half face, and each marching up quick and diagonally to their refpective leading men, who do not alter their pace; and as the pivot files are in the rear of companies, when they do come up, the column muft be ordered to drefs to them.

3. *To the rear* of the march, by firft forming column of companies, and then applying the formations of the open or clofe column.

There can be few fituations where the battalion muft be formed to the front, or rear of the march, by the leading file halting, and the whole moving up fucceffively to it, and forming away in the rear of and beyond each other to one of the flanks.

The head of the battalion file muft be fo conducted as to leave fufficient fpace to the proper hand for the other files to move up into open column of fub-divifions or companies when ordered, and the pivot files in column are always the following ones, when the battalion is in file.—If the battalion is lengthened out when it is ordered to form, it is evident that its facing into line, or its forming into column, muft be fucceffive as each file arrives at its place in line, or as each head file of the ordered divifions arrives at a wheeling diftance from the head file of the preceding one.

S. 96.

S. 96. *A Batalion standing in narrow ground may sometimes be obliged to march in File, in order to form open column from its leading Flank; either before or behind that flank; before or behind its other Flank; or, before or behind any central Part of the Line.*

Fig. 37. A. 1. *If before the Right Flank.*—The right platoon will move on, the rest of the battalion will FACE to the right, and MARCH in file; the divisions will successively *front*, and follow the leading one, and each other.

Fig. 37. B. 2. *If behind the Right Flank.*—The whole FACE to the right, and MARCH; the right division instantly countermarches to the rear, *fronts* and moves forward, followed in the same manner by every other division, till the whole is in column.

Fig. 38. A. 3. *If before any Central Point, or the Left Flank.*—The battalion makes a successive COUNTERMARCH from the right flank towards the left, and when the right division is arrived at the point from whence it is to advance in column, it again *countermarches* to it's right a space equal to its front, then *faces*, moves on, and is thus successively followed by part of the battalion.—The other part of the battalion beyond the point of advancing, FACES inwards, when necessary makes a progressive march in file, and then *fronts*, and follows by divisions, as it comes to the turn of each, 'till the whole are in column.

Fig. 38. B. 4. *If behind the Center or Left Flank.*—The right part of the battalion, COUNTERMARCHES from the right by files successively by the rear, and the other part of the battalion, as is necessary, makes a progressive march by files from its right to the central point, and there begins to countermarch: at that point the leading, and each other division, *fronts* into column, and moves on.

When the left of the battalion is to be in front, the same operations inversely take place.

This METHOD of forming open column should only be used in narrow grounds, and in particular situations that require it, as in the passing of a bridge or defilé, or where the battalion stands in so confined a space as not to allow room for the wheeling of divisions.—The difficulties at all times of moving a large body in file, and the constant and unavoidable checks given to the equality and justness of the march, by the divisions successively quitting the line, make it impossible in the above cases, with due accuracy, to take up the proper distances; and therefore whenever the open column is to be formed from battalion and line, it ought to be done, if possible, by the wheelings of companies, sub-divisions, or sections.

COUNTERMARCH BY FILES.

Fig. 39. A. B. The *Countermarch* by *Files* is of two kinds.—Either SUCCESSIVE (the body being halted,) by each file wheeling successively on its ground as it comes to its turn: Or, PROGRESSIVE (the body being in motion,) by each file wheeling, when it comes up to the point at which the leading file wheeled.—In the first case the body must shift its ground to a flank a space at least equal to its front: In the second it will perform this operation of the countermarch on its original ground, exchanging flanks and fronts; in both cases the pivots are in a small degree moveable.

The *Countermarch* by *Files* may be made either before or behind the body.—If made BEFORE it, the front rank men will be the pivots on which each file will wheel: If made BEHIND it, the rear rank men will then be the pivots on which each file will wheel. All countermarches by file necessarily tend to an extension of that file; the greatest care must therefore be taken, that the wheel of each file is made close, quick, and at an encreased length of step of the wheeling men, so as not to retard or lengthen out the march of the whole, and unity of step is absolutely indispensible.

The

The *File* marching or countermarching of a battalion or greater body, will be made in ordinary time. Of ſmaller diviſions in general in quick time.

S. 97. *Countermarch of the Battalion, from both Flanks on its Center, by Files.*

Fig. 39. C.
THE BATTALION WILL COUNTER-MARCH.
BY WINGS OUTWARDS FACE.
MARCH.

A CAUTION is given that the battalion will countermarch.—The wings FACE from the colours which ſtand faſt, and a ſerjeant remains at the point of each wing in order to mark the ground.—At the word MARCH, the right wing files ſucceſſively cloſe behind the rear rank, and the left wing before the front rank of the battalion, till they arrive at the points where each other ſtood.

HALT.
COVER.
FRONT.

They then HALT, and the front rank of wings is quickly covered on the colours which have kept their ground, and ſerved as a pivot on which the battalion turns.—The wings when covered in the line FRONT, looking to the colours, and the colours take their places.—If a more accurate dreſſing is neceſſary, it muſt be given by the commanding officer.

S. 98. *Countermarch of the Battalion, from its center, and on its center, by Files.*

Fig. 39. D.
CAUTION.
BY WINGS INWARDS FACE.
BY WINGS, 3 SIDE STEPS TO THE RIGHT
MARCH.

A CAUTION is given that the battalion will countermarch.—The whole FACE to the colours, which ſtand faſt, and a ſerjeant remains to mark each flank.—The whole are ordered to take 3 SIDE STEPS to the right, at the word MARCH, in order to diſengage.

MARCH.
Front.

At the ſecond word MARCH, the whole move on, and each file wheels ſucceſſively into the center as it arrives at, and beyond the colours.—As ſoon as each company is in the line from the colours to the flank ſerjeant, its officer *fronts* it.---When the whole is formed the colours countermarch, and the whole are looking to the colours 'till otherwiſe ordered.

In the countermarch from both flanks no part of the battalion is fronted till the whole is on its ground. In the countermarch from the center, the battalion begins inſtantly and ſucceſſively to front by companies, as each is ready and on its ground.

S. 99. *Countermarch of the Battalion or Line on its center, by Companies or Sub-diviſions.*

When a whole battalion is to countermarch on a central point; although it may be done by files, yet without great care it will be apt to open out: ſuch, or a larger body, will beſt and quickeſt make ſuch countermarch by the march of columns of companies or ſub-diviſions in front. Fig. 40. A.

CAUTION.

One or two central ſub-diviſions wheel the half circle upon their center point; or countermarch into the new line, ſo that the front rank ſhall occupy the ground which the rear rank did, and the battalion is CAUTIONED to countermarch from its center by ſub-diviſions.

WINGS

WINGS ABOUT FACE. SUB-DIVISIONS INWARDS WHEEL. MARCH. *Halt, Drefs.* MARCH. *Wheel.* *Halt, Drefs.*	One of the wings FACES to the right about: both wings WHEEL inwards by fub-divifions: they MARCH along the rear and front of the formed divifion, and fucceffively *wheel* up into their refpective places on each fide of thofe already arranged in the line.
Halt, Front, Drefs.	The fub-divifions which wheel up to the rear, fucceffively *Halt, Front, Drefs,* when they come to their ground, and the officers who command them muft take care not to pafs the rear, but to be at their proper front rank when they *Halt, Front* their fub-divifions.

Should it be intended that the front rank of the directing-company or fub-divifion fhould ftand on the identical line it occupied before the countermarch, it will be fo placed; and in that cafe after the fub-divifion had wheeled inwards, the wing which was to march in rear of it would fhift a few paces to the flank, in order to get clear of the rear ranks, and would then be put in march.

When at any time one flank of a battalion or line is to be placed at the fpot where the other one ftands, it cannot be done in a fhorter manner than by prolonging the new line. If the flanks are to exchange place with each other, the countermarch on the center, or on a flank, muft effect it: the fingle battalion may do it by files; but a line muft do it by countermarch of divifions in open column.

COUNTERMARCH IN COLUMN.

S. 100. *When the Battalion column (or a more confideralbe one) countermarches each divifion by Files, fo as to change its front, and face to its former Rear.*

Fig. 40. B. COUNTERMARCH BY FILES. RIGHT, FACE.	*If the Column ftands with the Right in Front.*---A CAUTION to countermarch is given. At the word RIGHT FACE, the whole face to the right, each company officer will immediately quit the pivot, and place himfelf on the right of his company, and his covering ferjeant will advance to the fpot which he has quitted, and face to the right about.
MARCH. *Halt, Front, Drefs.*	At the word MARCH, the whole move, the officer wheels fhort round to the right, and proceeds, followed by his files of men, 'till he has placed his pivot front rank man clofe to his ferjeant who remains immoveable.—Each officer inftantly gives the words *Halt, Front,---Drefs,* to his company, fo as to have it fquared and clofed into the right, which is now the pivot flank, and on which the officer now replaces his ferjeant, who falls back behind the rear rank. In this manner the column will face to its former rear.
COUNTERMARCH BY FILES. LEFT, FACE. MARCH. *Halt, Front, Drefs.*	*If the Column ftands with the left in front.*—The CAUTION to countermarch is given.—At the word LEFT FACE, the whole face to the left, the officer moves to the left of his company, and the ferjeant occupies his place, and faces about.—At the word MARCH the officer wheels fhort to the left and proceeds as before, 'till he is fixed on the pivot flank, now the left, as the column ftands with its right in front.

In the countermarch, the facing is always to that hand which is not the pivot, but which is to become fuch.

This countermarch of each divifion feparately on its own ground, is an evolution of great utility on many occafions.—It enables a column which has its right in front, and is marching in an alignement, to return along that fame line, by becoming a column with its left in front, and to take fuch new pofitions in it as circumftances may require, without inverting or altering the proper front of the line---In many fituations of forming from column into line, it beomes a neceffary previous operation.

Whe[n]

When a column countermarches by divisions each on its own ground, unless the divisions are equal, the distances after the countermarch will not be the true wheeling distances, but will be such as are equal to the front of the preceding division, and therefore the true distances must be regained before the divisions can truly wheel up into line.

S. 101. *When the leading flank of the Column is changed by the successive March of Divisions from the rear to the front.*

Fig. 41. A.
HALT.
LEFT WING TO THE FRONT.
Right, Face.
Quick, March.
Halt, Front, March.

If the right is in front, the left to be brought up, and the column to continue to advance.---The whole is ordered to HALT.---At the caution LEFT WING to the front, the officer of the left (the rear) company immediately orders it, *Right, Face,---Quick, March,* till his left flank can freely pass near the right flank of the others.---He then commands *Halt, Front,---March,* (in ordinary time) close by the right flank of the company then preceding him.

Right, Face,
Quick, March.
Halt, Front,
March.

The officer commanding that company, as soon as the other approaches him, orders, *Right, Face,---Quick, March,* behind the now leading one.---*Halt, Front,* when he covers---and then *March,* when at the due wheeling distance.---All the other companies successively perform the same operation; and when the right company has taken its place in the rear, the whole column is in perfect order.

Fig. 41. B. If before this operation the column should be closed to half or quarter distance, then all the companies may be FACED at the same time, proceed as above directed, and each takes its distance from its preceding one, before it moves on.

This operation is often required in taking up original positions from column of march.---It changes the leading flank of a battalion, or a more considerable column, and enables it to enter on a line which unforeseen circumstances require it should prolong.---It permits battalion columns assembled at a rendezvous, to march off from whatever flank is most advantageous for each to enter on its line of formation.---It prepares a column which has expected to form by wheels to its left, to be ready to form by wheels to its right, without inverting its order.---In a column composed of several battalions, where an inversion of the battalions within themselves, but not of the wings, is meant to be prevented, then each battalion separately will perform this operation; but if the inversion of the wings also is to be avoided, then the whole column will proceed as if it was a single battalion.

It must be observed as a general principle, that the divisions which advance come out always on the side to which front is to be made, and on which the enemy is placed, because then with the divisions which are free he can be opposed, while the others are moving behind the line.

S. 102. *When the Column changes its wings on the Ground on which it then stands.*

Fig. 42. C.
HALT.
LEFT WING TO THE FRONT.
RIGHT ABOUT FACE.
MARCH.

The left or rear company proceeds as has been already directed: All the others go to the RIGHT about, and MARCH on at the ordinary step towards the place from whence the left moved.

Left Face.
Quick, March.
Halt, Front,
March.

When the company next it arrives at that place, it receives the order, *Left Face---Quick, March,* behind the left company, then *Halt, Front,* and *March,* when at its due distance. In this manner all the rest proceed, till the right company when it fronts finds itself where the left originally stood, only that the whole column is removed to the right, a space equal to its front.

S. 103. *When a Column changes its Wings by the diviſions marching through each other, from Rear to Front.*

Fig. 42. D.
COMPANIES TO RIGHT AND LEFT
OPEN.
MARCH.
HALT.

The column ſtanding marched from the right ſhould naturally form to the left, but it is here intended to form to the right. — At the word COMPANIES to the right, and left OPEN — MARCH, all the companies (except the laſt,) do open by the ſide ſtep half to each flank, a ſpace ſufficient to allow a company to march through in front.

March.
Cloſe inwards
March
Halt.
March.

The left company does not open, but *marches* on through the others, and as ſoon as its rear rank arrives at the front rank of the one next it, that company cloſes by the ſide ſtep, *Marches* and follows at its due diſtance: In this manner they ſucceed each other, till the column is formed as marched off from the left.

RIGHT
ABOUT FACE.
MARCH.
Inwards.
Turn.
Front March
HALT.

But if the ground of the column is not be changed after opening out, the laſt company *moves* on, after the others having FACED about, and MARCHED, have arrived at its ground; each there ſucceſſively *faces* inwards and joins, then *fronts* and *marches* on till the word HALT, is given, when the flanks are changed, and that the left company is exactly on the ground where the right ſtood. The leading company muſt take ſhort paces, to allow for the various operations of the following one.

The above method of countermarch is more calculated for a parade than for the general movements of the battalion.

GENERAL CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE BATTALION.

CHANGES of POSITION of the battalion or line from one diſtant ſituation to another are made either in *Line*, or by the *Echellon* march of diviſions; or by the movements of the column, eſpecially of the *Open Column*.

By the movements in open column.

Changes of poſition in OPEN COLUMN, are movements of previous diſpoſition, made from one diſtant ſituation to another, and not liable to the interruption of an enemy. Where circumſtances allow, By the original or new poſitions are in this manner eaſieſt and ſooneſt taken up.

Changes of poſition of the Battalion or Line already formed, when made in one or more Open Columns, may be divided into 4 Parts.

1ſt. The line wheels the quarter circle by the platoons, or ſuch other diviſions as are ordered to either hand, ſo as to be ready to divide into one or more columns.

2d. The column or columns file by diviſions, or march in front, as is neceſſary and ordered, to arrive at their poſition in the new direction.

3d. The diviſions again form in a general open column, perpendicular to the new direction.

4th. When the diviſions of each battalion are thus arrived at their ground, halted, and adjuſted, the line is formed by their wheeling up,—and thus battalion after battalion; each forming when its adjoining one has 3 or 4 of its diviſions ſtanding in column on the line.

By the movements in Echellon.

The ECHELLON changes of poſition are the ſafeſt that can be employed in the preſence of and near to an enemy, they are almoſt equal in ſecurity to the march of the line in front, or to an uniform wheel in the line, but which is not to be attempted; they can be uſed in the moſt critical ſituations, where the filings and movements of the open column could not be riſked; they are more particularly uſed when the enemy's flank is to be taken by throwing the body forward, or when one's own is to be covered by throwing it backward.—The advantages attending them are, the preſerving a general front during the march, and allowing ſufficient freedom of movement, which in ſuch ſituation is indiſpenſible; they enable to change poſition on any diviſion of the line, either on a fixed or moving point; and at any inſtant the movement can be ſtopped, the line formed, and a ſudden attack repulſed.—The echellon changes require the ground to be nearly of ſuch a nature as a full line

line could advance in ; and any of its divisions that meet with obstacles in their march, will pass them in the same manner as they do in line, by filing or doubling, and without interrupting the progress of the others.

Changes of position of the Battalion or Line made by the Echellon march of Platoons, consists of 3 parts.

1st. The platoons wheel forward a certain number of paces towards the hand to which they are to change position, and so as that each thereby stands perpendicular to its future line of march.

2d. Each platoon marches on directly in front, to its proper point in the new line.

3d. Each platoon successively, on its leading flank arriving at the platoon preceding it (which is already halted in the line), dresses up, and forms truly in that line.

Each change of position of the battalion or line, may be considered as a general wheel of the whole made on a POINT, either IN, BEFORE, or BEHIND, the old line.—The battalion or line therefore breaks to which ever hand, and to which ever division it is to manœuvre to or be led by : When to a flank, generally to that which is nearest to, and is first to enter any part of the new position : When a central division determines its movement, it breaks to right or left inwards, and faces such division, which makes its change of situation on its own ground.—When this POINT is IN the old line, it must necessarily be within the battalion when single, or within a certain named battalion of a line : Such battalion therefore will have to perform the change on a *fixed* point within itself, viz. on such division flank or central, as is already rested on that point, by making its other divisions, either by *filing* or *diagonal* marching, enter into the line : But all the other battalions will have the double operation of moving up to the new line, and then forming upon it.—When this POINT is BEFORE or BEHIND the old line, every battalion, whether single or connected, will have this double operation to perform. Fig. 43. Fig. 44.

S. 104. *Changes of position of a Battalion.*

The battalion formed in line changes to a new position either on a fixed point within itself, or on a distant point, which marks one of its future flanks, or where one of its central divisions is to be placed.

When on a fixed point, either Flank or Central.

Fig. 46. A. { 1st. By the echellon march of divisions either to front or rear, which move on and line with the placed or fixed one, when it halts on its ground, (S. 159.)

Fig. 46. B. { 2d. By breaking into open column so as to face the fixed point.—Filing divisions to front or rear, into the new direction, and wheeling up into line, when the column is prepared. (S. 120, 121.)

When on a distant Point, and that the whole are moveable.

Fig. 57. A. { No. 1. By the echellon wheel of divisions, and the subsequent march of the whole, till the one nearest to the new line arrives in it, and that the others move on, and form to it. (S. 162.)

Fig. 57. B. { No. 2. By the breaking into open column to the one or other flank, and the immediate filing of all the divisions from the old line into the new one. (S. 123.)

Fig. 57. C. { No. 3. By the march of the battalion column to the point where its head is to rest, and then facing, and filing its divisions into the new line. (S. 124.)

Fig. 57. F. { No. 4. By the march of the battalion column, and its wheeling into the new line, at the point where its rear is to rest. (S. 125.)

Fig. 57. H. { No. 5. By the march of the battalion column, and its wheeling into the new line at a point where one of its central divisions is to rest. (S. 126.)

Besides the above, which are the most general modes by which changes of position should be effected by the battalion, the open column on entering its ground may also occasionally be required to form in line in the following manner.

No. 6.

Fig. 52. 78. No. 6. When the column having arrived perpendicularly or obliquely behind the line at the point where its HEAD is to rest, is there halted.—The leading division may be placed on the line, and each other division be ordered to make such a degree of wheel backwards, as will enable it to march on in front, perpendicular to its proper point in the new line, where each successively arrives and forms.—This is a movement in column, and formation in echellon. (S. 127.)

Fig. 57. D. Fig. 55. No. 7. The column arriving in the direction of the line, or in any direction oblique or perpendicular behind the new line, and at the point where its HEAD is to rest, but which its rear is to pass.—May form by the wheel of the leading division into the new line, and the successive march of the other divisions behind it, and behind each other, till they arrive at their several points of wheeling up. (S. 128.)

Fig. 57. F. No. 8. The column marching perpendicularly up to the line, and to the point where its HEAD is to rest, and being at least a distance equal to the length of the column from such point. The leading division proceeds at half pace only; the others oblique from the column, successively move up to the leading division, and the front being thus gradually encreased, the whole battalion arrives at the same time on the line of formation. (S. 29.)

The column arriving behind any part of its ground, may also move up to close column, and form by its deployments on the front, the rear, or on a central division.

S. 105.

A battalion broken into, and marching in open column, must arrive at, and enter on the ground on which it is to form in line, either.—In the DIRECTON of that line: PERPENDICULAR to that line; or in a direction more or less OBLIQUE, and betwixt the other two.

If the column is marching in the direction of the Line, it will either enter where its head is to rest, or where its rear is to rest.

If where its HEAD is to rest.—The leading division will wheel up into line, and the others march on behind it, and successively wheel up as in No. 7.

Fig. 58. A. If where its REAR is to rest.—It marches with its pivot flank, and at just distances along the line, till the rear platoon is at its point, the whole then halt, and wheel up into line as in No. 4.

If the column enters perpendicular, or oblique to the new line, it will enter either, where its head is to rest, where its rear is to rest, or at some intermediate point where a central division is to rest.

If where its HEAD is to rest.—The formation may be made as in No. 3.

If where its REAR is to rest.—The formation may be made as in No. 4.

Fig. 58. B. C. If at an intermediate point where a central division is to rest.—The formation may be made as in No. 5.

Relative situation of old and new positions. All new positions, that a battalion or line can take with respect to the old one, are—PARALLEL, or nearly so to the old line.—INTERSECTING by themselves or their prolongation, some part of the old line, or its prolongation.

Parallel. Fig. 44. 63. New PARALLEL positions being necessarily to the front or rear of the old one, the battalion will, according to circumstances, take them up by the *Echellon* march, the *filing* of divisions, or the *Movement* in open column, and its subsequent formation in line.

New

New INTERSECTING positions, which themſelves cut the battalion, will be taken up by the *Echellon* march, or by the filing of diviſions.--All other new poſitions which themſelves, or their prolongation, interſect the old line, or its prolongation, will in general be taken up by the *March* in open column, and its ſubſequent formation when it arrives at the line; ſome ſuch poſitions will however allow of, and require being made by the *Echellon* march, or by the *filing* of diviſions.—In general, the battalion will break to the hand which is neareſt to the new poſition, be conducted to its neareſt point in the new line, and formed on it as directed.

Interſecting.

Fig. 43. 63.

In changes of poſition by the open column, the whole battalion (as a general rule) is directed to wheel the whole quarter circle into open column, although it may often ſeem an unneceſſary operation, and that diſengaging the heads of diviſions would anſwer the ſame purpoſe, where the change is to be performed by *filing*.—Yet is the above general mode to be obſerved, becauſe it is a poſitive and defined ſituation, from which every change can proceed, whereas all other modes are liable to uncertainty and miſtake, and the apparent going over a little unneceſſary ground, is a matter of no moment in point of time, and begets perfect preciſion, and correctneſs of execution.

When the Battalion breaks into open column, to make a change of poſition.

This rule, which is univerſal for all the following diviſions of a column, may in ſome ſituations be diſpenſed with as to a leading diviſion, which often has to wheel up again over the ſame ground, when the column is put in motion towards its new poſition: A previous and ſeparate CAUTION from the chief of the battalion may therefore, when it is ſeen neceſſary, prevent this extra movement to the leading diviſion, and give it a more favourable ſituation in the direction in which it is to proceed.—As in the caſe of a battalion marching off by column of diviſions from a flank to the front.

If the wheel is made backwards.—The flank diviſion may ſtand faſt, till the wheel is made, and when the reſt of the column has marched up to it, it then receives the word *March* from its own leader, and proceeds.

If the wheel is made forward.—At the firſt word *March*, the flank diviſion moves on a ſpace equal to its own front and halts, it is then ready to proceed when the whole is put in motion.

Should the battalion march off by column of diviſions from a flank to the rear—Whether the diviſions *wheel backwards, or forwards* the flank diviſion wheels with the others, and from that ſituation, that diviſion will again wheel to the rear, when the column is put in motion.

In all central changes of poſition on a point within a battalion or line, and which are made by the movements of the open column—The battalion or line breaks backwards into two open columns facing each other, and the given point, ſo that the one has its right in front, and the other its left.—From this ſituation by the filing, or by the march of diviſions, its component parts move to their new poſition, and the diviſion which faces the given one having there taken a double wheeling diſtance, the diviſions wheel up into line.

In central changes of poſition, the battalion or line, breaks into open column, facing to the named diviſion.

Fig. 45.

The advantages of making central changes, by breaking inwards, ſo as the whole ſtand faced to the named diviſion, in two columns, are—That the univerſal rule of all bodies breaking, dreſſing, forming to whatever point they are led by and manœvre to, is obſerved.—That the taking of diſtances in the new column, are all from the front and none from the rear, which laſt is a matter of difficulty and delay.---That the battalions of the wing which is thrown forward, advance from their inward flank and in the ſhorteſt line, to where that flank is again to be placed; at this point they begin to form, and the formation is made by quick filing of diviſions into the new column, where the exact covering of pivots and taking of diſtances is inſtantly and eaſily aſcertained.—That the parts of the line on each ſide of the central diviſion work exactly in the ſame manner, and form in line by one and the ſame method.—That the breaking inwards of the line, or the countermarch of ſuch part of the column as is before the central diviſion, gives theſe advantages, nor is the countermarch the affair of a moment.

In *central changes*, was the whole of a line to break to one hand, or part of a column not to countermarch.—Although ſuch part as was behind the central diviſion, and thrown backwards, would take its diſtances from the front, and might proceed exactly as above; yet ſuch part of each as was before the central diviſion, would be obliged to take its diſtances and covering of pivots in the new column from the rear, as the whole line would be broken the ſame way as the named diviſion.—This, though it may not ſeem difficult when ſuch part conſiſts only of the few diviſions of a ſingle battalion, will, when it is compoſed of ſeveral battalions in addition, be found no eaſy matter to accompliſh with preciſion.——In ſuch caſe, whatever diviſions of the central battalion were arranged before the named diviſion, would file from their advanced flanks, and place themſelves in the above manner in the new line.

line. The entire battalions which where before the named division would march in separate columns of divisions, each from its head or outward flank, and enter (by wheeling) the new line, at the point were its rear or inward flank was to be placed, it must then prolong the line, and be halted the instant the rear arrived at the point where the head entered.—This operation would not be found easy, be slower, and attended with more uncertainty than the other method, by which the distances are so readily and exactly taken from the front, and where the same mode of execution is followed by both flanks of the line.---Although battalions and lines should be prepared to change their position in this manner if so required, yet the othet method is to be considered as the general one, and practised accordingly.

WHEEL OF THE BATTALION FROM LINE INTO OPEN COLUMN.—CHANGE OF DIRECTION OF THE MARCH.—WHEEL AND ENTRY ON AN ALIGNEMENT.—MARCH.—HALT.—AND WHEEL UP INTO LINE.

S. 106. *When the Battalion halted in Line, Wheels forward by Companies into Open Column, the Right in Front.*

COMPANIES, RIGHT WHEEL.

Fig. 59. A.

At the CAUTION Companies RIGHT WHEEL—The officers step out nimbly, and place themselves one pace before the center of the companies facing to the front; at the same time the right hand man of the front rank of each company faces carefully on his left heel to the right, and becomes the pivot, on which each company is to wheel. The covering Serjeant of the right company also runs out and places himself at the point (a) where the wheeling flank of that company is to *Halt* at the finishing of the wheel.---The covering Serjeants of the whole fall back two paces.---The Supernumerary rank closes up within two paces of the rear rank, and the divisions of drummers, &c. enter into it, behind the respective companies which they cover, or are divided behind their several companies.

QUICK MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

At the word MARCH each company steps off quick, turning eyes (and not before) to the wheeling man, and carefully observing the general wheeling directions.---The left or wheeling man takes his firm lengthy step of 33 inches, neither opening from, nor pressing on, his own pivot, and turning his eyes towards that pivot.---The officer during the wheel turns towards his men, and inclines to his new pivot, or left flank; and standing faced to it with a glance of the eye he sees when the quarter circle is completed, and each gives his word *Halt, Dress*, at the instant that the flank man is taking the last step which finishes his wheel perfectly square.---The officer immediately corrects any dressing that the company require within itself, instantly places himself on the pivot flank, and his serjeant covers the second file from that flank. Both colours wheel up into column, and at all times remain behind the third file from the pivot flank of the leading center company, whether the company is halted or in motion.

S. 107. *When the Battalion halted in Line, Wheels forward by Companies into Open Column, the Left in Front.*

COMPANIES, LEFT WHEEL.
QUICK MARCH.
Halt, Dress.

The same operation takes place as in wheeling to the right, with these variations; that the left hand men of companies face before the wheel begins, and the left covering Serjeant marks the ground for the flank of the leading company.

After

After the battalion has in this manner wheeled forward into column, it will often happen that, from the inequality of divisions, different sizes of men, &c. &c. the pivots do not exactly cover; yet in this situation are they to remain, and to understand it as an invariable rule, that they are never to shift in order to cover, but by the express direction of the commanding Officer, who will correct the pivots, if his intention is to pursue a straight line in order to form: but if the continuation of a march is the object, he will allow them gradually to get into its direction after they are put in movement. But the certain remedy for the above inconvenience is, that on all occasions of wheeling into open column from line, the wheel should be made BACKWARD instead of forward.

S. 108. *When the Battalion halted in Line, Wheels backward into Open Column, the Right in Front.*

COMPANIES ON THE LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL. Fig. 59. B.

At the CAUTION, Companies on the left backwards wheel; the officers step out nimbly, and place themselves before the center of their companies, facing to the front, at the same time the left hand man of the front rank of each company *faces* carefully on his left heel to the right, and becomes the pivot, on which each company is to wheel.--- The covering serjeant of the right company also runs back, and places himself at the point (S.) where the wheeling flank of that company is to halt at the finishing of the wheel.---The covering serjeants of the whole fall back two paces.---The supernumerary rank closes up within two paces of the rear rank, and the divisions of drummers, &c. enter into it, behind the respective companies which they cover, or are divided behind their several companies.

QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

At the word MARCH, each company steps back quick, and follows exactly the same directions that have been given in the case of wheeling forward.

S. 109. *When the Battalion halted in Line, Wheels backward by Companies into Open Column, the Left in Front.*

COMPANIES ON THE RIGHT BACKWARDS WHEEL. QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

The same operation takes place as when the right is in front, except that the right hand men of companies are the facers, and the left serjeant marks the ground for the flank of the leading company.

S. 110. *If the Battalion is at once to break into Column of Sub-divisions or Sections.*

CAUTION. QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

The pivot men of each *face*, and their divisions wheel into column at the general word MARCH; the company officers (only) give the word *Halt, Dress*, which suffices for the parts of each company.— When the wheel is completed, and not before, the leaders who are to conduct the pivot flank of the second sub-division, or of the second or other sections, place themselves there.—The officer is on the pivot flank of the leading sub-division or section; his covering serjeant on the flank of the second sub-division or second section; and an officer or non-commissioned officer from the rear on the flank of the last section, after wheeling into column. (S. 47. 48.)

S. 111.

S. 111. *When the Open Column is put in March in the Prolongation of the Line.*

MARCH. { The battalion ſtanding in open column with the pivot flanks of its diviſions on the line, and advanced points being aſcertained, moves forwards at the word MARCH from its commanding officer. (S. 115.)

Whenever the battalion wheels into open column, in order to prolong the line on which it was formed, and that no diſtant point in that prolongation is previouſly given, the ſerjeant of the leading company will advance 15 or 20 paces, and place himſelf in the line of the pivot flanks, and the leading officer will therefore (taking a line over his head) be enabled to aſcertain the direction in which he is to move.

S. 112. *When the Open Column with the Right in Front changes direction to the Left, on a moveable Pivot.*

Right Shoulder forward.
Forward. { As explained in *S.* 22. 52.

S. 113. *When the Open Column with the Right in Front changes direction to the Right, on a moveable Pivot.*

Left Shoulder forward.
Forward. { As explained in S. 22. 52.

S. 114. *When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, Wheels on a fixed Point into a new Alignement.*

The alignement is entered by the leading diviſion wheeling either to right or left.---In either caſe the left or pivot flank officers of the companies muſt be placed on it: in the firſt inſtance behind it, and in the ſecond before it.---In both caſes the line is afterwards formed by wheels of Companies to the left: in the firſt inſtance the line will front the ſame way as the column; in the ſecond, it will front to the rear of the column.

S. 115. *When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, Wheels to the Right, on a halted Pivot, into a new Alignement, and Marches in it.*

Fig. 60. C.
Fig. 52.
Right Wheel.
Halt, Dreſs.
March.

{ The alignement being determined by giving objects, and the point (c) of entry marked, the leading officer who has marched his left flank on that point, when he arrives at a diſtance equal to the front of his company from it, orders *Right, Wheel,* and the quick wheel is made, ſo that on the concluſion of it at the word *Halt, Dreſs,* he himſelf ſhall be ſtanding on the new alignement on the flank of his company ready to give the word *March* as ſoon as the ſucceeding company has arrived at the wheeling point.

After

After this he moves on without looking behind, regarding his division, or allowing any thing to take off his attention, and at the established ordinary pace towards the distant points (a. a.) so that his shoulder shall just graze the head of any mounted officer's horse posted at an intermediate point (or the breast of any man on foot placed for the same purpose), and which he invariably preserves in a straight line with the given object.—This rule of all the following officers must observe, at the same time that they maintain their exact distance from the company preceding. And should any of the companies deviate to either hand, those that succeed them must rectify the fault, and exactly touch the point where the adjutant is placed.

The principal attention of the leading officer must be, never to change the time or length of step, otherwise a stop must happen in a considerable column, and the soldiers will afterwards be obliged to run. He must move in one constant position with his front rank perpendicular to the line on which he marches. The same directions regard the other officers who conduct companies, and who in addition must correctly observe, that at the word *March* given to the preceding company, the following one is ordered, *Right, Wheel.* In this they will exactly agree if the officers preserve their due distances, and make their wheels at a redoubled pace, and also, that all the companies wheel at the identical point where the leading one wheeled; therefore all the companies must march straight up to the point where the first rank of the preceding one commenced its wheel.---The attention of pivot officers marching in the alignement have been already described in the open column.

To insure the more correct march and halt of the pivot flanks in the alignement.---The commander of the battalion or column may occasionally go forward to an advanced adjutant, and being himself truly placed, may look back to the point of wheeling or entry into the alignement, or to any other fixed object that is in it.--- He can then see if the rear flanks of the column keep the true line, or deviate from it, and may correct them by signal, or by sending back an adjutant to take his position in the true line, and to whose direction they are immediately to conform.

In this manner also can the leader, if necessary correct, the pivot flanks after a halt, when there is a rear point of view sufficiently marked.--If that is not the case, he may go towards the rear of the column, line the flank of the 5th or 6th company, on that of his leading company, and a front point of march, he will then return to the first company, and on the flanks of that and the 5th correct the rest of the pivots.

S. 116. *When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, Wheels to the Left on a fixed Point, into a new Alignement, and Marches in it.*

Fig. 60. B. *Left, Wheel. Halt, Dress. March.*	The leading company begins its wheel to the left on the alignement itself, when its pivot flank officer arrives at the point of wheeling, instead of (as in the preceding section) beginning at the distance of a company short of that point (S. 51).

Whatever has been said respecting a battalion broken from the right, takes place in one broken from the left; the only difference is, that the flanks are now changed; that the left company does what before was done by the the right; and that the right flank officers are placed on the alignement instead of the left.

S. 117. *When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, and composed of Divisions of an equal Strength, wheel to the Right, on a halted Point, into a new Alignement.*

Fig. 61. *Right, Wheel.*	The pivot or left flank continues to direct till the leading division arrives in its full front, behind its proper wheeling ground, and at a due distance from it.—The word *Right, Wheel,* being then given, the reverse

or

Halt, Dress, March. or right flank (c) of that division stops, and the general pivot one completes the wheel, so that at the next words *Halt, Dress, March*, the conducting officer may be exactly placed on the new line of direction; they thus succeed each other, observing that a stronger division (a) wheels short of the ground of its preceding weaker one (b), by the space of as many files as it exceeds that preceding one; and a weaker division overpasses the ground of its preceding one, by the extent of as many files as it is deficient: in both cases, after the wheel the divisions will have retained the same relative situations as before its commencement, and the left pivot flanks will still cover.

S. 118. *When the Open Column—Halts—Wheels up into Line, and Dresses.*

If in the manner already directed, the several companies of one or more battalions have entered the alignement, and marched with their pivot flanks along it, covering each other at their due distances, for which company officers are answerable, there can be nothing easier than to form well in line.

Fig. 60. 61. — HALT. Whenever therefore the head or the rear division arrives at the given point where it is to rest in line, the commander of the battalion gives the word HALT.—No one moves after the delivery of this word, not even a half pace, but the foot which is then off the ground finishes its proper step, and the other is brought up to it.—If that was not done, and that one company should stop while another was permitted to make one or two paces, those behind would be obliged to shift anew, and much confusion would arise from officers being deficient in one great principle of their business, the preserving of proper distances.—The instant the HALT is ordered, the commanding officer from the head division of each battalion (he taking care that he is himself placed in the true line) makes any small correction on a rear point in that line that the pivots may require, although no such correction ought to be necessary.

WHEEL UP INTO LINE. — Fig. 49. The CAUTION is then given, companies wheel up into line; on which the pivot men of the front ranks face perfectly square into the new line; the company officers move briskly out and place themselves one pace before the center of each, their covering serjeants move to the right of the front rank of the companies if the wheel is to be to the left, or otherwise behind the pivot if the wheel is to be to the right, and an under officer of the leading company of the Battalion runs up, places himself square in the new line, and marks the point (s), at which the wheeling flank of that company is to arrive, and be halted.

Q. MARCH. — *Halt, Dress.* At the word MARCH, eyes are turned (and not before) to the wheeling hand, the whole step off in quick time, the wheeling man lengthening his step to 33 inches, and every other man diminishing his, as he is nearer to the standing flank.—The officers during the wheel turn round to their men, incline towards the pivot of the preceding company, and as each perceives his wheeling man make the step which brings him up to that pivot; he gives the word *Halt, Dress*, strong and firm to his company, which halts with eyes still turned to the wheeling flank, and each officer being then placed before the preceding pivot to which his men are then looking, from thence corrects the interior of his company, upon that pivot, his own pivot, and the general line of the other pivots.—This being quickly and instantaneously done, the officer immediately takes his post on the right of his company, which has been preserved for him by his serjeant.

In this manner dressing is made, and eyes are turned always to the point where the head of the column halted; to the right when the Wheels are made to the left, and to the left when the Wheels are made to the right; and if any future correction of the line is made by a field officer, it will be from the fixed point where the head of the column rested.

As there are so many determined points given, it becomes easy to dress correctly a platoon or Battalion after wheeling up, if due care is taken that the pivot man do on no con

cannot move up, or fall back, whatever direction may be then giving by the company officers for completing the dressing.---If a defect exists, it must proceed from the other men not having lined with those fixed points; the internal correction of companies must therefore be made, but the original pivot men remain immoveable, until a general correction of dressing the battalion is made by a field officer if necessary.---The officer of the third company, for example, if the wheel has been made to the left, has only to consider the left file leader of the second company, close to whom he stands as to the point of Appui, and his own left flank man as the point to dress upon, there will then be nothing easier than to dress the other men of the company upon these; but he will still more exactly do it, if he places himself 2 or 3 files on the other side of the pivot men of the second company, and from thence corrects his own.---If all officers are in this alert and skilful, and that soldiers are accustomed to dress themselves, a battalion will be instantly formed, nor will the commander have any thing to rectify.

When the column has broken to the LEFT; all that has been before said takes place; and is in the same manner executed.---Only the right flank man does what has been directed for the left; he fronts when the platoon begins to wheel up; and the point d'Appui being now on the left, the dressing must from thence be regulated; consequently the soldiers look to the left.

It is to be observed, that when at any time, after forming in line, there shall be a false distance between either of the flank divisions and the battalion, the officer of such division, without waiting for directions, may immediately, by the closing step, join his division to the battalion; but no other division of a battalion is in such case ever to move, without orders from the commanding officer.

When the battalion has formed in line, and that there are several false openings betwixt divisions, they may be remedied by the closing step, on the order of the commanding officer to close to any named division, the others halting successively by word from their several leaders. (S. 43. 79.) and in the same manner may the crowding of files in a battalion, or parade be remedied, by closing from the point of crowding, and halting when sufficiently loosened.

S. 119. *When the Open Column which is to wheel into Line is composed of Sub-divisions or Sections, and not of Companies.*

WHEEL INTO LINE.	At the word WHEEL, the company officer alone moves into the front, and the pivot leaders of the other sub-division or sections go to the point they would be at, if the column was a column of companies: The pivot man of each body in the column faces.—At the
Q. MARCH.	word MARCH, the whole wheel.—And the company officer gives the
Halt, Dress.	word *Halt, Dress*, to the whole company. (S. 56.)

The line of the march of the open column will always be about a pace before the line on which the troops form; because the one is the direction preserved by the officers in marching, and the other being that on which the flank men halt and the companies wheel up into line, is distant of course from the first the breadth of a file, which, leaving the advanced points distinct, affords a great advantage in the formation and correction of the line.—Although the officers halt in the alignement itself, yet it is impossible to allow them to remain immoveable as points of forming for their divisions, because the dressing of those divisions depends on them, and that they must occupy their proper places when in line.---The flank files of men are therefore the pivots of divisions in wheeling up into line, although the officers are the pivots during the march, and an attempt to form the line on the points of march themselves would derange the pivot files of men, and cause disorder.

A commander must be careful that he himself is in the alignement whenever he dresses his battalion, or corrects the flanks of his divisions.---In order to direct well, he must place himself on the line, and on the adjutants who are in it, and give his horse such a direction, as the divisions should touch in marching.

CHANGES

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE BATTALION FROM LINE, BY MOVEMENTS OF THE OPEN COLUMN.

Changes of poſition are made either on a FIXED point within the battalion, or on a DISTANT point without it.

ON A FIXED POINT.

S. 120. *If the Battalion is to change poſition to the Front, on the right halted Platoon, by throwing forward the whole Left, and by the filing of Platoons.*

Fig. 47. B. — The right flank (c.) is the fixed point on which the change is made, and is in the interſection of both lines, the commander immediately *ad libitum* places another point (b.) 20 or 30 paces beyond that flank, theſe two determine the direction of the new line and face to it.—The right platoon is *wheeled* forward to the right and placed in that direction, and is then immediately *wheeled* backward on the left, till it ſtands with its pivot (a.) perpendicular to that direction, and on which its officer poſts himſelf.

BY COMPANIES ON THE LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL. LEFT FACE. — The reſt of the battalion is then wheeled backward on the left by platoons, and ſtands in open column.——At the word left FACE, the whole (except the fixed platoon) face.

Q. MARCH. — At the word Q. MARCH the ſeveral officers lead their files towards the points in the new line, where the pivot flanks of their platoons ought to be placed; and the better to aſcertain theſe points, the covering ſerjeant of each platoon will ſucceſſively (as it approaches within 20 or 30 paces of the new line) run up and place himſelf upon it at the proper diſtance of his platoon; facing to the head of the column, and covering exactly thoſe that have taken their places therein: The pivot flank officer (a.) of the front platoon, and the advanced officer or ſerjeant, (b.) before mentioned, are the original points on which the firſt ſerjeants that come up arrange themſelves, and thereby become additional points for the others.

Halt, Front, Dreſs. WHEEL UP AND FORM. — The ſerjeant thus placed (being on the ſpot which the officer is afterwards to occupy,) each officer comes up in his own perſon immediately before the ſerjeant, *Halts fronts* his platoon, *Dreſſes* it quickly by cloſing his flank front rank men to his ſerjeant, and placing it perpendicular to the new line.—The officer takes the place of his ſerjeant, and the whole being ſteady, and pivots corrected by the commanding officer as they arrive upon the line, every one is in a ſituation to wheel up and form.—Should no ſerjeant be previouſly advanced to give the pivot point, the officer muſt at once conduct the head of his file to it.

S. 121. *If the Battalion is to change poſition to the Rear, on the right halted Platoon, by throwing back the whole Left, and by the filing of Platoons.*

Fig. 47. C. ON THE LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL. RIGHT FACE. — The direction of the line being aſcertained in the before mentioned manner, the right platoon is wheeled back on the right into the line, and then backwards on the left, 'till its left or pivot flank (a.) ſtands perpendicular to the new line.—The battalion will break into open column on the left backwards.—The platoons will face to the right, and the officers place themſelves to lead.

At

Q. MARCH. — *Halt, front. Dreſs.* — WHEEL UP. AND FORM.

At the word MARCH, the whole will lead to the rear, and the covering ſerjeants will ſucceſſively as before take up their pivot points on the new line.—The officer conducting each platoon, when he arrives at his ſerjeant, will ſtop directly before him, allow his platoon to move on behind the ſerjeant till the rear file comes cloſe, to, but beyond him; The officer will then *Halt, front—Dreſs* his platoon to the left, perpendicular to the new direction, and with his front rank cloſed into the ſerjeant.—He will himſelf take the place of the ſerjeant, and remain ſteady on the pivot flank, ready to wheel into line.

When the poſition is changed to the left by throwing the whole right, either backward or forward,—it then follows that the battalion *breaks* on the *right backwards*, that the rights become the pivot flanks, and that the ſame general circumſtances of facing, filing, arranging ſerjeants on the pivot flanks, &c. ſtill take place by the ſubſtitution of the commands, right for left, and left for right.

S. 122. *If the Battalion is to change poſition on a central halted Platoon, by the filing of Platoons, and that the Right is thrown forward and the Left backward.*

Fig. 48. — ON THE RIGHT AND LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL. — RIGHT FACE.

One flank of the central platoon is conſidered as the point (a.) of interſection, another point (o.) taken *ad libitum*, determines the direction of the new line.—The given platoon is firſt wheeled into it, and then wheeled back till it ſtands perpendicular to it; and the covering ſerjeant from each of the adjoining platoons runs out and marks where their future pivots (c. b.) are to be placed.—The other platoons wheel backward, ſo as that they all ſtand faced to the given one.—The whole (except the given platoon) FACE to the right, viz. thoſe that are to move towards the rear, to the rear.

Q. MARCH. — *Halt, Front. Dreſs.* — WHEEL UP AND FORM.

They then MARCH, and the ſerjeants giving ground in the line of the pivots, which is determined by the three already placed therein, they arrange themſelves in two columns, before and behind the placed platoon, towards which the whole ſtill face. — The platoon (b.) which immediately faces to and is next the placed one, muſt take care to form with a diſtance equal to its own front, and that of the placed one; all the others are at their juſt wheeling diſtances in column.—From this ſituation the line is formed by a wheel to the proper front.

If the right is to be thrown back and the left forward, the only alteration from the above is, that the platoons would FACE to their left, and file from their left inſtead of their right.

ON A DISTANT POINT.

S. 123. *When the Battalion is to change to a diſtant Poſition, either to its Front or Rear, by the filing of all its Platoons, and that this Poſition is either Parallel or Oblique to the one it quits.*

Fig. 57. B. — BY PLATOONS, ON THE—BACKWARDS WHEEL. — Q. MARCH. — *Halt, Dreſs.*

The battalion breaks into open column of platoons, to which ever hand the new poſition outflanks the old one, for to that hand will the whole have to incline during the march; and if it does not ſenſibly outflank, then the battalion will break to the hand next to the point of interſection of the two lines, for that hand is neareſt to, and will in general be the firſt to enter any part of the new poſition. The

TO THE—FACE. The battalion ſtanding in open column is ordered to FACE.—The leader of the ſecond platoon has then a direction given him which croſſes the new line at the point (o.) as near as can be judged where the flank of that platoon is to be placed.—The whole are then put in motion.—The leader of the ſecond platoon marches in his given direction at a ſteady pace; the commander of the battalion remains with the head platoon (c.) and by making it inſenſibly advance, or keep back, regulates the heads of all the others during the march, as they endeavour to place themſelves nearly in the prolonged line of the heads of the two leading platoons, but at any rate they are not to be before them; and when thoſe two platoons *Halt* their pivots in the line, the others without hurrying arrive ſucceſſively in the new direction, and ſtand in open column at their juſt wheeling diſtances.—When the head of the column is within 30 or 40 paces of the new line, (its direction being already prepared,) the ſerjeants run out and mark the pivot flanks of their ſeveral platoons.

Fig. 49.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Front. Dreſs.

In this manner the commander, who is himſelf with, and conducts the two leading platoons, moves them in the direction that beſt anſwers his views, and at once takes up any poſition and to any front that is neceſſary.—As circumſtances change his intentions, he may at every inſtant vary, and direct them upon new points of march; the rear of the column always conforming (without the neceſſity of ſending particular orders) to whatever alterations of direction the head may take; and the commander conducting that head ſo as to enable the rear to comply with its movements without hurry.

As the lines of march in filing will ſeldom be perpendicular to the new line, the leaders of platoons will take care that their laſt 12 or 15 paces in approaching their ſerjeants ſhall be made in a direction perpendicular to the new line, ſo that their platoons may *Halt, Front,* juſtly, without any neceſſity of ſhifting their rear files.

During the tranſition from one poſition to another, the wheeling diſtances ſhould be nearly preſerved; but at any rate great care muſt be taken that they are correct, juſt before entering the new line.

When the platoons in this manner gain a new poſition by filing, they always *File* from the flank which is neareſt to that poſition, and place their pivot flanks upon it.—If the pivot happens to be the leading flank, the conducting officer *Halts, Fronts,* his platoon when he touches the new poſition, which is marked by his ſerjeant.—But if the pivot is the following flank, the officer who leads ſtops in his own perſon when he arrives at the new poſition, marked alſo by his ſerjeant, and makes his platoon go beyond it and behind the ſerjeant, till his pivot man arrives in it. He then *Halts, Fronts* the whole platoon.—Conducting officers muſt therefore recollect that it always the pivot flanks which are halted in the new poſition, and that on them the platoons wheel up into line.—In general when the platoons file to the front, the pivot flanks lead and arrive firſt in the new line: When they file to the rear, the pivots follow and arrive laſt in the line.

Changes of poſition are thus made in an accurate and expeditious manner by one or two Battalions; but an extenſive line would be too much broken if thrown into ſo many ſmall files, nor could it in open ground, without the greateſt attention to diſtances, riſk ſuch an operation, if there was any poſſibility of an enemy interrupting its completion.—This mode applies in many ſituations among trees, and where the ground is much impeded with buſhes or obſtacles which prevent marching on a platoon or a larger front.

Fig. 50 When the new line (c.) outflanks towards the point of interſection, then the battalion breaking to that hand, will have its head (a.) nearer to the new line than its rear.—When the new line (B.) outflanks from the point of interſection, then the battalion breaking from that point will have its head (b.) farther from the new line than its rear; but in this caſe the platoons muſt be ſo directed during the march, by making a kind of gradual wheel forward upon the rear, that the head (b.) ſhall enter the new line before the rear arrives upon it.

S. 124. *When the Battalion changes Position by breaking into Open Column, marching up in Column to the point where its Head is to remain, and entering the Line by filing its Platoons.*

Fig. 57. C. A.
Fig. 51.
HALT.
FACE.
QUICK MARCH.
Halt, Front.
Dress.

The pivot flank of the column being directed on the adjutant (c), who marks the flank point in the new line, will HALT when arrived within a few paces of him; a point of direction (d) beyond the adjutant is also immediately ascertained.—The word FACE (to the right or left as is necessary to conduct into the new line) is then given and executed by all the platoons, and the serjeants begin to run out to mark their pivot points.—At the word MARCH the whole move in file; the head platoon places its pivot flank at a wheeling distance from the adjutant, and every other one in the manner before directed arrange themselves behind the head one, and behind each other; their flanks being corrected by the commanding officer, they are then ready to wheel up into line.—The facing and filing of the platoons will depend on which side of the adjutant they are to be arranged, and which way the line is to face.

HALT.

When a battalion open column, entered and marching on a straight line, is to form at a point where its front flank is to be placed, it will receive the word HALT when its leading division is at a wheeling distance short of that point.

S. 125. *When the Battalion changes position by breaking into Open Column.—Marching up to the Point where its Rear is to rest.—And entering the Line by the Wheeling of its Platoons.*

Fig. 57. F.
Fig 52.
Wheel.
Halt, Dress.
March.
HALT.

Besides the Adjutant who marks the point of entry, two advanced points of march must be given.---The battalion then enters by wheels, and moves (as in S. 115.), and when its last division is at its point, it receives the word HALT, and pivots being corrected the whole are ready to wheel up into line.

A battalion open column entering a new position where its rear flank is to be placed.---If the wheels are made to the pivot hand, it receives the word HALT, when its rear division has just completed its wheel into the new direction.---If the wheels are made to the reverse hand, it receives the word HALT when the last division but one has completed its wheel into the new direction, and the last division itself files and places its pivot flank at the given point.---When a battalion open column, entered and marching on a straight line, is to form at a point where its rear flank is to be placed, it will receive the word HALT when the pivot of its rear division arrives at that point.

By these operations of entering a new line at the rear, or at the front point, will the distant changes of a considerable line generally be made; each battalion breaking from the old line, and entering the new one in separate column; the whole of which movement may be made in quick time; the battalions within themselves are at all times collected, there can hardly be any impediments from ground (where it is possible for troops to move at all) that can prevent the transit of the battalion column from the one point to the other: the line is taken up just, by placing the pivot flanks upon it, and the distances are most correct, being taken up in all cases from the front of the column.—Should the presence and nearness of an enemy make it too precarious, thus to change position in detached columns, the ECHELLON march must then take place.

S. 126. *When the Battalion changes Position by breaking into Open Column.—Marching up in Column, and entering the new Position at the Point where a Central Division is to rest, and form in line.*

Fig. 57. H.

It will often happen that the head of the battalion column must by wheeling enter the alignement at a point not so far distant from where that head is to be placed in line: On its arrival

arrival there, the rear platoons cannot then have entered, but are ftopped in the old direction by the ceffation of movement in the front, it therefore becomes neceffary immediately to bring thofe platoons into the alignement, that the battalion may juftly form, and this is done by filing.

Wheel. *Halt, Drefs.* *March.* HALT. Fig. 53. FACE.

The leading platoon of the battalion having *wheeled* into the alignement followed by the others, when it arrives at the point where it is to form in line, the word HALT is given, and the column ftops. —The leading platoon, and fuch others as may have already wheeled into the alignement, being now at their proper points, remain fo, and the word FACE is then immediately given, when all the platoons, who are ftill in the whole direction, face to the flank which conducts to their place in the new line.

Q. MARCH. *Halt, Front.* *Drefs.*

At the word Q. MARCH, the ferjeants mark their points in the line, and the platoons move and halt with their pivot flanks on it ready to wheel up into line.

This movement includes both the operations of the battalion as entering a line where its rear is to reft, and where its front is to reft.

S. 127. *When the Battalion changes Pofition, by breaking into Open Column.—Marching up in Column to the Point where its Head Divifion remains placed in the new Pofition, and which its Rear Divifions enter on, by the Echellon March.*

Fig. 54. 78.

HALT. MARCH.

The column will advance to the fpot where its leading divifion is to be placed: It will there receive the word HALT.—The leading divifion will, if neceffary, be wheeled accurately into the new line: Each of the other divifions will wheel back on its reverfe flank fuch number of paces as is neceffary to place it perpendicular to its point in the new line; the whole will MARCH, and fucceffively form up to the leading divifion, by the echellon movement. (S. 158. 159.)

If the column halts perpendicular (A.) to the new line, its divifions will wheel back 1-8th of the circle, or a half wheel.—If the column halts oblique (B) to the new line, the divifions will proportionally wheel, fo as to be placed perpendicular to their future lines of march.

In this manner the divifions of the column arrive in full front, one after the other, in the new line.

S. 128. *When the Battalion changes Pofition, by breaking into Open Column.—Marching in Column to the Point in the new Pofition where its Head is to reft, and in which its Rear Divifions form, by fucceffively paffing each other and wheeling up.*

Fig. 57. D.

Fig. 55. *Wheel up.* *Halt, Drefs,* *March.* *Halt, Drefs.*

The column having arrived in the direction of, or in any direction oblique or perpendicular behind the line, and at the point where its head is to reft, but which its rear is to pafs, its leading divifion will wheel up into the line, and halt; each other divifion continuing its march will move on fquare behind the firft formed divifion, at which point its leading officer will, if neceffary, fhift to its inward flank, and each, as it comes oppofite to its ground, will fucceffively wheel, march up, and drefs in line with thofe already in it.

If the column is marching in the direction of the line, it will of courfe have its pivot flank on it, but as in this formation the wheel is made to the reverfe hand, therefore before it begins, the battalion muft fhift the breadth of the column to bring the reverfe flanks on the line, and be directed by them, the leading officers at the fame time fhifting.

In this manner the battalion does not ſtand in open column on the new line, but ſucceſſively wheels up by diviſions, and forms in full front on the given objects.—It may be uſed when the direction of its march is nearly in the prolongation of the new line, and when a battalion, arriving on the flank of a line already formed, has to lengthen out that line.

S. 129. *When the Battalion changes Poſition, by breaking into Open Column.—Marching up perpendicular to the new Line, and to the Point where its Head is to reſt, and forming in the new Poſition by the Eventail or* Fig. 56. 57. E. *Fan Movement.*

TO THE—OBLIQUE. *Forward.* *Half Step.* HALT.

When the leading diviſion (b) is at leaſt the length of the battalion column behind its point in the new line, it ſhortens its ſtep one half as ſoon as the others receive orders to OBLIQUE from the column; this they do till oppoſite their reſpective places, when each moves *forward* ſucceſſively to the leading platoon and to each other, take up the half ſtep, enter the line in front, and the whole HALT.

This movement is performed on the march, and muſt be begun at a diſtance behind the line, proportioned to the body which is to oblique and form.—It may be applied to one battalion, but hardly to a more conſiderable body, which would find great difficulty in the execution.—It gives a gradual encreaſe of front during a progreſſive movement.—With juſtneſs it can be made on a front diviſion only, not on a central or rear one: In proportion as the leading platoon ſhortens its ſtep, will the one behind it, and ſucceſſively each other, come up into line with it.—As ſoon as the colours of the battalion come up they become the leading point.

Although it is an operation of more difficulty, yet if the leading diviſion continues the ordinary, and the obliquing ones take the quick ſtep, till they ſucceſſively are up with it, a battalion column which is placed behind the flank of a line, may in this manner, during the march, and when near to an enemy, gradually lengthen out that line.

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE OPEN COLUMN, MADE ON A FIXED POINT BY THE FILING OF COMPANIES.

Fig. 63. The changes of poſition of a column are the ſame as thoſe of a line, after that line has broken into column.

S. 130. *When a Battalion in Open Column changes Poſition on a front fixed Company, by throwing forward or backward the Pivot Flanks of the reſt of the Column.*

Fig. 47. That company is placed with its pivot flank in, and perpendicular to, the new direction, and points before it and behind it are given as directed for the battalion, the others FACE, MARCH, and cover it in the new line.

S. 131. *When a Battalion in Open Column changes Poſition on its rear fixed Company, by throwing forward or backward the Pivot Flanks of the reſt of the Column.*

Fig. 47. Each company countermarches; the given company is placed.—The change then becomes the ſame as on the front company. Each company again countermarches, and the column is in a ſituation to move on as before.

S. 132.

S. 132. *When a battalion in Open Column changes its Position on any Central fixed Company.*

Fig. 48. That company (a.) is placed with its pivot flank in, and perpendicular to, the new direction, and points (c. b.) before and behind it are given, where the pivots of its adjoining companies are to be placed: all such as were in front of it countermarch and face it.—The whole then FACE to, and FILE from whichever (but the same nominal) flank is required, in order to cover before and behind the placed company, and to arrive in the new direction.---The companies that face the placed one again COUNTERMARCH, and the column is in a situation to move on.

Should it be intended to form the line immediately after making the change of position, in that case the company which faces to, and is next the placed one, would take care to *Halt* in the new position, with a double distance from the placed one, and the line would be immediately formed by the WHEEL up of companies, without making the second countermarch. It is always to be remembered, that whenever two platoons *face* each other in the same column, with intention to form in line, they must have double distance, as they both *wheel inwards*, and meet on the line of formation.—But when the column, after changing position, is to be countermarched in part, and proceed in the new direction, in that case no double distance is taken, and the necessary caution is given accordingly.

S. 133. *When a Battalion in Open Column changes to distant Position in its Front.*

Fig. 51. 52. 53. The column will march forward to some given point in that line, and then enter it, according to one of the prescribed modes at which its head, central, or rear division is to stand.

S. 134. *When a Battalion in Open Column changes to a distant Position in its Rear.*

Fig. 51. 52. 53. Each division of the column will countermarch, and it will then proceed, as having the position in its front.

S. 135. *When a Battalion in Open Column changes to a distant Position to either Flank.*

Fig. 49. The companies will FILE from the old into the new direction; or, if the position is distant, the head of the column will march towards it, and enter it as a position in front.

S. 136. *When the Battalion Column with the Right in Front is to form to the Right Flank.*

If the battalion is required suddenly to be formed on the ground on which it then stands, the right pivots will quickly be covered, and the division will wheel to the right into the line: in this situation the divisions of the battalion will be inverted.

If no inversion is to take place, the formation will be a successive one, by the head division wheeling to the right, and the others marching on past it, and successively wheeling up (S. 128.)

When

When the head of a column advances and enters a new direction, by wheeling to its pivot hand, or by filing its divifions from its reverfe hand, the formation made on that line, by wheeling up the divifions, will front towards the rear of the column—When the head of the column advances and enters a new direction, by wheeling to its reverfe hand, or by filing its divifions from its pivot hand, the formation made on that line by wheeling up will front the fame way as the head of the column did when advancing to the line. Fig. 60 61.

The open column forms in line on its front, rear, or central divifion, by the Echellon march, as in S. 158. Fig. 78.

The open column clofes to clofe column on any named divifion, and forms in line by the deployments of the clofe column.

CLOSE COLUMN.

Application of the clofe column.

1. THE battalion clofe column is formed from the column of March, or from line.—From the column of march it is generally formed for the purpofe of affembly, or deploying into line.—From line it is formed in order quickly, and in force to pafs a defilé, or bridge: to make an attack in certain confined fituations, where circumftances make it eligible: to oppofe, in ground where its flanks are not protected, a threatened charge of cavalry: to facilitate movements to the front, flanks, or rear, from which afterwards any other diftances may be taken, or the line may be formed in the moft expeditious manner.

2. The clofe column will generally be compofed of companies for the purpofes of movement: But when it is halted, and is to deploy into line, it will then ftand two companies in front, and five in depth.

3. The fame general circumftances apply to the clofe column as to the open column.—When the clofe column is formed, rear ranks are one foot afunder, divifions are one pace afunder: Officers and ferjeants are on the pivot flanks of their companies: Colours and fupernumerary officers and ferjeants are on the flanks, not the pivot ones: Mufic, drummers, pioneers, are ordered into the rear of the column: Artillery is either in the front, or on the reverfe flank of the column when in march.

4. The commanding officer alone gives orders to the clofe column for its MARCH, HALT, and commencement of formation.

5. The battalion clofe column may be formed from line; in front, or rear of either of the flank companies; or in the front, and rear of any central company. Formation to front or rear.

6. *If the Column is to ftand faced as the line is*, the battalion will face INWARDS, or to the directing company, each other company will difengage its head, march, and place itfelf as ordered before or behind that company.

7. *If the Column is to ftand faced to the rear of the line*, then the directing company will countermarch on its own ground, the battalion will face OUTWARDS, or from the directing company, each other company will difengage its head, and move in file towards its place in the clofe column, by this means accomplifhing a countermarch of the whole, and the column ftanding fronted to its former rear.

FORMATION OF CLOSE COLUMN FROM LINE.

S. 137. *Before or behind either of the Flank Companies.*

Fig. 64.
CAUTION.
TO THE—FACE.

A CAUTION will be given mentioning the company, and whether the formation is in front or rear of it.—The battalion will then be FACED to that company, and the heads of the other companies will difengage to which ever hand naturally conducts them towards their place in the clofe column: The officers and their covering ferjeants poft themfelves at the head of their files ready to lead; the officer of the named company fhifts, if neceffary, to that flank which is to become

become the pivot one of the column, and his serjeant also places himself 6 or 8 paces before or behind him (according to circumstances) to mark the perpendicular of the front of the column.

QUICK MARCH. — The whole will MARCH QUICK to the front or rear of the company ordered to be formed on, and each leader will proceed in the same manner as in forming an open column from line (except that the serjeants do not run out), stopping in his own person at his pivot point, and giving his words *Halt, Front—Dress*, to his company, when it has arrived upon the proper ground on which it is to stand in close column.

Halt, Front, Dress.

During the formation of all close columns, as soon as the battalion is put in motion, the commanding officer will immediately place himself in front of the column, before the officer of the named company, and from thence judging the perpendicular of the column, will attend to the officers covering each other in that direction as they come up, whether such covering is taken from the front or from the rear, which will depend on the formation of the column.

S. 138. *On a Central Company.*

Fig. 64.
CAUTION.
INWARDS, FACE.
QUICK MARCH.
Halt, Front, Dress.

A CAUTION of formation is given.—The named company will stand fast, and the battalion will face INWARDS; the heads of companies will disengage, according as they are to be in front, or rear, the officer of the named company will place himself on his future pivot flank, and at the word MARCH, the rest of the formation will proceed as before directed, part of the battalion arranging itself before, and part behind the given company, and the officers covering on the proper pivot flank.

1. In the same manner in which close columns are here formed from line on any given division, by facing and disengaging, may columns at half or quarter distance also generally be formed; observing, that in such cases the covering serjeants run out to mark their respective flank points, as in the formation in open column.

Fig. 65, 66.
OUTWARDS FACE.

2. In forming close column facing to the rear, the same operations take place, as to the front, with this difference—That the CAUTION expresses what is to be done; that the named division *countermarches*; that the other divisions of the battalion FACE OUTWARDS from it, and lead from their farthest flanks, in order to establish the countermarch of the whole.

3. The close column is formed from column of march, by *halting* the head division, and ORDERING the others to close up, and *Halt* successively.—Or, by the head division continuing its march, and the rear ones being ordered to MARCH QUICK into close column, and successively to resume the ordinary march.

The close column marches to its flank to deploy; to correct intervals; to gain an enemy's flank; or for some other particular purpose: But a considerable movement to front or rear cannot be made without loosening its divisions and ranks.

S. 139. *When the Column marches to a Flank.*

COLUMN WILL MARCH TO THE——

A CAUTION will express to which flank it is to march; if to that which is not the pivot, the leading officers and serjeants of each will move quickly by the rear of their divisions to that flank; and the supernumerary officers and serjeants and colours, who were on that flank, will exchange to the other.

RIGHT (OR LEFT) FACE.
QUICK, MARCH.
HALT, FRONT.

The whole will then FACE, and be put in MARCH, the officer that leads the front division taking care to march in the exact alignement, and all the others in preserving their proper situations, Dress and move by him.—When the column HALTS, FRONTS the pivot officers and

and ſerjeants, &c. &c. are ordered to ſhift to their proper places (if not already there) by the rear of their reſpective diviſions.

S. 140. *When the Column marches to the Front.*

MARCH.
LOOSEN RANKS.
Step out.
HALT.
Halt.

The whole ſtep off at the word MARCH, or QUICK MARCH. If it is meant to looſen the ranks of the column, a CAUTION ſo to do will be given, on which all the diviſions except the leading one will *ſtep ſhort*, and each ſucceſſively from its leader will receive a word *ſtep out*, when his ranks are one pace aſunder. If a general word HALT is given, the whole column halts as it is then placed; but if a partial and low word *Halt* is given to the leading diviſion only, the others ſtill move on, and *Halt* ſucceſſively in cloſe column by word from their leaders.

S. 141. *When the Column halted is to take a new Direction.*

CAUTION.

A CAUTION will be given that it is to change direction either to the right or left; on which the officers and ſerjeants, if not already there, ſhift to the flanks that are to lead. – The front diviſion of the column is placed in the new direction, and an advanced point is given to determine the future line of pivots.

—— FACE.
Q. MARCH.
Halt, Front, Dreſs.

The other diviſions will FACE as ordered, and MARCH quick.— Each diviſion ſeparately when it arrives at its point which the ſerjeants may give, will *Halt*, *Front*, and cover in column. Officers and ſerjeants will again ſhift to their pivot flanks, if neceſſary, and the covering of pivots be perfected.

S. 142. *When the Column marching, changes Direction.*

If gradual and inconſiderable changes of direction are to be made during the march of the column, the head will ſtep ſhort, and will on a moveable pivot gradually effect ſuch change, while all the other diviſions, by advancing a SHOULDER, and inclining up to the flank, which is the wheeling one, will ſucceſſively conform to each other, and to the leading diviſion, ſo that the whole at the word FORWARD may move on as before.

S. 143. *When the Column is to make Front to its Rear by Countermarching.*

Fig. 71.
THE COLUMN WILL COUNTERMARCH.
—— FACE.
EVEN DIVISIONS.
Q. MARCH.
HALT.
THE WHOLE COUNTERMARCH.
Q. MARCH.
Halt, Front, Dreſs.

If the diviſions are at a ſufficient diſtance, they will each feparately countermarch as directed for the open column.—If the column is quite cloſe, the whole FACE from the pivot flank; the even or every other diviſion (reckoning from the head) will MARCH on till its rear has quitted the column 3 or 4 paces, they then are ordered to COUNTERMARCH towards the column, and at the ſame word the odd diviſions which have hitherto ſtood ſtill, countermarch alſo each on its own ground: the even diviſions march on till they are again in column in their proper places, and *Halt*, *Front*.

DEPLOYMENT OF THE CLOSE COLUMN INTO LINE.

1 The battalion cloſe column forms in line, on its front, on its rear, or on any central diviſion by the DEPLOYMENT, or flank march, and by which it ſucceſſively uncovers and extends its ſeveral diviſions.

2. Before the close column deploys, its head division, whether it is halted or in movement, must be on the line into which it is to extend.--That line is therefore the prolongation of the head division, and such points in it, to one or both flanks as are necessary for the formation of the battalion, are immediately taken.

Attentions in the deployments.

3. The flank march must be made, firm, marked, at the deploy step, parallel to the general line, and without opening out, the most particular precision is therefore required.—Each division, when opposite to its ground, will be most advantageously FRONTED, or at least corrected by a mounted officer of its own battalion, in case that its leader should not be critical in his commands, or that he should not be heard, or that his files are too open; and thus may the defects of a preceding division be remedied, by the judicious stop of the one following it: The division is then brought up into line by its respective leader.—The justness of formation depends altogether on officers judging their distances, and timing their commands.—The officer who leads his division up into line, must take great care that it does not overshoot its ground; his dressing is always from the last come up division, towards the other flank, and the eyes of all are turned to that division.

4. As the head of the close column is always brought up to the line on which it is to extend; therefore, when the formation is made on the rear, or on a central division, such division when uncovered, must move up to the identical ground which the front has quitted.--The method formerly practised of throwing back such divisions as are before that of formation is improper, and will not apply where several battalions, or columns, are to form in the same line.

5. In the passage of the obstacle, parts of the battalion are required to form in close column, and again deploy into line, although the division formed upon continues to be moveable.

6. Before any column deploys, the divisions are well closed up and square, and music, drummers, &c. are in its rear, or on the flank not the leading one, that the movement may not be embarrassed.

WHEN THE BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES (THE RIGHT IN FRONT) DEPLOYS INTO LINE.

S. 144. *On the Front Division.*

Fig. 67.

FORM LINE ON THE FRONT DIVISION.

The column being halted with its front division in the alignement, and all the others in their true situations parallel, and well closed up to it, a point of forming upon and dressing is taken, in the prolongation of that division (and corrected from it) just beyond where the left of the battalion is to extend D.——A CAUTION is given that the line will form on the front division.

LEFT, FACE.

Q. MARCH.

At the word to the LEFT, FACE, the front division stands fast, its officer shifting to the right, and all the others face.—At the word MARCH they step off quick with heads dressed, moving parallel (not oblique) to the line of formation; the files also are close and compact, without opening out.

Halt, Front, Dress.

March.

Halt, Dress.

The officer of the second or leading division having stepped out to the right at the above word March, allows his division led by his serjeant to go on a space equal to its front, and then gives his word *Halt, front—Dress*, his serjeant still remaining on the left of the division.--He then, being on the right of his division, immediately gives his word *March*, and the division proceeds at the ordinary step towards its place in the alignement.—The officer having in the mean time stepped nimbly forward, places himself before the left flank of the preceding division, and is thus ready to give the word *Halt, Dress*, at the instant his inward flank man joins that division: He then expeditiously corrects his men (who have dressed upon the formed part of the line) on the distant given point, and resumes his proper post in line.

In

Halt, Front. Drefs. March. Halt, Drefs.

In this manner every other divifion proceeds, each being fuccefsfively (by its officer who himfelf ftops on the left flank of the divifion which precedes him) *Fronted, Marching up, Halted,* and *Dreffed* in line: The officers of thefe divifions as each approaches within 5 or 6 paces of its ground, then ftepping up to the flank of his preceding formed divifion, that he may the more accurately *Halt, Drefs,* his own; and the flank ferjeant of each remaining at his point in the line, till the fucceeding officer having fo dreffed his divifion comes to replace him; he then covers his own officer.

S. 145. *On the rear Divifion.*

Fig. 68.

The Column being placed as before directed and a point of forming (D.) taken to the right in the prolongation of the head divifion, and juft beyond where the right of the battalion is to come.

FORM LINE ON THE REAR DIVISION.

A CAUTION is given that the line will form on the rear divifion; on which the officers commanding divifions, and their ferjeants, immediately pafs behind their feveral divifions, and poft themfelves on the right of each; an under officer is fent from the rear divifion to place himfelf correctly clofe to and before the left flank file of the front divifion; and the leader of the front divifion is fhewn the diftant point (D) in the alignement on which he is to march, taking his intermediate points if neceffary.

RIGHT FACE. Q. MARCH.

The word to the RIGHT FACE is then given, on which all the divifions, except the rear one, face to the right.---At the word MARCH, the faced divifion ftep off quick, the heads of files are dreffed to the left, the front one moves in the alignement, and the others parallel and clofe on its right.

March. Halt, Drefs.

As foon as the rear divifion is uncovered, it receives the word *March*; on this the divifion proceeds, and when within a few paces of its ground, its officer fteps nimbly up to the detached under officer, who marks its left in the new pofition, he there in due time gives his words *Halt, Drefs,* and quickly corrects his divifion on the diftant point of formation, this done he replaces his ferjeant on the right of his divifion.

Halt, Front. Drefs. March. Halt, Drefs.

In the mean time the commander of the divifion which immediately preceded the rear one, having at the firft word MARCH, ftepped nimbly round to the rear of his divifion, without impeding its movement, and having allowed it to move on led by his ferjeant, gives his words, *Halt, Front---Drefs,* when his divifion has marched a diftance equal to its front, and thereby uncovered the one behind it, which immediately moves forward; he then places himfelf on its left, and his ferjeant remains on its right.--As foon as his own front is clear, he gives his word *March,* on which his divifion proceeds, he himfelf, when proper, advances to the right of the preceding divifion' then on the line, and from thence gives his words *Halt, Drefs,* when his own left file joins fuch right; he corrects his divifion on the right and then replaces his own ferjeant.

Halt, Front, Drefs.

All the other divifions fucceffively proceed in the fame manner, until the right one (which has been marching critically in the alignement, and on no account getting before it) receives, when it arrives on its juft ground, the words, *Halt, Front---Drefs.*

S. 146. *On a Central Divifion.*

Fig. 69. THE LINE WILL FORM ON—— DIVISION. OUTWARDS FACE.

Forming point (D. D.) muft be given to both flanks in the prolongation of the head divifion.---At the CAUTION of forming on a central divifion, the leading officers will fhift accordingly.----The divifions in front of the named one face to one flank; thofe in rear of it to the other, according to the hand which leads to their ground.---The named

Q. MARCH. named division, when uncovered, moves up into line to its marked flank: Those that were in front of it proceed as in forming on a rear division. Those that were in rear of it proceed as in forming on a front division.

S. 147. *When the close Column of Companies forms Column of two Companies, or Grand Divisions.*

ALTERNATE COMPANIES WILL FORM COLUMN OF GRAND DIVISIONS. ——FACE. Fig. 70. 72. MARCH. *Halt, Front. Dress. March. Halt, Dress.*

On the CAUTION, that the alternate companies from the front will form grand divisions, all supernumeraries, &c. but not the colours, go to the rear of the column if not already there. --- At the word FACE, the alternate companies face (always to the pivot flank) and their Officers then take one step sideways, so as to be clear of their rank.---At the word MARCH, the Officers stand fast, the serjeant of each conducts the division, and the officer of each, when it has cleared the standing division, gives the words *Halt, Front---Dress---March*; and *Halt, Dress*, when he arrives at the one he is to join, his serjeant being on the flank of his division in the same manner as in deploying into line. The colours remain with their proper division, in the column, & that division must of course out-flank on the hand not the pivot one.

CLOSE DISTANCE TO THE FRONT. MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

The officers and serjeants now shift their places, and take post (whether the column has its right or left in front) so that the right company of each division has its officer and its serjeant on its right, or in the center of the division.—A CAUTION is given to close distance to the front.---The divisions move at the word MARCH, by the pivot flanks, and each pivot officer gives his words *Halt, Dress*, when his division has closed.--The close column is then ready to deploy or to march.

WHEN THE CLOSE COLUMN OF TWO COMPANIES IN FRONT IS TO DEPLOY.

S. 148. *On the Front Division.*

THE LINE WILL FORM ON THE FRONT DIVISION. ——FACE. Q. MARCH. HALT FRONT. *Dress. March. Halt, Dress.* Fig. 67.

THE CAUTION of deployment is given, the line is prolonged, and attendant circumstances prepared.—The divisions that are to move, receive the word FACE (always in this case to the pivot flank.)—They move in file at the word MARCH.—A mounted officer gives, successively and in due time to each division, the word HALT, FRONT.—The inward officer of each division, when it is halted and fronted, gives his words *Dress*——*March*——*Halt, Dress*, and the outward officer assists him by remaining on the flank of the division in the line, in the same manner that the serjeant does for the company.——The left officer then replaces his serjeant on the right of his proper company.

In this manner division after division comes up into lines, and the supernumeraries, &c. also gradually take their places in the rear.

S. 149. *On the Rear Division.*

CAUTION. ——FACE. Q. MARCH.

The CAUTION of deployment is given, the line is prolonged, and an under-officer sent from the rear division to the pivot flank of the front one.—The divisions that are to move receive the word FACE (which in this case is always from the pivot flank.)---They move in file at the word MARCH.

HALT, FRONT. *Dress. March.*

The division that is immediately before the rear one, as soon as it has uncovered the rear one, receives from the mounted officer the word HALT, FRONT, and *Dress* from its inward or pivot officer, and at that instant the rear one is ordered to *March* forward by its pivot flank,

HALT, FRONT. *Drefs.* *March.* *Halt, Drefs.*

In this manner each divifion, as it uncovers the one behind it, fucceffively HALTS, FRONTS by command from the mounted officer, and when it is uncovered, is brought up into line by its own inward officer, aided by the outward officer.—This done, the left officer replaces his ferjeant, who has preferved his poft in the front rank.

S. 150. *On a Central Divifion.*

CAUTION. OUTWARDS, FACE. Q.-MARCH. HALT, FRONT.

The double operation of forming on a front and rear divifion is required.—The CAUTION of deployment is given.—The divifions FACE outwards—MARCH—and there muft be an officer to HALT, FRONT, thofe of each wing.—The individual divifions proceed as already directed.

The column muft always be well clofed up, before it deploys.——When it deploys on a front divifion, it faces to the pivot flank, which then becomes the leading one.—When it deploys on the rear divifion, it faces from the pivot flank, which then becomes the following one.

The clofe column, when it forms on a front or rear divifion, may either be halted, or in motion to its flank.—From this fituation of the flank march it is, that every battalion is required to begin the deploy when forming in line with others, and muft therefore be much practifed by the battalion when fingle.—Viz.—After the column has been placed in the alignement, it is FACED according as it is intended to form on the front or rear divifion, and is then put in MARCH, its head divifion following the alignement: At any inftant the divifion to be formed upon is ordered to HALT, FRONT, and the others, without ftopping, proceed and deploy upon it; if it is the front one, it is already in the line; if it is the rear one, the point which it comes up to, remains marked for it. When the formation is on a central divifion, it muft always begin from the halt of the clofe column.

The fingle battalion fhould alfo in exercife deploy on the front divifion when in march, as it is the method by which the line is reformed after paffing an obftacle, and of lengthening out the flank of a line that may be in movement.

OBLIQUE DEPLOYMENTS.

ATHOUGH the quickeft, moft exact, and general method of deployments, requires that the battalion before deploying fhould ftand perpendicular to the line on which it is to form, yet it may fometimes happen that the immediate deployment of a column may be demanded, on a line oblique to the one on which it then ftands, and that circumftances do not permit of the previous operation of placing it perpendicular to that line.

S. 151. *If the Deployment is to be made on an Oblique Line advanced.*

Fig. 73. B.

The Front divifion is wheeled up into the new direction on its REVERSE flank, and the line is prolonged to D.—The column is FACED to the hand it deploys to.---The leaders of divifions, then turn their bodies fo as each to take a direction parallel to the given one.---The whole are put in MARCH, and the rear of the divifions gradually get into the fquare direction of their heads, which proceed and form as ufual. In this movement, the heads of the divifions will be a little retired behind each other: The rear leaders will take great care not to clofe on each other, nor to the hand which conducts them: much precifion is alfo required in juftly timing the HALT FRONT of each divifion, which by that time ought to be moving perfectly parallel to the line of formation.

S. 152.

S. 152. *If the Deployment is to be made on an oblique line retired.*

Fig. 73. A. — The front divifion is wheeled up on its PIVOT flank into the new direction; and the line is prolonged to D.--- The fame operation, though more difficult, takes place as when the line is advanced, and the rear divifions muft take particular care to eafe from, and yield to, the march of the front.---The head divifion being advanced a few paces before it takes the oblique direction, will give a facility to the heads of the rear files, in gradually gaining it.

Such deployment can hardly be required on any other than the front divifion of the clofe column; particular attention is neceffary to give every aid as to the points of forming, and to the heads of divifions moving as foon as poffible in the true direction parallel to and behind the line.---Should a column be ordered to form on the rear, or on a central divifion, although the principles would be the fame as on the front, and as in the other rear or central deployments; yet the execution would be very difficult, and demand great circumfpection in the commanders of battalions.

S. 153. *When the Clofe Column halted is to form in line in the Prolongation of its Flank, and on either the Front, Rear, or a Central Divifion.*

Fig. 74. A. C. — The CAUTION of formation is given. The named divifion ftands faft, the others MARCH forward in clofe column in the given line: Their pivot officers fucceffively take wheeling diftance from each other, beginning at the named one, and fucceffively give their word *Halt* as each has acquired it: When the whole is in open column, the line is formed by a wheel up to the flank.---In this manner diftances are begun to be taken from the rear; but when the named divifion is a front, or central one, the others that are behind it muft FACE ABOUT, MARCH forward, take their diftances, and *front* fucceffively.

Fig. 74. B. — The column may alfo be opened from any named divifion, by the leading one only marching off, and each other fucceffively following, as wheeling diftance is acquired from the one preceding: When the whole have opened the general word HALT is given, or the column is allowed to proceed.

ECHELLON.

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE BATTALION, BY THE MOVEMENTS OF THE ECHELLON COLUMN OF COMPANIES.

Utility of the Echellon of march, in changes of pofition.

1. The Echellon pofition and movements are not only neceffary and applicable to the immediate attacks and retreats of great bodies, but alfo to the previous oblique or direct changes of fituation, which a battalion, or a more confiderable corps already formed in line, may be obliged to make to the front or rear, or on a particular fixed divifion of the line.

How formed.

2. The oblique changes are produced by the wheel lefs than the quarter circle of divifions from line, which places them in the Echellon fituation.—The direct changes are produced by the perpendicular and fucceffive march of divifions from line, to front, or rear.

Fig. 75.

How applied.

3. The march in line, or in the direct Echellon B. produces new parallel pofitions to front or rear.—The march in Echellon C. when formed by the wheels of the divifions from line, produces new oblique pofitions, to front or rear, according to the degree of wheel given to the Echellon.---The march in open column A. produces new prolonged pofitions to either flank.

4. The

4. The Echellon of march, neceſſary in making changes of ſituation, will be compoſed of companies or ſub-diviſions, and generally formed from the line by the wheel of each on its own flank, to the hand to which it is to move.—Such wheel will ſeldom exceed the eighth of the circle, but can never amount to the quarter circle, otherwiſe the body would ſtand in open column.

Echellon formed by wheels of companies.

5. The Echellon of march may be conſidered as a column of a particular kind, as well as the open column, and is eaſily converted into ſuch.

Echellon column.

6. All the diviſions of an open column A. march upon one and the ſame perpendicular, and are therefore eaſily conducted.—All the diviſions of an Echellon B. C. move on different perpendiculars, each on its own, but all of them parallel to the directing one, and removed from each other a ſpace equal to what the diviſions cut within each other.—In open column the perpendicular diſtance from diviſion to diviſion is equal to the front of the following one. In Echellon the ſmaller the wheel is, the ſmaller is the perpendicular diſtance from diviſion to diviſion, till it vaniſhes into nothing: but in all ſituations of the wheeled Echellon, the oblique diſtance from flank to flank is equal to the front of the preceding diviſion.—In open column the proper pivot flank is the directing one, and the wheels are made on it into column backward, and into line forward. In Echellon the reverſe flank, (or that which firſt joins its preceding diviſion, when the line is to be formed forward), is the directing one, and the wheels are made on it, into Echellon forward, and into line backward.—In open column each diviſion preſerves a diſtance from flank to flank equal to its own front. In Echellon each preſerves a diſtance from flank to flank equal to the front of its preceding diviſion.——An Echellon may at any time be converted into the open column, by wheeling up its diviſions till they ſtand perpendicular to the line which paſſes through all its directing flanks.

Differences and agreement of the open column and Echellon.

Fig. 75.

An open column may in the ſame manner be converted into the Echellon column, by wheeling back its diviſions, each a named number of paces, and on either flank, according to circumſtances.

7. The wheel from line in open column is eaſily aſcertained, by the perpendicular halt of each diviſion on that line; but the paralleliſm of the wheels into Echellon, which is a circumſtance that is eſſential, and decides the juſtneſs of the movement, is more difficult to be determined; for, being confined to no certain portion of the circle, ſuch cannot well be announced or executed as a direction, and therefore *a given number of paces to be wheeled by bodies of equal ſtrength*, and which ſerve as ſo many parallel baſes of formation, may be the beſt general order that can be given.

Method of forming Echellon by wheels from line.

8. If the companies of a battalion, or more conſiderable body, were all of equal ſtrength, and ſhould the outward man of each take the ſame number of paces on the circumference of the circle which he deſcribes, they will, after the wheel, ſtand parallel among themſelves: but if thoſe companies are unequal, they will then not be parallel to each other, and conſequently not in a proper relative ſituation.—Though ſuch equality may exiſt in a ſingle battalion, it will ſeldom or never exiſt in a line of battalions, and a different calculation and direction for each battalion, correſponding to their ſtrengths, appears neceſſarily to be required, whenever they are in concert to change poſition.—This difficulty may be obviated by adopting a *practical rule* as well for the battalion as for the line, on all occaſions of wheeling by companies into Echellon, in order to change poſition, and of whatever ſtrength the companies may be, viz. *That each covering ſerjeant, as the caſe requires, having previouſly placed himſelf before or behind a given file (the 8th) from the ſtanding flank, ſhall take the named number of wheeling paces, and thereby become a direction for the company to wheel up to, and halt*: as in S. 154. 158.—As eight paces of the eighth file complete the quarter circle or wheel, ſo four paces give the half wheel, and two paces the Quarter wheel, all which are wheels often made from open column, or from line, to change to a poſition perpendicular, or more or leſs oblique to the one quitted: and theſe degrees, with the helps given by advancing or keeping back a ſhoulder as is neceſſary, during the movement, will perhaps ſuffice to arrive and form in any new direction with preciſion.

9. The flank directing files of Echellons, whether they are formed by the perpendicular march of diviſions ſucceſſively from line to the front, or by the wheels of diviſions from line to the flank, will at firſt, and ſhould always afterwards be found in a diagonal line with reſpect to the front of diviſions: In the firſt caſe, A. the diſtance from flank to flank depends on the interval which the diviſions are ordered to march off at: In the ſecond caſe B. ſuch diſtance is always the ſame, and equal to the front of the diviſion which has wheeled forward, and which, by wheeling back, would exactly fill it up.---Whenever therefore the

General ſituation of the directing files of Echellon.

Fig. 76.

the directing flanks of an Echellon are all in the same line, and each distant from its preceding one, a space equal to the front of the preceding division, such Echellon is in a situation by wheeling back, to form in line to the flank, as in S. 156. or to take a position forward as in S. 162.

Passing obstacles.

10. In the Echellon march, such division or divisions as may meet with obstacles, will file round them without deranging the adjoining divisions, who preserve the necessary vacant spaces and distances till the broken divisions can again take their places.

Changes to the rear in Echellon.

11. When a change of position or march to the rear is to be made in Echellon, the battalion or line will in general FACE about, WHEEL into Echellon, and then proceed.---Or, it may be ordered first to WHEEL back into Echellon, then FACE about, and proceed as above.

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE BATTALION FROM LINE, BY THE ECHELLON MARCH OF COMPANIES.

1. WHEN the outward flank men of the company formed three deep is ordered to wheel up three paces, or, if formed two deep, to wheel up two paces, such wheel is sufficient to disengage its rear rank from the front rank of the following one.---In such situation a certain small degree of inclination may be gained to a flank, in proportion to the front of the company which has so wheeled, and the adherence of the several companies close behind each others flank, should facilitate the operation: but when a greater degree of inclination to the flank is required, then a more considerable wheel up by companies is made, that each may thereby be placed in the perpendicular direction which it is to pursue.

2. It has been observed, that the degree of wheel into Echellon is always less than the quarter circle, and that the 8th file from the standing flank is always the one to which the named number of wheeling paces (33 inches each) is applied, in order to ensure the parallelism of the companies, however unequal they may be, and whether they wheel backward or forward.---Also, that the degree of wheel made from line into Echellon, is always such as is required to conduct the divisions in a perpendicular direction to their future points; and this required degree must be determined by trial, or by the eye of the commander, before he announces his order to HALF WHEEL—QUARTER WHEEL—or WHEEL any named number of paces, as 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.

S. 154. *When a Battalion from line wheels forward by companies to either Flank into Echellon, and Halts.*

COMPANIES, WHEEL FORWARD — PACES, TO THE——

Fig. 79. A.
Fig. 86. A.

1. At the general CAUTION, that the companies will wheel forward so many paces to the right or left, so as to place them perpendicular to their future lines of march, the officer, if not already there, moves to the named flank of his company, and the covering serjeant of each at the same time runs out, places himself before the 8th file from the named flank, immediately takes the said number of wheeling paces, on the circumference of the circle of which his flank man is the center, and then stands fast with his body turned in the line of that flank man, who also faces into the line of his serjeant.—The whole serjeants ought thus to be in a line, but if any small correction is necessary, it will immediately, by the commanding officer, be made from the leading flank.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

At the word MARCH, each company wheels up, till its 8th file arrives close behind the serjeant, at which time the officer who is on the standing flank gives his word *Halt, Dress*, eyes are turned towards him, and the dressing being completed, the serjeant places himself on the outward wheeling flank.

In this situation the flanks wheeled to, remain in an exact line, and also the wheeling flanks, if the divisions are of equal strength: but in proportion to the degree of wheel which has been made, will the perpendicular raised from the standing flank of each division cut within the division preceding it, till by the complete wheel of the quarter circle all such perpendiculars coincide, and beyond that, new Echellon situation begins to the rear.

2. When

2. When the movement is to be to the rear instead of the front, in that case the battalion will in general FACE to the right about, and WHEEL forward into Echellon in the beforementioned manner, proceeding as if the line was to its proper front.

3. Or the battalion may occasionally be first ordered to WHEEL BACK into Echellon (as in S. 158.) and then to FACE ABOUT, and MARCH to the rear: they thus do not stand for any time unnecessarily faced to the rear, previous to the operation of marching, which is a circumstance to be avoided as much as possible.

S. 155. *When a Battalion, having from Line wheeled into Echellon, Marches forward and halts; ready to form in such direction as shall be required.*

MARCH. Fig. 79. Fig. 86. A. HALT.

The companies standing thus parallel to each other, and their leaders being on the pivot or flanks wheeled to, at the word MARCH, the whole move on at the ordinary step, each flank on its own perpendicular: each officer is now attentive to preserve the distance he marched off at from his preceding pivot, and also his oblique covering in the line of pivots, which remain always parallel to the original line; this requires the greatest care, being an operation more difficult than moving in open column, where all the pivots cover each other in the same line.—These circumstances observed, the Echellon may at any instant be ordered to HALT, and will then be in a situation ready to form up, parallel or oblique to the line it quitted. If parallel, by each division wheeling back to the flank of the one immediately behind it. If oblique, by the divisions moving up into the direction which the leading one then has, or is to be placed in, as is hereafter directed.

The Echellon can at no time march in any other direction than in the one to which it stands perpendicular, except that an oblique march of the whole divisions should be required from it.—During the march, the same great regulating circumstances that direct the open column direct the Echellon, viz. the preservation of distance from the preceding leading flank, and the diagonal lining or covering of all those flanks, at the same time that the perpendiculars of march are preserved by each division.—Could the march in Echellon be always executed with the greatest accuracy, each flank leader, covering a certain file of his preceding division, at a certain distance, would ensure exactness: but this alone is not to be trusted to, and is rather to be considered as an aid than as an invariable rule; for, the unsteady or open march of one or more divisions, if productive of a waving or shifting of the following ones, would in a sensible manner influence the whole.—If the leaders of the two head divisions do preserve an equal and steady pace under the direction of the commanding officer, who keeps close on the flank of the first one, and gives such directions to the second as are necessary for preserving the parallelism of the march; those two will serve as a base line on which all the others should cover.—In this, as in every other case, the perfect perpendicular march of the first leader, in consequence of his body being truly placed, and his attention solely given to this object, is what will much determine the precision and justness of the whole.

S. 156. *When the Battalion, having wheeled from line into Echellon, has marched, and halted, and is to form back, parallel to the line it quitted.*

WHEEL BACK INTO LINE. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

A CAUTION is given that the companies wheel back into line; on which the pivot men face into the line, and the Officers take one step forward.—At the word MARCH, each Company wheels back to the new pivot, and on receiving from its officer the word *Halt, Dress*, eyes are turned towards him.—The line being completely formed, officers and serjeants (if not already there) move to their respective places

Fig. 79. B.
Fig. 86. B.

places in line, except in the occasional case of wheeling into line, in the middle of a change of position.— For, officers do not then shift from their leading flanks (unless ordered), but remain there ready to fire, and to wheel again into Echellon, to resume the march, when the supposed sudden attack of cavalry is repulsed.

S. 157. *When the Battalion, having wheeled from line into Echellon, has Marched and Halted, and is to form up oblique to the line it quitted.*

Fig. 77.

Various circumstances attend the execution, according to the degree of wheel which must be given to the leading company, in order to place it in required oblique position; and as the number of paces which have been already wheeled from line into Echellon, determine the nature of the Echellon, they are an essential part of the following arrangements.

Fig. 79. C. 77. B.

1. *If the formation is made forward,* and the leading company is wheeled up the same number of paces that it before wheeled from line into Echellon, then the others without altering their situation move on, and successively dress up with it.—In this manner does one or more battalions make their changes of position on a flank or central company of the line.

Fig. 77. C.

2. *If its wheel up exceeds* that number of paces, the others wheel up one half of that excess, move on, and successively dress up with it.

3. *If its wheel up is less* than that number of paces, the others wheel back one half of what they originally wheeled forward, after deducting one half of what the leading division has now wheeled forward; they then move on, and dress up with it.

4. *If the formation is to be on the prolongation* of the front division as it stands, the others wheel back one half of what they originally wheeled forward, then move on, and dress up with it.

5. *If the leading division has to wheel back* into the new position, the others wheel back (in addition to the one half of what they originally wheeled forward) half of what the leading division has now wheeled, move on, and dress up with it.

All these specified wheelings are in order to make the divisions stand perpendicular to the lines by which they must march to their points of formation, which lines change in consequence of the position given by the leading division.*

S. 158. *When from Open Column, the Companies Wheel backward into Echellon, in order to form in Line on the Head Company.*

Fig. 78.

The head company either remains square to the column, or is wheeled forward on either flank into the intended direction of the line, and on the position given it, will depend the relative one which is taken by the other companies, and which the commander will determine to himself, by his eye, or by immediate trial.

COMPANIES, WHEEL BACKWARD, —PACES, ON THE —

1. On the CAUTION, that the companies except the head one will wheel back on the right or left so many paces (and which wheel is always backwards, and always on the reverse flank of the column, as being that which afterwards first comes into line,) the officer moves to that flank, and the serjeant of each places himself with his back to the

Fig. 78. A.C. Fig. 54. A.B. MARCH, *Halt, Dress.* the 8th file of the rear rank, immediately takes his named paces, and halts fronts with his body turned in the line of the flank man on whom he wheel d. ——— At the word MARCH, the company wheels back till the 8th file of the rear rank touches the breast of the serjeant, (who gives a low caution to halt) it is then halted and dressed by the officer from the standing flank, the serjeant places himself on the outward flank, and the whole are now in a situation to march forward, and form in the line on the head company, as in S. 159.

2. *If the line was to be formed on the rear company of the column*---That company would remain placed ; the others would FACE ABOUT—WHEEL BACK on the pivot flanks of the column, as being those which afterwards first come into line—MARCH,--and then *Halt, Front* successively in the line of the rear company.

3. *If the line was to be formed on the rear company, but facing to the rear*—The whole column would first countermarch, each company by files, and then proceed as in forming on a front company.

Fig. 78. B. 4. *If the line was to be formed on a central company of the column*---That company would stand fast, or be wheeled on its own center into a new required direction.--Those in front of it would be ordered to FACE about.--The whole, except the central company, would WHEEL back the named number of paces ; those in its front on the proper pivot flanks of the column, and those in its rear on the reverse flanks, such being the flanks that first arrive in line.---The whole would then MARCH into line with the central company, as in S. 161.---If the column was a retiring one, and the line was to front to the rear, the divisions must each countermarch before the formation begun, and the head would be thrown back and the rear forward.

S. 159. *When the Battalion changes Position to the Front, on a fixed Flank company, by throwing forward the rest of the Battalion.*

Fig. 77. A. Fig. 86. C. When the commander has determined the new line to be taken, by placing a person, a. in it, 20 or 30 paces beyond the fixed flank ; he orders the serjeant from before the 8th file of the flank company, to wheel up into that line, thereby to ascertain the number of paces required.--- He then directs that company to be wheeled and halted in the new position, and the adjutant to prolong the line as far as the moving flank of the battalion will extend.

COMPANIES WHEEL FORWARD. PACES TO THE— Q. MARCH. *Halt, Dress.* The CAUTION is then given to the other companies, to wheel towards it, half the number of paces that the flank one has done, for thereby will each stand perpendicular to the line, which is drawn from its flank in the old line to its relative flank point in the new one, and it is along such line that each will move—The battalion wheels into echellon as in S. 154.

MARCH. The officer being on the inner, and the serjeant on the outer flank of each company, the whole except, the fixed company, will move on at the word MARCH, as directed in S. 155.

--*Shoulder forward.* When the officer conducting the second company approaches within 7 or 8 paces (and not sooner) of where his leading flank is to join the first company already placed, he gives a word---*Shoulder* (the outward one) *forward*, on which the man next to himself preserving the same step gradually turns his shoulder, so as to arrive on the new line square in his own person ; and the rest of his division (who till this instant have marched in their original perpendicular direction) conforming to him proportionally lengthening their step, arrive in full parallel front

on

Halt, Drefs up, — on the line, fo as to have a very fmall movement to make at the word *Halt, drefs up*, which is given by the officer when his leading flank touches the flank of his preceding company: he himfelf having nimbly ftept forward when at 3 or 4 paces diftance, and being then before that flank, inftantly halts his men, and corrects them on the diftant given point, their eyes being turned towards him, and the former divifion.

---Shoulder forward. *Halt, drefs up.* — In this manner company will come up after company (or divifion of whatever kind after divifion) each following one, obferving to give the word—*Shoulder forward*, when the preceding one gets the word *Halt, drefs up*, and each officer ftepping up to before the flank of his preceding formed company when he is within 3 or 4 paces of it, that he may the more quickly and accurately give his word *Halt, drefs up*, to his own men, which they are to do preferving the cadenced ftep of the divifion, and not fuddenly fpringing backward or forward.—The ferjeants will remain in the line, till they are relieved by the officers whofe places they occupy.

The exact formation in this oblique line depends totally on the companies having wheeled (only) one half of the angle, which the new pofition makes with the old one, for fhould they at firft wheel the whole of that angle, they would be then marching parallel to that line, and arrive in it doubled behind each other; whereas by having the other half of the wheel to complete when they come near to the new pofition, each moves in a perpendicular direction, and difengages the ground required by the fucceeding one to form upon.

S. 160. *When the Battalion changes Pofition to the rear on a fixed flank company, by throwing backward the reft of the Battalion.*

Fig. 77. B. — The new pofition is given, and the flank company wheeled into it in the manner already directed, but backwards inftead of forward.

RIGHT ABOUT FACE. COMPANIES FORWARD. WHEEL——FACES. TO THE—— Q. MARCH. *Halt, Drefs.* — The reft of the battalion FACES to the right about, the companies then wheel forward the given number of paces towards the ftanding flank—or—as is already mentioned, they may if fo ordered wheel BACKWARD into Echellon, and then FACE about.

MARCH. *---Shoulder forward.* *Halt front. Drefs back.* — The companies MARCH with their rear ranks in front, and form in line in the fame manner as when changing pofition forward; except that the officer of each, having timeoufly given his word *Shoulder forward*, when his preceding one *Halts, fronts*, and then having difengaged himfelf from his divifion, will as foon as his leading flank man of his front rank touches the preceding formed flank, give his word *Halt Front, Drefs back*, on which his company fronts, and without hurry dreffes back on him and the formed part of the line; he correcting them upon the more diftant given point.

Very great activity is required from the officer in dreffing up, or dreffing back, otherwife the point of appui will not be ready for the next officer who arrives and is to perform the fame operation, and this will particularly happen where the change of direction is inconfiderable.—In the fucceffive dreffing of divifions in this manner officers are always to line them, fo as not to obfcure the diftant point, but to leave it open and diftinct, fo that the direction of the line may run at the diftance of one file from the given object of dreffing.

S. 161. *When the Battalion changes Pofition on a central company, by advancing one Wing, and retiring the other.*

Fig. 80. — 1. The central company is wheeled into the new pofition as already directed, and backwards or forwards according to the wing it belongs to.—Two points

points D. D. are quickly taken in the line, about where the flanks of the battalion are to extend, and in the line of the central company.

—WING, RIGHT ABOUT FACE.
COMPANIES WHEEL—FACES INWARDS.
Q. MARCH.—*Halt, Dreſs.*

The retiring wing FACES about—both wings WHEEL their companies inwards and forwards, half as many paces as the central company wheeled.

MARCH.

The whole MARCH forward into line with the central company, the advancing wing dreſſing up, and the retiring wing fronting and dreſſing back, as already directed.

HALT.
WHEEL BACK INTO LINE.
Q. MARCH.
Halt, Dreſs.
WHEEL INTO ECHELLON.
Q. MARCH.
Halt, Dreſs.
MARCH.

2. *During the march of diviſions to the front, into a new direction,* if they ſhould be obliged to form in line in order to repulſe a ſudden attack of cavalry; the whole will HALT; the inward or directing flank of each will ſtand faſt, and the outward one inſtantly WHEELS back to its ſucceeding one; when the enemy is repulſed, the march is reſumed by each company WHEELING up its outward flank to its former poſition, and then proceeding in the movement—during this operation, the officers remain on their Echellon flanks, from thence halt, dreſs them when they wheel back into line, fire them if neceſſary, and from thence alſo wheel them again into Echellon.

HALT, FRONT.
WHEEL UP INTO LINE.
Q. MARCH
Halt, Dreſs.
RIGHT ABOUT FACE.
WHEEL INTO ECHELLON.
Q. MARCH.
Halt, Dreſs.
MARCH.

3. *During a march to the rear,* if this operation is neceſſary— The whole HALT, FRONT; each company inſtantly WHEELS up its outward flank to the pivot preceding, and the line is thus formed, officers remaining on their Echellon flanks.——When the movement is to be reſumed, the whole FACE to the rear, each company again WHEELS forward its outward flank the required number of paces as at firſt, and the MARCH is continued.

4. *If the change of poſition is a central one:* Then both the above operations may take place at the ſame time. The general ſituation, if the whole is at any period of the movement halted and formed will be: ſuch central part as has arrived at the new line will be formed in it; but the flank parts which have not entered, and which join each of its extremities, will be formed in lines parallel to each other, and to the poſition which they quitted.—When one flank only is required to form and halt, the other will continue to purſue its proper formation in the new line.

5. The ſquareneſs of each Echellon and individual, and the perfect equality of ſtep during the movement, are what alone can produce the decided exactneſs required in theſe operations.

S. 162. *When the whole battalion being moveable, changes poſition to front or rear, on a diſtant point, which is in the Interſection of the old and new Line.*

Fig. 77. 79. *If the change is made to the front*; every company is wheeled up to the leading hand, half the number of paces and no more, that would be required to place it parallel to the new poſition; the whole move on in their perpendicular direction, till the flank of the leading company arrives in the new line; it then immediately wheels up as many paces as it before wheeled, and halts, dreſſed in the new direction.— The other companies march on, and as they ſucceſſively arrive near the new line, they advance their outward ſhoulders, and halt, dreſs in it.

2. *If the change is made to the rear*; the whole face about, and break into Echellon.— Each again fronts and dreſſes back when it has arrived in the new line.

This

This is the movement performed by each of the battalions of a considerable line, except one flank or one central one, in most changes of position made on a point within the line.—For there can be but one battalion of a line which forms on a fixed division; all the others are evidently moveable forward or backward; each in proportion to its distance from the general center, and from the point where its leading flank is to the rest in the new line.

S. 163. *When from Line, the companies of a battalion march off in Echellon, successively and directly to the front, and again form in line, either to the front, or to the flank.*

Fig. 81. 1. *As long as the intention is to form to that front*; they may be retired at any named distance whatever behind each other, and when the leading division *Halts*, the others may move on, and dress in line with it.

Fig. 81. B. C. 2. *But when the intention is to form in line to the flank*; the whole will be ordered to HALT, or the division successively to take any named distance and *Halt*—The directing flank of the leading company will be considered as the first point in the intended oblique line, and the particular direction meant to be given it, will be established by the placing of another point (a.) beyond and before it.—A serjeant from each company will run out, and post himself as a pivot, lining on the first given points, and on each other, each also taking a distance from the one before him equal to the front of the division which precedes him.

The rear companies are then, by the oblique march to their directing hands, or by facing and filing should situation require it, marched to their respective serjeants, and then *Halt, Front*, square to their former front.—The line is formed by the WHEEL back of each company on those established flanks—Or—When the companies are thus placed, the whole may be put in MARCH to the front, and preserving the relative situations HALT and WHEEL back into line, at some more advanced point.

ECHELLON CHANGES BY SUB-DIVISIONS OR SECTIONS.

IN the Echellon movements by companies, in order to gain ground to a flank, and afterwards to make a parallel, or an advanced oblique formation.—If the wheel up of each is considerable, it becomes the more difficult to preserve the true distances during the march, and thereby to resume the parallel line when so ordered, by the wheel back of companies.—In many cases therefore such changes, if not limited to fixed points, may be made by the sub-divisions or sections wheeling up three paces only, so that each can afterwards move forward independantly and justly, by remaining close behind each other; and this may be done either when the battalion is halted, or when it is in motion, without the intervention of advancing serjeants, or displacing of officers, but merely by the regular wheel up of the division with its outward man, who takes the three ordered paces.

S. 164. *If the Battalion is Halted.*

CAUTION. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Dress.* Fig 8. A. Fig 83. A. 1. The CAUTION is given that the sub-divisions or sections will wheel 3 paces to the right or left.—At the word MARCH, the outward man of each sub-division or section, whatever its strength may be, wheels up 3 paces, and each company officer gives the word *Halt, Dress*, to the standing hand: in this situation the divisions will stand parallel, or nearly so, and the front rank of each will be immediately behind the line of the rear rank of its preceding one: the 3 file of colours and center serjeants will wheel up as a separate division parallel to the others.

2. After

2. After the wheel of sub-divisions, the company officer will be on the pivot flank of his first one, and his serjeant on that of his second.—After the wheel of sections to the right, the company officer and his serjeant will be on the right of the two leading ones, and an officer or serjeant from the rear on the right of the others.—After the wheel of sections to the left, the leading ones will have an officer or serjeant from the rear on their left, and the company officer and his serjeant will be on the left of the two last ones.

3. A sub-division of 9 files that wheels up in this manner 3 paces, will stand at an angle of about 30 degrees with its former front, and if it is only formed 2 deep, and wheels up two paces, it will stand at an angle of 20 degrees.—A Section of 5 files that wheels up 3 paces will stand at an angle of about 35 degrees.—According to the strength therefore of the division that thus wheels will be the degree of obliquity taken from the former position.

MARCH. Fig. 88.

At the general word MARCH, the whole move on in their then perpendicular direction, as specified in the Echellon movements, taking care that the step is equal, and that each keeps up to its preceding division, but by no means throws forward its advanced flank, which would necessarily derange the others; and should one division commit this fault, the succeeding one ought not to be influenced by it, but still maintain its equal step, and thereby avoid a shake or hurry in the rear, by which distances and direction would be lost.

HALT.

The whole halt.

WHEEL BACK INTO LINE. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Dress.* Fig. 88.

4. *If the battalion is to resume its former front* B. C. it instantly receives the CAUTION to wheel back into line—At the word MARCH, each division wheels back 3 paces, thereby joining the next standing pivot, and immediately receives the word *Halt, Dress*, from the leader of each company wherever he may be (always on the right, to which, if necessary, he will have shifted), to whom the whole of his company then turn their eyes, and are by him corrected on the standing pivot.

HALT. FORM BATTALION FORWARD. MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*

5. After the HALT: *If the battalion is to form forward*, in the direction B. D. of its leading division, or that that division is previously wheeled up into a more advanced one.—The company leaders will shift, if necessary, each to the flank of his leading division, if in sections.—A CAUTION is given to form battalion, and at the word MARCH, the whole, except the head division move on, and each pivot leader of the front rank, by a small and gradual turn forward of his inward shoulder, if necessary, conducts his division at an equal pace towards the point of each in the new line, and when within 5 or 6 paces of it, by the bringing forward the outward shoulders the division arrives in it on a parallel front, where each receives from the company leader (who is then on the moving flank of his company) a word *Halt, Dress*, and to which each successively conforms as he repeats it for them; in this manner the sub-divisions or sections will successively arrive in line, observing the circumstances of movement already prescribed. When the line is formed, company leaders, if necessary, shift to the right of their companies.

The whole of these movements depends on the accuracy of step, and the gradual and insensible turn of the shoulders of the pivot leaders, to which the divisions conform, and by which they are conducted on the march, and into the new line.

S. 165. *If the Battalion is in March in Line.*

Fig. 88. SUB-DIVISIONS, 3 PACES, RIGHT, WHEEL. FORWARD.

1. The intention being to gain ground to the flank by the Echellon march of sub-divisions or sections, and without making a previous halt.—On the word sub-divisions or sections 3 paces to the right or left wheel; the pivot men of the front rank of each division, turning in a small degree to the pivot hand, mark the time for 3 paces, during which the named divisions wheel in ordinary time on those men, and the 3 files of the colours and center serjeants also wheel up as a division, parallel to the others.—At the 4th pace, and at the word FORWARD, the whole move on direct to the front which each division has acquired, the position of leaders being as already described.

Where

WHEEL BACK INTO LINE.
FORWARD.
HALT.

2. Where ſufficient Ground has been taken to the flank, on the word WHEEL BACK INTO LINE, the pivot men mark the time for 3 paces, turning back in a ſmall degree to their original front, and the ſub-diviſions or ſections inſtantly wheel backward into line, without altering the time, and at the 4th pace the whole ſtep on, having received the word FORWARD, till the battalion is ordered to halt.

HALT.
FORM LINE FORWARD.
HALT.

3. When ſufficient ground has been taken to a flank, and *that a forward formation of the line is to be made*, the head diviſion halts in its then poſition, or is wheeled up 2 or 3 paces more and halted. The reſt of the battalion receives a CAUTION to form on the head diviſion, they continue their March, and, conforming to the directions given in S. 164, by the gradual alteration of their ſhoulders, arrive ſucceſſively in line.

When the battalion is in two ranks only, two paces will be ſubſtituted inſtead of three in all thoſe movements, and no unneceſſary time need be loſt, or pauſes made, betwixt the execution of theſe ſeveral words of command.

4. In theſe caſes the original wheel up of diviſions being limited to the 2 or 3 paces which diſengages them from each other, the inclination of their flank movement, or of their change of front or poſition, alters with the ſtrength of ſuch diviſion.—If therefore a ſmall degree is to be taken, they may ſo wheel by companies, if a greater by ſub-diviſions, and if a greater ſtill by ſections, the cloſe adherence of each to each enſuring (if well executed) the regularity of the battalion during the operation, which is made on the principles, though without all the formality, of the exact Echellon, and may be required and uſed in many ſituations of movement, and changes of poſition.

MARCH OF THE BATTALION IN LINE.

General attentions.

THE MARCH of the battalion in LINE, either to front or rear, being the moſt important and moſt difficult of all movements, every exertion of the commanding officer, and every attention of officers and men, become peculiarly neceſſary to attain this end. The great and indiſpenſible requiſites of this operation are, the direction of the march being perpendicular to the front of the battalion as then ſtanding; the perfect ſquareneſs of the ſhoulders and body of each individual; the light touch of the files; the accurate equality of cadence, and length of ſtep, given by the advanced ſerjeants, whom the battalion, in every reſpect, covers, follows, and complies with. If theſe are not obſerved, its direction will be loſt; opening, cloſing, floating, will take place, and diſorder will ariſe, in whatever line it makes a part of, at a time when the remedy is ſo difficult, and perfect order ſo eſſential.

Directing Serjeants.

Fig. 11.

It is evident therefore that every individual ſhould be well prepared for this operation.—But more particularly to enſure its correctneſs, two or more directing SERJEANTS muſt be trained to this peculiar object, on whoſe exactneſs of cadence, ſtep, ſquareneſs of body, and preciſion of movement, dependance can be had.—The habitual poſt of the two directing ſerjeants in the battalion is to be, in the center of the battalion, and betwixt the colours, one of them in the front rank, and one in the rear, that they thereby may be ready to move out when the battalion is to march, one other alſo covers them in the ſupernumerary rank.

At all times when the battalion is formed in line, and halted, the inſtant attention of the front directing ſerjeant is (after being aſſured that he himſelf is perfectly and ſquarely placed in the rank) by caſting his eyes down the center of his body, from the junction of his two heels, and by repeated trials to take up and prolong a line perpendicular to himſelf and to the battalion; for this purpoſe he is by no means to begin with looking out for a diſtant object, but if ſuch by chance does preſent itſelf in the prolongation of the line extending from his own perſon, he may remark it: he is therefore rather to obſerve and take up any accidental ſmall point on the ground, within 100 or 150 paces, intermediate ones cannot be wanting, nor the renewal of ſuch as he afterwards ſucceſſively approaches to in his march.—In this manner he is prepared, under the future correction of the commanding officer, to conduct the march.

S. 166

S. 166. *When the Battalion halted, and correctly dressed, is to advance in Line.*

Fig. 82. The commanding officer having previously placed himself 10 or 12 paces behind the exact line of the directing serjeant, will, if such file could be depended on, as standing truly perpendicular to the battalion, and great care must be taken to place it so, remark the line of its prolongation, and thereby ascertain the direction in which it should march; but as such precision cannot be relied on, he will, from his own eye, readiness, and having the square of the battalion before him, make such correction, and observe such object a little to the right or left, as may appear to him the true one; and in doing this he will not at once look out for a distant object, but will hit on it, by prolonging the line from the person of the directing serjeant to the front: or he will order the covering serjeant to run out 20 paces, and will place him in the line in which he thinks the battalion ought to advance.—The directing serjeant then takes his direction along the line which passes from himself betwixt the heels of the advanced serjeant, and remarking his object, preserves such line in advancing.

THE BATTALION WILL ADVANCE. The commanding officer will give the CAUTION, the battalion will advance, on which the front directing serjeant moves out 6 accurate and exact paces in ordinary time, and halts; the 2 other serjeants who were behind him move up on each side of him, and an officer from the rear replaces in the front rank the leading serjeant. The center serjeant in moving out marches and halts on his own observed points, and the two other serjeants dress and square themselves exactly by him.—If the commanding officer is satisfied that the center serjeant has moved out in the true direction he will acquaint him so, if he thinks he has swerved to right or left he will direct him to bring up the shoulder on that side the smallest degree possible, in order thereby to change his direction, and take new points on the ground, towards the opposite hand.

MARCH. The line of direction being thus ascertained, at the word MARCH, the whole battalion instantly step off, and without turning the head, eyes are glanced towards the colours in the front rank: the replacing officer bewixt the colours preserves, during the movement, his exact distance of 6 paces from the advanced serjeant, and is the guide of the battalion.—The center advanced serjeant is answerable for the direction, and the equal cadence and length of step; to these objects he alone attends, while the other two, scrupulously conforming to his position, maintain their parallelism to the front of the battalion, and thereby present an object to which it ought to move square: they are to allow no other considerations to distract their attention, and will notice and conform to the direction of the commander only, and if any small alteration in their position is ordered, it must be gradually and coolly made.

1. OFFICERS in the ranks can only be observant of their own personal exactness of march, they are then but individuals equally attentive as their men; they are not to attempt to dress their companies by looking along or calling to them, otherwise they will certainly err themselves, and derange the march: such care belongs to the officers in the rear; and well-trained soldiers themselves know the remedy that is required, and will gradually apply it. Officers.

2. The weight of the COLOURS, and the embarrassment attending them in windy weather, rough ground, &c. make it impossible at any time to depend on the officer carrying them for a true direction, or an equal and cadenced step: but they must always be carried uniformly and upright, thereby to facilitate the moving and dressing of the line. Colours.

3. The MEN are on no account to turn their heads to the colours, but to preserve them, and consequently their shoulders square to the front, and to depend principally on the light touch of the elbow, together with an occasional glance of the eye, and the accuracy of step for their dressing.---If heads were permitted to be turned to the center, the inward shoulder would be brought forward, the wings would remain behind, the files would open, and disorder would arise in endeavouring still to adhere to the center, and to counteract what would be occasioned by the fault of principle, and not of the soldier. Soldiers.

4. Inattention, or an inequality of STEP, will produce a waving in the march of the battalion; but the communication of this may often be stopped, by the exertions of the Step.

major

major and adjutant, who seeing where and why it originates, will immediately apprize the companies in fault, and coolly caution the others that are well in their true line not to participate of the error. —— A flank of the battalion may at first sight appear to be behind, when the fault really arises from a central division bulging out, and thereby preventing the flank from being seen.

5. Whatever ALTERATION is to be made in any part of the battalion must be made gradually, and not hurried, that the consequent shake it occasions may be as little felt as possible; the mounted officers only can point out, and correct such faults.

anks.

6. The FLANKS on no account are to be kept back; much less are they to be advanced before the center; in either case the distance of files must be lost, and the battalion will not be covering its true ground: the convex or concave shape of the Battalion will shew this to the commander, and the beginning of each inaccuracy is to be studiously corrected by necessary cautions.--The officer who is on each flank of the battalion, being unconfined by the ranks, and not liable to be influenced by any floating that does arise, may, by preserving an accurate step, and having a general attention to the colours and to the proper line which the battalion should be in with respect to the advanced directors, very much assist in preserving the flanks in their due position: When he observes that a line drawn from himself through the center of the battalion passes considerably before the other flank, he may conclude himself too much retired: when such line passes behind that flank, he may conclude himself too much advanced, he will therefore regulate himself accordingly.—When the battalion in march is convex, the wings must gain the straight line of the center, by bringing up the outward shoulder; and it must be strongly impressed on the soldier, that in all situations of movement, by advancing or keeping back the shoulder as ordered, the most defective dressing will be gradually and smoothly remedied, whereas sudden jerks and quick alterations break the line and produce disorder.

Rear ranks.

7. The REAR RANKS which were closed up before the march began, must move at the lock step, and not be allowed to open during the march; the correct movement of the battalion depends much on their close order.

Arms carried.

8. Supported ARMS are allowed when halted or when in column, as not interfering with its exactness, but in the march in line, arms are always to be carried SHOULDERED, as otherwise it is in vain to look for a just line, or true distances of files, and slovenliness, inaccuracy, and disorder, must take place at a time when the most perfect precision is required.

Change of direction on the center in march.

Fig. 82. D. E.

9. The COMMANDER must himself attend to the correct movement of the directing serjeant; if during the first 20 paces he perceives steadiness, and no floating in the battalion, he may be assured that the line of march is justly taken; but the contrary will be the case if (the parallel front of the battalion being preserved) he sees the files on one flank opening and on the other crowding; he will instantly apply the remedy by ordering the directing serjeant—RIGHT SHOULDER FORWARD, if the opening is on the left of the battalion, or, LEFT SHOULDER FORWARD, if the opening is on the right: At this command the serjeant making an almost imperceptible change of his position (by bringing up one shoulder) and of his points, and the colours in the battalion when they have advanced 6 paces to his ground conforming to it, the whole will by degrees gain a new direction.---Every change of direction made in this manner must produce a kind of wheel of the battalion on its centre, one wing gradually giving back, and the other as gradually advancing, an attention which the commander must take care is observed.

HALT.

The battalion marching in perfect order, when it arrives at its ground receives the word HALT; the step which is then taking is finished, and the whole halt; eyes remain turned towards the center, the whole remains steadied, and the commanding officer places himself close to the rear rank, in order to see whether the battalion is sufficiently dressed, and in a direction perfectly parallel to the one it quitted.—No preparatory caution is to be used before halting, such caution supposes and encourages incorrectness, and creates uncertainty: at the word halt, the whole halt firmly.

When the battalion is advancing in line for any considerable distance, or moving up in parade, the music may be allowed at intervals to play for a few seconds only, and the drums in two divisions to roll, but it is the wind instruments only which play, the large drum, or any other instrument whatever which marks time by the stroke, is not to be permitted.—When the line is retiring, music are never to play.

S. 167. When the Battalion is to Dress.

It is evident that in the DRESSING of a single battalion after the halt, whatever correction is necessary, must be made by advancing or retiring the flanks, and not by moving the center, which having been the guide in the march, has justly stopped at the point where it has arrived.

DRESS. EYES, FRONT. — 1. When the commanding officer gives the word DRESS, the company officer on the left of the colours instantly dresses the 6 or 8 files to the right of the colour in a proper parallel direction, the two wings immediately conform to the center, and afterwards receive the word EYES, FRONT.

Fig. 82. G. BATTALION, RIGHT, DRESS. MARCH. *Halt, Dress,* — 2. Should the commander require a more exact dressing than the above gives, he will order one colour to advance one step, and FACE to the left, also the second company officer on the left of the colour to advance one step, and FACE to the left; then the flank company officers to advance, and to face to the center; then each other company officer instantly to COVER those at their due distances, and face to the center; then the officers of the left wing to FACE about, so as the whole stand fronted to the left.— Then battalion, RIGHT, DRESS, on which the companies MARCH up to their respective officers, who are favourably posted for halting and dressing each his company; after which, and without loss of time, the officers front into line.

3 It must be observed in this mode of dressing, whether it is taken from the center, or from a flank, that platoon officers, who originally face to the left, take distances equal to the front of their own platoons from the officer before them; but such as face to the right must take distances from the officer before them equal to the front of the platoon, which in line is on the right of them.---When circumstances allow the dressing to begin from the left, an advantage arises, that the officers do all originally face to the left.

4. A small change of direction may in this manner be given to the battalion when halted, either on a flank or central company.—To the *Front* by advancing and placing the officers.—To the *Rear* by the covering serjeants in the same manner giving the ground, the men facing about, lining with the serjeants; then fronting; and the officers replacing the serjeants. But a flank is never in such case supposed to move above 20 or 30 paces. Change of direction on the flank halted.

The battalion may also be occasionally dressed in the following correct manner.—One of the colours is advanced some paces.— An under officer on one flank of the battalion is placed in a determined line.— An under officer on the other flank lines himself with the last placed one, and the colour.—The two center grand divisions are moved up to the colour, and dressed to each flank.— The wing grand divisions then move up, and the grenadier and light company in same manner. This dressing may soon be made if done at the ordinary pace, without hurry, and that the chiefs of divisions aligne in the prolongation of the base.

S. 168. When the Battalion is to retire.

It is evident that it ought to be previously dressed with the same correctness, as when it was to advance, and the same care in ascertaining the direction of its march must be taken. —Therefore before the retreat is to begin, an officer will have placed himself 30 paces in the rear, so as to stand perpendicular to the front directing serjeant, and of course he will be in the line, or nearly so, of the directing serjeants.

THE BATTALION WILL RETIRE. — At the word, the BATTALION WILL RETIRE, the directing serjeants face about. The same center serjeant that directs to the front, directs also to the rear; he moves on in the line of the advanced officer, 6 paces beyond the rear rank and halts; and the other serjeants are on each side of him.

RIGHT ABOUT FACE. — At the word RIGHT ABOUT FACE, the whole face; and the supernumerary officer who replaces the directing serjeant, moves up into the leading rank; a mounted field officer passes through to the rear, and the directing serjeant in the interim prolongs his line, and takes his objects betwixt the feet of the posted officer.

Immediately

MARCH. Immediately after facing about, the word MARCH is given, and the whole proceed in the same manner, and with the same attentions as in moving to the front; the directing serjeant conducting on his points, under the correction of the field officer who is 10 paces behind the battalion.

HALT, FRONT. When the battalion is to front: it receives the word HALT, FRONT, and immediately halts and fronts, the serjeants, &c. resuming their proper stations; it is then dressed if necessary in the manner already prescribed.

Attentions in retiring.

1. In marching to the REAR, the battalion must cover its proper extent of ground.—The rear rank men must avoid closing their files more than usual, otherwise the front men who are in general larger, will be crowded in their rank.—Music, drums, supernumerary officers, &c. will take care to march with exactness, not to interrupt, but rather to assist the battalion.—The battalion is not to FACE about, till every thing is prepared for its instant MARCH, and its HALT, FRONT, is one command: when retiring therefore it never unnecessarily stands faced to the rear.

Wing platoons.
Fig. 83. A. B.

2. When the WING companies of a battalion are wheeled backward and faced outward in order to cover its flank.—Such companies if during the retreat they march in file, will take particular care to move in the same direction as the battalion and not impede its progress. When the battalion fronts, those companies will face outward, and always recollecting that their immediate business is to cover the flanks, they will regulate their position and movements by those of the battalion.—When marching they move in file perpendicular to the line of the battalion: when fronted they make an angle with it of about 45°, according to the apparent circumstances that threaten.

S. 169. *Changes of the Battalion when in Movement.*

The battalion when marching in front, must be much accustomed to step out, to step short, to oblique to right or left, and to change direction by a small and gradual turn of the shoulder: all these must be executed with the utmost precision, in perfect cadence, and upon decided words of command, as they are operations wanted and essential to the perfect movements of a considerable line.

—RIGHT OBLIQUE, FORWARD. 1. Obliquing a battalion in a parallel direction, to gain a flank, or to preserve a given appui, is a difficult, but necessary operation.—Obliquing a battalion when in line with others for a few paces in order to correct an interval, must be done without eyes being turned from the center.

LEFT SHOULDER FORWARD. RIGHT SHOULDER FORWARD. 2. Change of direction on the march begins with the leading serjeant, and is conformed to by the center and by the battalion, when they arrive at the point where the serjeant began it; it must be made almost insensibly, and gradually in proportion to the extent of the body, that is thus to change direction, for without incurring disorder, the outward flank can only get into line by lengthening its step, which requires time.

3. Obliquing the battalion by the wheeling up of sections or sub-divisions is performed as in S. 164. and is used where a considerable space is to be gone over.

4. Change of front and position, by sub-divisions or sections, is performed as in S. 165.

RIGHT, WHEEL. FORWARD. HALT. 5. If the battalion halted or in movement is required to make a wheel on a flank, with an uniform front, such wheel can seldom be wanted to exceed the 8th or 6th of the circle. On the word, to the right wheel, the right marks the time, the center takes a half step, and the left a full step, the intermediate parts of the battalion conforming accordingly; and at the word forward, or halt, the whole are directed by the center; this movement requires every aid that can be given by the mounted and supernumerary officers.

6. If the battalion in movement is required to make a small change of front on the center.—The center will mark the time, a very small turn of the shoulders will be gradually made, the wings will conform, one advancing, the other giving back, till at the word forward the whole move on as before.

A.

7. A battalion halted may change its position forward to a certain degree, or throw back a flank, in a manner that gives great protection during the movement if made near an enemy. —At the word MARCH, the right company, or left, *wheels* into the new direction, and the rest of the line at the same time moves on in front, and by command OBLIQUES to join the left of the first company. When the right flank of the second company has arrived there, it also *wheels* up into the new direction, and the rest of the line continues to oblique to join its left flank. In this manner the line preserves its uniform front, obliques, and gradually enters the new position as its leading company arrives in it, at the same time that it covers and protects the flanks of the formed companies. —By the same means also will a battalion throw back any number of its divisions in presence of an enemy: The angular company will give the direction, the rest FACE ABOUT; MARCH, OBLIQUE, successively *wheel* into it, and *front*. The outward company of all, which may be formed as a flank to the battalion, will march in file, and cover the flank. Before this movement commences, officers must shift to the inward flank of their companies, in order to dress them on the given distant point after the wheel, in the same manner as in the Echellon movements, of the nature of which this partakes.

Wheeling up or throwing back the whole or part of the battalion.

Fig. 87.

Fig. 89.

PASSAGE OF OBSTACLE WHEN THE BATTALION IS MARCHING IN LINE.

WHEN the battalion is marching either to front or rear, the partial obstacles that present themselves will be passed, by the formation, march, and deployment of the close column. —Such parts as are not interrupted, still move on in front; such parts as are interrupted, double by divisions as ordered, behind an adjoining flank or flanks, and in this manner follow in close column in their natural order. As the ground opens they successively deploy, and again perfect the line.—The columns are always behind the line, and march closed up.—The formed part of the battalion, whether advancing or retiring, continues to move on at the ordinary pace, and in proportion as the obstacles increase or diminish, will the formed or column parts of the line increase or diminish.

Passage of the obstacle in close column, either in advancing or retiring.

Fig. 84.

In general the columns formed will be of sub-divisions: the first sub-division that is obliged to double will be directed to which hand by the commander of the battalion, the others, as they successively double, will in consequence place themselves behind it, and behind each other, and the hand first doubled to, will be that which presents the opening most favourable to the subsequent march, and formation, and which the commanding officer will always hold in view, and order accordingly. —The interrupted body will double to one or both flanks, according to circumstances, and the order it receives. Obstacles that impede a flank will occasion a single column to be formed from the flank towards the center. Obstacles that impede the center, or a central part of a wing, will, if considerable, occasion two columns to be formed, from the center towards the flanks. —The columns will follow a flank of such part of the line as is not impeded; and either in doubling into column, or extending into line, the rear divisions will conform to the movements of their then leading one.— No part less than the front of the column doubles or moves up, and when half or more of a battalion must be thrown into one column, it will be ordered by companies.

General attentions.

S. 170. *When the Obstacle presents a considerable Front parallel to the line.*

Fig 84 C. D.

CAUTION.

HALT, FACE. Q. MARCH.

Halt, Front. Q. March. Ordinary.

The divisions impeded must all at once double behind such one or two other divisions as clear them of the obstacle.—In this case a timely caution is given by the commanding officer to the part of the line that is to pass the obstacle; the necessary portion of the line, when within a few paces of where it is impeded, is ordered to HALT, FACE, either to one or both flanks, and the heads of the sub-divisions (except the leading one) disengage to the rear. The whole MARCH quick, and each, as it arrives square and close behind the preceding one, *halts*, *fronts*, and *marches* forward, taking up the *ordinary* step when closed up. The leaders of the sub-divisions of the column remain on the flank next the opening which they are to fill up.

S. 171.

S. 171. *When a Point of the Obſtacle is preſented to the Line, and that it continues to increaſe.*

Fig. 84. G.

CAUTION. HALT. FACE. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Front. Q. March. Ordinary.*

The doubling is then ſucceſſive, beginning with that diviſion which is firſt interrupted, and continuing, as it becomes neceſſary, till the column can advance in clear ground.---In this caſe the ſub-diviſion impeded will be ordered by the commanding officer to HALT, FACE, MARCH—*Halt, Front, March*, by its own leader, and follow the one adjoining to it, which makes the flank of that formed part of the line.—When this laſt ſub-diviſion alſo becomes impeded, theſe two perform the above operation, and place themſelves in column behind the next ſub-diviſion.—The three, the four, &c. ſucceſſively repeat it as the narrowing of the ground requires (and upon the words given by the commanding officer, or by the officer of the then head diviſion, ſhould the commanding officer be otherwiſe employed) until the obſtacle ceaſes to interrupt the march of a formed part of the line.

S. 172. *When the Obſtacle is paſſed, or diminiſhes, and that the Line encreaſes.*

HALT. FACE. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Front. Q. March. Ordinary.*

If it is of ſuch a nature as to permit of the complete extenſion at once into line: the whole column performs it by the commands and deployments of the cloſe column on the front diviſion which then makes part of the line.

Fig. 84. T. H.

HALT. FACE. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Front. Q. March. Ordinary.*

But when the obſtacle diminiſhes by degrees only; then the diviſions of the column muſt come up into line ſucceſſively as the ground opens, and the remainder of the column muſt in diminiſhing, ſhift towards the obſtacle, in the ſame manner as it before ſhifted from it in encreaſing. When the ſecond ſub-diviſion of the column can therefore come up; its leader, or the commanding or mounted officer gives the word for his own and the following ſub-diviſions HALT, FACE, MARCH, and when oppoſite to his ground HALT, FRONT, MARCH, and when he is up in line ORDINARY.—It depends on the opening of the ground, whether more than one diviſion of the column can come into line at the ſame flank movement.—This operation is repeated by the mounted officer, or the leader of what is then the ſecond ſub diviſion, as often as ſuch ſub-diviſion ſees that it is proper to move up into line, and is conformed to by the rear of the column, till all its diviſions have ſucceſſively arrived in the line.

General Attentions.

The commanding officer himſelf or a mounted officer muſt as much as poſſible order the doubling of the diviſions, and their moving up into line; and particularly when any conſiderable part of the battalion is obliged to double into one column.—But if there are ſeveral doublings in the battalion at the ſame time, he can only direct the moſt conſiderable one, and the others muſt be ordered by their ſeveral head officers.

Theſe movements are all made on parallel and perpendicular, not oblique lines, and the progreſs which the formed part of the battalion is conſtantly making, ſhews that no time muſt be loſt either in giving or executing the words of command, and that the diviſions of the column muſt be well cloſed up, and its movements quick, firm, but in perfect order.—The diviſions of the column form ſucceſſively into line, as the obſtacle permits them, or again double ſo as to conform to the ſhape of the ground, which muſt always be filled up.—The march of the uninterrupted part of the line muſt be ſteady and exact, and the openings made muſt be carefully preſerved from the center while it continues to direct, or from whatever point does ſo while the center is impeded; the columns depend on the formed parts of the battalion to which they are attached, and are independent of each other.—When the center is interrupted, a named company officer of the line will be ordered to advance 6 paces to regulate the whole, till the directing ſerjeant of the center can again reſume his true and original line, which he by advancing ſingly from the column will endeavour to do as ſoon as poſſible.

Whether the battalion is advancing or retiring, the ſame operations take place, and the columns in both caſes are behind the formed part of the line: in retiring, the rear rank leads.

S. 173. *When the Battalion fires, during the Passage of an Obstacle.*

HALT. If the battalion in *advancing* should be obliged to fire; it HALTS in the situation it is then in, executes such firings as are ordered, and again advances.

HALT, FRONT. RIGHT ABOUT FACE. MARCH. If the battalion in retiring is pressed by the enemy, the part in line will HALT, FRONT, the part in column will move on till the last division arrives in line and will then HALT, FRONT. The firing that is ordered, will be executed; and when it is again proper to retire, the whole will FACE about, the part in line will MARCH, and the columns will also be put in MARCH when the line arrives at their head.

S. 174. *When a Battalion is advancing it may also under certain circumstances pass such Obstacles as present themselves by File.*

In such case the interrupted division or divisions will be ordered to FACE either to one or both flanks, and closely to follow in file such parts of the battalion as are not broken: the filing will encrease as the obstacle encreases, but as it diminishes, file after file will successively and quickly move up to their proper place till the whole are again formed; and during this operation, the leading file will always remain attached to the flank of the part in line. —The same rules that direct the doubling in column direct the doubling by files; when a sub-division files it will be from the flank only; when a company files it may be from both flanks; and if a larger front than 2 companies is interrupted, it then doubles into column. —Where the obstacles are of small extent, but frequently occurring, this mode is the readiest that can be applied in advancing: but in retiring it cannot be used, if the enemy are at hand to press upon the battalion; and therefore the passing by column is to be looked upon as the general method. Fig. 84. I. K. L. M.

In plate 10. fig. 84.—The position A. is a battalion and part of two others formed in line, they advance meeting with obstacles.—B. three sub-divisions of the left of the battalion have doubled.—C. one sub-division of the right has, also doubled.—D. a central obstacle now occurring three sub-divisions of the right and one of the center, also two of the left, and three of the center have doubled.—E. one of the right has moved into line, and one more of its center has doubled, also one of its left has moved into line.—F. the whole divisions have moved into line, except three sub-divisions of the left which are in column.—G. the three sub-divisions of the left remain in column, and two on the right and three at the center have again doubled.—H. the whole having arrived on open ground have moved up into line, except one sub-division on the right.

If the battalion A. instead of advancing in front, is supposed to have faced to the right about and to be retreating; the positions of the divisions in column will be the same as above, they performing their movements, with their rear ranks in front.

The positions I, K, L, M, shew the passage of obstacles, by the impeded parts filing round them.—At N, the line is again completed.—O, P, shew the passage of a wood, by the filing of companies.——At Q. all obstacles are passed; and the situation of part of the adjoining battalions also appears during this march.

S. 175. *When the Battalion moving in Line, passes a Wood, or other impediment, to front or rear, by the filing of Companies.*

PASS TO THE FRONT. *Right, turn.* 1. *If to pass a wood or other embarrassed ground to the front;* when it is found necessary to break the battalion, the commander will order it to PASS from the right of companies to the front, on which each company officer orders his company *right turn*, wheels out his leading file, and passes on as fast as the difficulty of the ground will allow him, endeavouring to preserve a relative distance from the left as being the head of the column, or from the

Fig. 84. O. P.
Fig. 85. A.

the other flank if particularly so ordered.—Each officer on arriving at the farther edge of the wood will *halt* his company, and remain till the others are come up, and till the whole are ordered to march out, and form in battalion; which will generally be done by standing in open column the left in front, dressing pivot flanks, and wheeling up into line.---Or, if the companies form separately on the edge of the wood, they will march out and join in the battalion.

PASS COMPANIES BY FILES.
Left turn.
Q. March.
HALT, FRONT.

2. *If to pass to the rear.*---When the battalion retiring in line, arrives at the point where it must break, it is ordered to, PASS, COMPANIES BY FILES.---The leader of each gives his word *left turn*, and proceeds as above directed; the heads of files are regulated from the left; and after quitting the wood, at an ordered distance, they HALT, FRONT into column, the right in front, and WHEEL to the left, up into line.--The line then again retreats if necessary.

Fig. 91.
PASS COMPANIES BY FILES.
Right Face.
Q. March.
HALT, FRONT.

3. *If a Battalion in first line passes through a second which advances and relieves it.*--The second marches up to within 12 paces of the first and halts.---The battalion of the first then receives the word PASS COMPANIES BY FILES.--Each leader gives his word *Right face*, *Q. March*, and proceeds at a quick pace to the rear through the second line, which, whenever the head of a division presents itself, throws back as many files as are necessary to give it passage, and again immediately moves up; the retiring files, who are regulated by their left, at any ordered distance HALT, FRONT into column the right in front, and WHEEL FRONT into column the right in front, and WHEEL up to the left into line.

PASS COMPANIES BY FILES.
Left turn.
Q. March.
&c.

4. *When the second line does not advance to relieve the first.*---The battalion of the first line retires, and when it comes within 12 paces of the second, it then receives the word to PASS COMPANIES BY FILES; each leader orders to the *left turn*, and proceeds as before directed; the column when halted and fronted, having its right in front.

Circumstances may require, that the companies should PASS from their proper left instead of the right, in which case the leaders will shift and conduct such left, until the line is formed, when they will again resume their proper places.

5. *If a battalion in second line passes by files to the front, through a first line.*—It will advance within 12 paces of the first one.—On the command to PASS to the front by files; each company leader will gives his word *right turn*, and move on at the head of his file in ordinary time, through the first line, which makes openings for it.—When the rear of the files has passed; the battalion will be ordered HALT FRONT in column the left in front—WHEEL into line—and may then advance.

There may be occasions where, instead of halting in column, and wheeling into line.--- The battalion may be ordered to form by the rear files moving up to their front leaders; but the line thereby obtained will generally be a very inaccurate one, and not fit to advance without a halt and a previous dressing.

6. *If a battalion in second line advances and passes in front, through a first line which it is to relieve.*—The first line will, at the necessary instant, wheel back by companies into open column, the advancing battalion will pass through it, such files as are interrupted following to the right, moving up as soon as they can, and the battalion thus reformed moving on to its object,——or,—If a battalion advancing in front, meets with a line retiring, this last will throw itself into open column, and halt, till the advancing battalion has passed,—or,---if a line is retiring in files, it will in same manner halt square when it meets the advancing line, allow it to pass, and then proceed.

S. 176. *When the Battalion retires by alternate Companies in Two Lines.*

RIGHT COMPANIES HALT, FRONT.
LEFT COMPANIES HALT, FRONT.

The right companies stand fast, or, halt front if the battalion is already in motion.--The left retire in line a given number of paces and halt, front: on which the right companies retire in the same manner beyond the left, and halt, front.---In this way they proceed, till the battalion is ordered to form.——One colour remains

RIGHT COMPANIES. { ABOUT FACE. MARCH. HALT, FRONT. LEFT COMPANIES. { ABOUT FACE. MARCH. HALT, FRONT.	on the flank of its proper company in each line and directs its movement, for which purpose a serjeant will advance 6 paces before it, during the march. Distances are preserved from that colour.—The eyes of each line remain turned to their colour, and officers are on the inward flanks of their companies.—Each line has a command.—The light infantry may be divided in the intervals of the first line, retire with it, and change to the other line, whenever it becomes the advanced one: in this situation they cover the retreat, and may occasionally fire.

S. 177. *When the Battalion advances or retires by half Battalions, and fires.*

LEFT WING. { HALT. MARCH. RIGHT WING. { HALT. READY. PRESENT. FIRE. MARCH. LEFT WING—HALT. READY. &c.	1. If the battalion is in march and advancing.—The left wing HALTS when ordered, and the right one continues to move on 15 paces, at which instant the word MARCH being given to the left wing, the right at the same time is ordered to HALT, to fire and load, and the left marches past them, till the right wing, being loaded and shouldered, receives the word MARCH, the other wing HALTS, fires, &c. and thus they alternately proceed.
RIGHT WING, HALT, FRONT. LEFT WING, HALT, FRONT. RIGHT WING. { READY. PRESENT. FIRE. ABOUT FACE. MARCH. LEFT WING, HALT FRONT. LEFT WING, { READY. PRESENT. FIRE. &c.	2. If the battalion is in march, and retiring.—The right wing is ordered to HALT, FRONT, and when the left one has gained 15 paces, and receives the word HALT, FRONT, the right wing is instantly ordered to FIRE, to load, to FACE about, and MARCH 15 paces beyond the left, where it receives the word HALT, FRONT, on which the left wing gets that of FIRE, and in the same manner alternately proceeds, every due dispatch being made in reloading.

There must be a commander for each half battalion.

One colour remains on the inward flank of each half battalion, to which the men continue to look, by which they move, and before which a directing serjeant advances 6 paces.

The make ready, present, fire, of the advanced wing, is instantly to succeed the march of the other advancing wing, or, the halt front, of the retiring wing.

In the half battalion firing, advancing, and retreating...If formed two deep, both ranks will fire standing.—If formed three deep, the front and center rank fire standing, and the rear rank remains shouldered in reserve.

S. 178.

S. 173. *When the Battalion forms a Square, or Oblong.*

CAUTION.
FORM SQUARE.
COMPANIES INWARDS FACE.
Q. MARCH.
Halt, Front,
Fig. 92.

1. The 4th, 5th, 6th battalion companies stand fast (in consequence of the explanatory caution that is given preparatory to forming the square), the rest of the battalion faces inwards, and disengages the heads of companies to the rear; the colours and their coverers fall back, the 4th company closing to the left to fill up their place. They march quick.---The 7th, 8th, and light companies place themselves in open column behind the 6th; the 3d, 2d, and 1st place themselves in open column behind the 4th; the grenadiers place themselves between the light company and the 1st.---When these three last companies close up to the 8th and 2d, and face about (having each first countermarched, if it is thought necessary to have the front rank outermost) at the same time that the 7th, 8th, and the 3d, 2d, wheel outwards, the oblong stands complete, or, the square may be a perfect one, if it is composed of the eight battalion companies only; the grenadier and light company being in reserve in the rear, ready to be applied according to circumstances.

CAUTION.
FORM SQUARE.
COMPANIES BACKWARD WHEEL.
Q. MARCH.
Halt, Dress.
RIGHT ABOUT FACE.
MARCH.
Halt, Front.
Dress.
Fig 90.

2. *The square or oblong may be formed by the 4th, 5th, 6th companies standing fast.*---The rest of the battalion wheels backward, each company the 8th of the circle, on its inward flank.---They face about. They march to complete the square as above; each wheeling when it comes to its ground, and then fronting; and in this manner will the proper front rank of the rear face be outward.---The commanding Officer, colours, and their coverers, drums, &c. &c. are within the square, as also the battalion guns, which are shifted to wherever they are most necessary.---The square is composed of the front, the right, the left, the rear faces: the front face is that on which the square originally forms.

THE SQUARE WILL MARCH TO FRONT, REAR, RIGHT, OR LEFT.
MARCH.
Fig. 93. A.
HALT.
FRONT, SQUARE,

3. *When the square or oblong is to march by any one face.*—The side which is to lead is announced; the colours move up behind its center; the opposite side faces about; and the two flank sides wheel up by sub-divisions, so as to stand each in open column.—The square marches, two sides in line, and by their center; and two sides in open column, which cover, and dress to their inward flanks on which they wheeled up, carefully preserving their distances.—The square halts, and when ordered to front square, the sub-divisions in column immediately wheel back, and form their sides, and the side which faced about again faces outwards.

THE SQUARE WILL MARCH BY THE RIGHT FRONT ANGLE.
Fig. 93. B.
MARCH.
HALT.
FRONT, SQUARE,

4. *When the perfect square is to march by one of its angles in the direction of its diagonal.*—A CAUTION is given by which angle, and the two side that form it stand fast, while the other two sides face about.—The whole then by sub-divisions wheel up one eighth of the circle, 2 sides to the right, and 2 sides to the left, and are thus parallel to each other, and perpendicular to the direction in which they are to move, the pivot flanks being in this manner placed on the sides of the square.—Each side being thus in Echellon, and the colours behind the leading angle, the whole are put in march, carefully preserving the distances they wheeled at, and from the flanks to which they wheeled.—After the HALT, and at the word FRONT, SQUARE, the whole wheel back into square, and the two sides that require it face about outward.—When the oblong marches by one of its angles, its sub-divisions perform the same operation of wheeling up, each the eighth of the circle; but its direction of march will not be in the diagonal of the oblong, but in that of a square, viz. of the line which equally bisects the right angle.

Fig. 93. C.

The angular march of the square or oblong—may be made in any other direction to the right or left of the above one; but in such case the sub-divisions at two opposite sides will have to wheel up more than the eighth of the circle, and those of the other two sides proportionally less, in order to stand as before, perpendicular to the new direction, the sum of these two wheels will always amount to that of a quarter circle, and their difference will vary as the new line departs more or less from the equal bisecting line; this will be known by

by first wheeling up the two angular divisions, till they stand perpendicular with the new direction, and then ordering all the others to conform accordingly.---This movement is very difficult in the execution, and cannot be made with any degree of accuracy unless the perpendicular situation of the divisions is correctly attained, and carefully preserved.

5. *The square halted changes direction on any one of its files*—by that file wheeling up on one of its flank divisions, which is previously placed; its two flank sides at the same time make a similar gradual change to comply with the alteration; and the rear side marches in file to complete the square.

6. *When the square in march halts and fronts, to repulse an expected attack of cavalry*—The front rank kneels, and present their bayonets sloped; the two rear ranks fire standing; either companies by ranks successively, or companies (independant of each other) by sub-divisions, one firing when the other has loaded; or companies by files has ordered; the front rank remaining as a reserve.---Should the battalion be formed only two deep, the front rank will remain kneeled, and the rear rank will fire by files.

7. *The front and rear faces of the square or oblong in march are increased*,—by repeatedly adding their flanks 4 divisions from the column sides which are thereby shortened, and oblique outwards to cover; they are decreased by the 4 outward divisions of the front and rear repeatedly becoming part of the flank sides, which are thereby lengthened, and oblique inwards to cover.---Thus, either advancing or retiring, the whole may diminish to two sub-divisions in front, or, if necessary, to a double file marched off from the center of the leading face.

Fig. 94. 8. *When the square or oblong forms in line on one of its sides*— or on any named company which is placed in a given direction.—Each other company will be WHEELED up more or less, till it stands with its inward flank perpendicular to its point in the new line, to which the whole will MARCH and enter successively, the outward companies taking care not to impede the inner ones, which must form before them. According to the part of the battalion formed on, will this operation be more or less complex.—Or, this may be done by the facing and filing of each division from its inward flank, to its point in the new line where it will form up.

9. *If, from open column of march, it is necessary to make front in oblong 3 deep to both flanks*—The leading division *Halts*, the other divisions of the column will take half distance and *Halt*: the half divisions will WHEEL outwards, *Halt*, and form an oblong, closed in the rear by the last division. When column of march is to be resumed, the half divisions will WHEEL backwards into column, and the Battalion will proceed.---If there are several battalions in the column, each will form as above, closed by its own front and rear divisions; and the distances betwixt battalions will also be closed.

Fig. 95. 10. *If a battalion is marching in open ground, where it is necessary to be prepared against the attack of cavalry*.---It may move in column of companies at quarter distance, one named company in the center being ordered to keep an additional distance of 2 files; in this shape the battalion is easily managed, or directed upon any point.---When the column HALTS, and is ordered to FORM THE SQUARE, the first company falls back to the second, the last company closes up to the one before it: The whole companies make an interval of 2 paces in their center, by their sub-divisions taking each one pace to the flanks; 2 officers with their serjeants place themselves in each of the front and rear intervals; 2 officers with their serjeants also take post in rear of each flank of the company from which the additional interval has been kept; and a serjeant takes the place of each flank front rank man of the first division, and of each flank rear rank man of the last division; all other officers, serjeants, the 4 displaced men, &c. &c. assemble in the center of the companies which are to form the flank faces. Those last named companies having been told off each in 4 sections, WHEEL up by sections, 2 to the right, and 2 to the left; (the 2 rear companies at the same time closing up, and facing outwards) the inner sections then CLOSE forward to their front ones, which dress up with the extremities of the front and rear companies, and 4 files on each flank of the second companies, from the front and from the rear, FACE outwards.

Fig. 95. ---The whole thus stand faced outwards and formed 6 deep, with

2 officers

2 officers and their ſerjeants in the middle of each face to command it; all the other officers as well as ſerjeants, &c. are in the void ſpace in the center, and the files of the officers in the faces may be completed from ſerjeants, &c. in the interior, in ſuch manner as the commandant may direct.---The mounted field officers muſt paſs into the center of the column, by the rear face, if neceſſary, opening from its center 2 paces, and again cloſing in.

When ordered, the 2 firſt ranks all round the column will kneel and ſlope their bayonets, the 2 next ranks will fire ſtanding, and all the others will remain in reſerve; the file coverers behind each officer of the ſides will give back, and enable him to ſtand in the 3d rank.---*When the march is to be reſumed,* the ſections that cloſed up fall back to their diſtance; the ſections then WHEEL back into column; the officers, ſerjeants, &c. take their places on the flanks; and when the column is again put in motion, the companies that cloſed ſucceſſively take their proper diſtance.

Unleſs the companies are above 16 file they cannot be divided in 4 ſections; if thereforethey are under 16 file, and told off in 3 ſecti-ons, the column will march at the diſtance of a ſection; and in forming the ſquare, the 2 outward ſections will wheel up, but the 3d one will ſtand faſt, and afterwards, by dividing itſelf to right and left, will form a 4th rank to the others; in reſuming column the outward ſections wheel back, and the rear of the center ſections eaſily recover their places: as to all other circumſtances they remain the ſame.

BY the foregoing REGULATIONS, and the RULES they lay down, is every battalion to direct its practice; to regulate the parades, guards, and field exerciſe; to diſuſe whatever is contrary and repugnant to them; and in no inſtance to deviate from the principles they contain, for, to their ſtrict obſervance is every one enjoined.—Among many other eſſential circumſtances they pointedly require hurry and diſunion to be avoided; order and mutual effort to be held ſacred; ranks and files cloſed; muſic to be diſuſed in inſtruction, march, or manœuvre; uniformity of poſition; equality of ſtep in length and cadence; accuracy of diſtances; preciſion of file marching; movements and formations made on determined points and lines, and mounted officers ready and accuſtomed to give ſuch points and lines; alertneſs and intelligence in officers; energy and deciſion in their commands; modes of execution fully determined, and never varying.—Thus, previous explanation being no longer neceſſary, prompt performance in all ſituations may immediately follow the ordered meaſures of the commander.

D. D.

End of the PART THIRD.

INSPECTION OR REVIEW OF A BATTALION OF INFANTRY.

THE battalion marches to its ground in open column of companies or half companies :—marches into the alignement by companies ; forms in cloſe order ;—takes open order as directed in the formation of the battalion.

In this diſpoſition and the whole dreſſed to the right, the general is awaited.—He is to be received with the compliments due to his rank, as ſet forth in the regulation of military honours.—The colonel and lieutenant-colonel on this occaſion are on foot at the head of the colours ; at all other times they are to remain on horſeback.

A camp colour is to be originally placed 80 or 100 paces in front of the center of the battalion, where the general is ſuppoſed to take his ſtation ; but although he may chuſe to quit that poſition, ſtill the colour is to be conſidered as the point to work upon, and to which all movements and formations are relative.

Receiving the General.

PRESENT ARMS. — When the reviewing general preſents himſelf before the center, and is 50 or 60 paces diſtant, he will be received with a general ſalute.—The men preſent arms, and the Officers ſalute, ſo as to drop their ſwords with the laſt motion of preſented arms ; the muſic will play, and all the drums will beat—The colours only ſalute ſuch perſons as from their rank, and by regulation, are entitled to that honour.

SHOULDER ARMS. — The men ſhoulder, and the officers recover their ſwords with the laſt motion.

The general then goes towards the right, the whole remaining perfectly ſteady without paying any farther compliment while he paſſes along the front of the battalion, and without facing when he goes along the flank and rear.—While the general is going round the battalion, the muſic will play, and the drums beat ; they will ceaſe as ſoon as the general has returned to the right flank of the battalion.

REAR RANKS TAKE CLOSE ORDER. MARCH. — While the general is prooceeding to place himſelf in the front, this command will be given, and the colonel and lieutenat-colonel will then mount on horſe-back, in the rear of the center.

Marching paſt in Ordinary Time.

COMPANIES ON YOUR LEFT, BACKWARD, WHEEL. MARCH. *Halt, Dreſs.* MARCH. — The battalion will break into column of companies the right in front.—The column is put in motion, pioneers and muſic having been previouſly ordered to the head of it.—Points will be aſcertained by the adjutant for the exact and ſeveral wheelings of the diviſions, ſo that their right flanks in marching paſt ſhall be only 4 paces diſtant from the camp colour, where it is ſuppoſed the general places himſelf to receive the ſalute.

Halt, left, wheel. Halt, Dreſs. March. — The ſeveral companies wheel ſucceſſively at the firſt angle of the ground.

The

Halt, Left, Wheel. *Halt, Dreſs.* *March.* *Eyes, Right.*	The companies ſucceſſively make this wheel at the ſecond angle of the ground, and which brings them on the line on which they paſs the g neral.--Each leader of a company, when it has advanced 6 paces from the wheeling poin', changes quickly by the rear to the right flank of his company, and as ſoon as he has placed himſelf on that flank, he will order eyes to be turned to the right.
Rear Ranks take Open Order.	The leading company, and each other ſucceſſively, as it arrives within 50 paces of the general, opens its ranks, at which time the officers move into the front of the company, and the leading one is replaced on the right flank by his ſerjeant.

In *marching paſt* the reviewing general, the colonel is to be at the head of the grenadier company, with the major a little behind him on his left.---The muſic are in two ranks 6 paces before the colonel :—The pioneers are in two ranks 6 paces before the muſic, having a corporal at their head to lead them :—The drummers and fifers are on the left flank of their reſpective companies.

The lieutenant-colonel is to be in the rear ; but, in the abſence of the colonel, the lieutenant-colonel will of courſe ſupply his place.---The adjutant is in the rear, behind, and on the left of the lieutenant-colonel.

The colours are 3 paces behind the 4th battalion company, covered by their ſerjeants.... Staff officers do not march paſt.

In marching paſt at open ranks, the ſerjeant who is on the right flank of the company is reſponſible for the proper wheeling diſtance being kept from the front rank of the company preceding him.---The leading officer muſt invariably preſerve his diſtance of 3 paces before the right of the company, and not derange its march, the rank of officers dreſs to him, eyes are turned a little to the right, and they divide the ground in order to cover the front of the company : If there is only one officer with the company he is towards the right of it.---Supernumerary ſerjeants are 3 paces in the rear of their ſeveral divſions.

The muſic begin to play, juſt after the leading company has made the ſecond wheel; they continue to march on, and do not draw up oppoſite the general.---They, as well as the pioneers regulate their march by the head of the column.

The officers, when they arrive at their proper diſtance from the general, muſt prepare to ſalute ſucceſſively by companies, when within 6 paces of him, and recover their ſwords when 10 paces paſt him, without in the leaſt altering the rate of march, or impeding the front rank of companies.---The commanding officer, when he has ſaluted at the head of the battalion, places himſelf near the general, and remains there till the rear has marched paſt.---The drummers give a roll each, when the officers of his own company ſalute.

Rear Ranks take Cloſe Order.	The officers commanding companies will each ſucceſſively, when he has paſſed the general by 30 paces, cloſe his rear ranks, and at this time each individual of the company reſumes the poſt which he held when the column was firſt put in motion.
Halt, Left, Wheel. *Halt, Dreſs.* *March.*	The ſeveral companies wheel ſucceſſively when oppoſite the ground where the left of the regiment ſtood, their leading officers having ſhifted to their left flank when the ranks cloſed.
HALT. SUPPORT ARMS.	When the leading company is near to where the left of the battalion ſtood, the whole halt, muſic ceaſes, arms may be ſupported, and the quick march may inſtantly commence.

Marching paſt in Quick Time.

QUICK MARCH.	The whole march off in quick time.—No muſic.
Halt, Left, Wheel. *Halt, Dreſs.* *Quick, March.*	The column makes three ſeveral wheels, viz. at the point where the left of the battalion firſt ſtood : at the point where the firſt wheel was made : and at the point where the ſecond w heel was made, which places it on the line of paſſing the general.

Before

CARRY ARMS.	Before the leading company has made the laſt wheel arms are carried.—When it has completed that wheel the muſic begin to play.

In *marching paſt* the general in quick time, and at cloſe order, officers do not ſalute or pay any compliment, but are attentive to preſerve the proper intervals betwixt their companies.—The leading officer of each company ſhifts to its right by its rear in the ſame manner as in the ordinary march, 6 paces after the laſt wheel, which brings him on the line with the general, and when he has paſſed the general 30 paces, he will reſume his proper pivot flank.—The ſupernumerary officers and ſerjeants march in a rank in rear of the companies, at one pace from the rear rank, and officer's ſwords are carried againſt the right ſhoulder, and ſteady.

The colonel, lieutenant colonel, major, and adjutant, are in the ſame places as in marching paſt in ordinary time; as alſo drummers, pioneers, in muſic, which laſt will commence playing, juſt after they have wheeled into the line of paſſing, and will continue to march on at the head of the column.

Eyes, left.	The ſeveral companies 30 paces after paſſing will ſucceſſively dreſs to the left the proper pivot flank, and the officers will ſhift to that flank.
Halt, Left, Wheel. *Halt, Dreſs.* *March.*	The companies ſucceſſively wheel, when oppoſite to the ground where the left of the battalion ſtood.
HALT. MARCH.	When the head of the column approaches to the left of the ground on which it originally received the general, the muſic will ceaſe, and the column will be halted in order to take up the ordinary march, for the purpoſe of moving on an alignement.
Halt, Left, Wheel. *Halt, Dreſs.* *March.*	When at the point on the left of the alignement.

Forming in Line.

HALT. LEFT, WHEEL INTO LINE. MARCH. *Halt, Dreſs.*	The column prolongs the alignement, till arrived at the point where its head or right is to be placed.—It receives the word halt; pivots are inſtantly corrected, if neceſſary; it wheels up into line, and the pioneers and muſic go to their poſts behind the center.
WITH CARTRIDGE; PRIME, AND LOAD.	The battalion being now formed at cloſe order, the commanding officer will order it to prime and load with cartridge, and will proceed with *Movements* and *Manœuvres.*

But, ſhould the performance of the Manual and Platoon Exerciſe be required.

The commanding officer, after the line has formed, gives a CAUTION that the manual and platoon exerciſe will be performed, and goes to the rear of the battalion.—The major advances to the front of the battalion, OPENS RANKS; UNFIXES BAYONETS; SHOULDERS ARMS; makes the officer and colours TAKE THEIR POST OF EXERCISE in the rear, by facing to the right; MARCHING through the ſeveral intervals occupied by the ſerjeants; and when 3 paces beyond the rear rank, they halt, and then receive the word FRONT: The commanding officer, lieutenant-colonel, adjutant, pioneers, muſic, ſupernumerary ſerjeants, drummers, fifers, are at their poſts in the rear, as when the battalion is formed cloſe order.

Manual

Manual Exerciſe.

The major proceeds with the manual as directed by regulation, obſerving that the front rank only comes down to the laſt poſition of the charge bayonets, the others remain ported. —The ſerjeants who preſerve in the front rank the places of the platoon officers, remain there ſteady during the whole of the manual, except that they charge their pikes at the ſame time as the bayonets.

Platoon Exerciſe.

The major cloſes rear rank for the platoon exerciſe, and platoon officers, and ſerjeants, and colours, and every other individual, take their places, as when the battalion is at cloſe order.

The major proceeds with the platoon exerciſe, and the ſeveral ranks make ready each according to its ſituatian of front, center, and rear; after firing they load and ſhoulder agreeable to the regulation.

The mannal and platoon exerciſe being finiſhed, the major goes to his poſt, and the commanding officer of the battalion proceeds to PRIME AND LOAD with cartridge, and then to commence the ordered movements.

Movements.

Plate 16.

			Sect.	
On a rear diviſion.	1.	*Form cloſe column of companies behind grenadiers - - - -*	137	The column marches quick 20 or 30 paces to the right, and without halting begins to deploy into line on the rear diviſion.--The commanding officer of the battalion gives the word for each diviſion to halt, front.
		Form cloſe column of two companies.	147	
		Face and march to the right. - -	150	
		Deploy on the rear diviſion. - -	149	
On a front diviſion.	2.	*Form cloſe column of companies, in front of the left - - - -*	137	The column marches quick 30 or 40 paces to the left, and without halting begins to deploy on the front diviſion.—The commanding officer of the battalion gives the word for each diviſion to halt, front.
		Form cloſe column of two companies.	147	
		Face and march to the left. - -	150	
		Deploy on the front diviſion. - -	148	
On a central diviſion.	3.	*Form cloſe column of companies, on a central company, either flank front, and facing to the rear*	138	The cloſe column is formed facing to the rear.—It then countermarches each diviſion ſo as to return to the proper front.—In the central deployment by companies, the company officers give the words to halt, front.
		Countermarch of each diviſion in cloſe column - - - -	143	
		Deploy on any central named company - - - - - - -	146	
Change of poſition in open column.	4.	*Wheel back into open column of companies, the right in front -*	108	The Battalion thus, at an intermediate point, enters an alignement on which it is to form.
		March forward 30 or 40 paces. -	101	
		Enter an oblique line (the 3 or 4 leading companies) by wheeling ſucceſſively to the left, a half wheel Halt - - - -	126	
		The rear companies file into column.	126	
		Wheel up into line. - - -	118	

Th

	No.		Sect.	
Wing thrown back.	5.	*The left company is wheeled back, till parallel to the original position.-- The rest of the companies wheel into echellon.--March to the rear --Form on the left company.*	160	The whole companies wheel back at the same time; the left company twice the number of paces that the others do. Should it be necessary for the subsequent movements, the line may retire 50 or 60 paces, and then front.
Countermarch and Change of position.	6.	*Wheel back into open column, the right in front*	108	After the countermarch by files, the column stands with its left in front.---The column closes in quick time.---The square is formed, and close column reformed as in part 4th, S. 189. --The column opens out in quick time from its rear division, and halts.---The countermarch by companies from the rear to the front is in ordinary time. When the line is formed, it is then considerably to the general's right, and with its rear to him.
		Countermarch companies by files	100	
		March in column 30 or 40 paces.--- Head division halts close to the head of column	138	
		Form square, and prepare for firing Re-form in close column	189	
		Open out to open column from the rear, and halt.	153	
		Change head of column, by the countermarch of companies, from the rear to the front.	101	
		Column moves on and halts		
		Wheel up into line		
	7.	*Countermarch by files on the center of the battalion.*	98	This brings back the battalion to its original front.
March in open column.	8	*Form open column, behind the left company, which is put in march when the 3d company has taken its place in column*	121	The companies that are filing incline towards the head of the column: successively front at their wheeling distances, ascertained as usual by their serjeants: take up the ordinary step, and follow in open column. When the column is marching steadily, the whole sub-divisions double at once by one command, and again move up at another.
		The right subdivisions double	87	
		The right subdivisions move up	88	
		The column halts, and pivots are corrected		
		Wheel up into line		
Echellon change of position.	9.	*Wheel back into open column, the left in front.*	109	The line is thus formed oblique from open column, on a central company, by the echellon march.
		The third company is wheeled back the 8th of the circle, and each of the others 3-16 of the circle	158	
		Form line on the third company, by the echellon march	159	
Change of position.	10	*The left company is wheeled up the 8th of the circle, and each of the others 12 16th-Form line by the echellon march.*	159	The line thus changes position to the front, on the left company, by the echellon march.
Change of position.	11	*The battalion faces to the right.— Marches in file (50 or 60 paces)*	94	The column of companies is formed by the rear men of each moving up quick to the left of their leaders, and of each other; the officers move to pivot flanks, and pivots are instantly corrected.—The column halts when the colours are opposite to the general.
		Forms column of companies, on the march.	95	
		Halts. - Wheels up into line, except the light company, which files quickly to the right, and forms behind the colours.		
Retreat in line.	12	*The battalion retires (50 paces)— Halts, fronts—Fires twice by companies from center to flanks.*	168	The light company, being previously subdivided and prepared, acts in the retreat by alternate companies as directed in S. 176, and when the line halts and fronts, it resumes its place on the left.
		Retire by alternate companies in two lines, (25 paces) each retreat about 50 paces	176	
		Form line.		
		Retire in line (50 paces) Halt, front.		

Companies

			Sect.	
13	*March to a flank in echellon.*	*Companies make a half wheel to the right*	154	At the word wheel back into line, the pivot flanks mark time, and the divisions wheel back in ordinary time.—At the proper instant when the battalion is formed, the commander gives his word forward, for the whole to advance by the colours, and to correct any irregularity that there may be in the battalion.
		March in echellon (250 paces)	155	
		Wheel back on the march into parallel line.	156	
		Forward (100 paces).—Halt.		
		Fire thrice by companies, from flanks to center.		

If the battalion has hitherto been formed two deep, it will now form three deep, if its companies are of ten files each.

14	*Movements in the square.*	*Form square.* *March the square by the left angle of the front face (50 paces)—Halt—Form square.* *March square by the left face—Halt---Form square.* *March square by the rear face (60 paces)---Halt---Form square.* *Fire in square by companies.* *Form the line.*	178	The square is formed by the echellon march of companies. After the march by the left face, the square is formed when it is opposite to the general. The firings in square are as expressed in S. 178. The line is formed by the echellon wheel up, and march of companies. When the order is given to form line, the light company marches quickly, and places itself two deep and in two divisions, 10, or 12 paces behind the two center companies.
15	*Retiring, and filing to the rear.*	*Retire in line (100 paces)*	168	When the line has passed the light company 20 paces, that company extends to cover the center of the battalion, and follows at 50 or 60 paces distance; and when the column halts to form, the light company passes quickly through and beyond it. The companies file quick to the rear. The battalions form line at the extremity of its ground; the light company 30 paces in its rear.
		File by companies from the proper right—Halt in open column, the right in front.	175	
		Wheel up into line.		
16	*Filing—Advancing—and changing to the front.*	*Advance in line 50 paces.*	166	Before the line advances, the light company quickly forms extended 30 paces before the center, and preserves that distance in advancing. When the column halts to form, the light company passes quick to the rear, and assembles half of it behind each flank, and moves relatively with the flank companies till after the charge of bayonets. The alternate half battalions fire the 2 first ranks standing. After the volley, bayonets are ported, the battalion advances firm by the center at the quick step, and at the word Halt, the front rank comes down to the charging position—The word Prime and Load is then given, and the light company issuing from behind the flanks, pursue, return, and assemble and join on the left of the battalion.
		File from the right of companies to the front (50 paces)—Halt in open column the left in front—Wheel up into line.	178	
		Advance in line (50 paces.) *Advance by alternate half battalions, and fire four times.* *Form line —— Advance (50 paces) —Fire volley.* *Advance (20 paces)—Fire volley ——Charge bayonets (50 paces) —Halt—Load.*		
17	*Retiring in line.*	*Retire in line (100 paces)* *Retire by alternate half battalions —Fire four times*	177	The whole battalion being assembled. The alternate half battalions fire, the two front ranks standing.
		Retire in line, 100 paces or more—Halt, front.		

Advance

		Sect.	
18 *Advancing in line.*	*Advance in line (100 paces) Halt — Fire twice, oblique to right and left*	166	In the obliquing, and in the volleys the front rank kneels.
	Advance in line (100 paces) — Halt — Fire two volleys —— Port arms at the last one, and half cock Open ranks — Advance within 50 paces — Halt — General salute.		The music may occasionally play, and drums roll, while the line advances. The music will play, when advancing at open ranks.

Such other *Manœuvres*, as may at the time be required.

The number of paces mentioned in the several movements are not positively prescribed, but are supposed to be nearly such as will give the interded relative situations. — If the ground allows the marches to the rear and front to be longer, it will be so much the better.

No improper pauses should be made betwixt the connected parts of the same movement. — The detached points necessary in formation should be timeously prepared and given.

The advance of the battalion should instantly succeed the forming of the line; and when it arrives and halts at the point where it is to fire, the firing ought instantly to commence at the word Halt; for, the battalion having been apprized during the march, of the nature of the required firing, no improper delay need therefore be made.

The greatest care is to be taken by the officers and under officers in the rear (whose principal attention this is), that the rear ranks are well locked up in the firings, and that in loading they do not fall back.

The line, if retiring, halts fronts, at one command; and instantly begins firing, having been apprized during its movement of the nature of the firing.

The pause betwixt each of the firing words — *Make ready*, *Present*, *Fire*, is the same as the ordinary time, viz. the 75th part of a minute, and no other pause is to be made betwixt the words.

In firing by *Companies by wings*.---Each wing carries on its fire independent, without regard to the other wing, whether it fires from the center to the flanks, or from the flanks to the center. — If there are five companies in the wing, two pauses will be made betwixt the *fire* of each, and the *make ready* of the succeeding one. If there are four companies in the wing, three pauses will be made betwixt the *fire* of each, and the *make ready* of the succeeding one.---This will allow sufficient time for the first company to have again loaded, and shouldered at the time the last company fires, and will establish proper intervals between each.

In firing by *Grand Divisions*, three pauses will be made betwixt the *fire* of each division, and the *make ready* of the succeeding one.

In firing by *Wings*, one wing will make ready the instant the other is shouldering. The commanding officer of the battalion fires the wings.

In firing companies by *Files* each company fires independent.---When the right file presents, the next makes ready, and so on. — After the first fire, each man as he loads, comes to a recover, and the file again fires without waiting for any other; the rear rank-men are to have their eyes on their front rank men, and be guided by, and present with them.

In general, after the march in front, and halt of the battalion, company or platoon firing should begin from the center, and not from the flanks.--In other cases, and in successive formations it may begin from whatever division first arrives, and halts on its ground.

The intention of fixing upon some of the most essential infantry movements, and thus ordering them to be executed by each battalion when seen separately is, that thereby the *Inspecting General* may be enabled to report the more minutely and comparatively, on the performance by each battalion, of the great leading points of movement.

He will therefore, among other circumstances, particularly observe and specify---*Whether or not*

The original formation of the battalion is according to order.

The marches are made with accuracy, at the required times and length of step, and on such objects as are given.

The

The proper distances in column and echellon, are at all times preserved.

The wheelings are made just, and in the manner prescribed.

The formations into line are made true, without false openings, or necessity of correction.

The officers are alert in their changes of situation, exact in their own personal movements, and loud, decided, and pointed, in their words of command.

The march in line is uniformly steady, without floating, opening, or closing.

The march in file, close, firm, and without lengthening out.

The officers and under officers give the aids required of them, with due quickness, and precision.

Hurry and unnecessary delay in the movements are equally avoided.

In the firings, the loading is quick, the levelling just, the officers animated and exact in their commands.

When two or more battalions are inspected, or exercised together, they will be formed in one line with the ordered interval.—They will receive the *General*, march past, and may perform the same identical movements as are before prescribed for the single battalion, observing the additional directions that are given for those of the line.

When the line of two or more battalions is *Marching* past in column of companies, it must occupy no greater extent of ground than when it originally wheeled into column.—The order is never to be broken, or lengthened out.—No particular battalion, or the artillery, are allowed to increase distances for their own partial appearance.—The battalion guns will march two a-breast.—Ranks are one pace asunder, or if ordered to be open, the distances between companies and battalions will not be increased.—The music of each battalion in passing may play, but will continue to march on.—The ordinary march is preserved.—Officers do not salute marching, but when particularly ordered.

When a considerable body of infantry, or when infantry and cavalry are united, and to act in *corps*, their combined operations, such as movements in columns, echellons, or lines, their formations, the conduct of attacks, and retreats, &c. depending on numbers, and circumstances of ground, or situation, can only be determined and applied according to the views of the commander; but the great principles of movement laid down for the line will still direct, and the detail of execution will remain invariable, being compounded of those prescribed for the *Company*, *Battalion*, and the *Line*.

LIGHT INFANTRY.

GENERAL ATTENTIONS.

WHEN the LIGHT INFANTRY companies are in line with their battalions they are to form and act in every respect as a company of the battalion, but when not in line they may loosen their files to six inches. Distances of files.

Open order is to be two feet between each file.---The necessity of increasing this distance must depend on circumstances, and be regulated at the moment by the commanding officer. Open order.

The files may be extended from right, left, or center, according to circumstances; in executing it, each front rank man must carefully take his distance from the man next to him, on that side from which the extension is made; the rear rank men conform to the movement of their file leaders. Manner of extending.

When the company is not in extended order, all firing is to be by single men, each firing as quick as he can, consistent with loading properly: the firing to begin from the flank, or from the point first formed.

In firing in extended order, it is to be a standing rule, that the two men of the same file are never unloaded together, for which purpose, as soon as the front rank man has fired, he is to slip round the left of the rear rank man, who will make a short pace forward, and put himself in the other's place, whom he is to protect while loading.—When the first man returns his ramrod he will give his comrade the word *ready*, after which, and not before, he may fire and immediately change places as before. Firing.

The same method of firing to be observed when advancing or retreating, which must always be in *ordinary time* (especially if cannon are ordered to the front with the light companies, which may often be the case).---Particular attention must be paid to cease firing on the first word, or signal for that purpose. Advancing and retreating. To cease firing.

All movements of the light companies, except when firing, advancing, or retreating, are to be in *quick time*. Movements in quick time.

The light companies are never to run unless particularly directed, and in that case they are only to run at that pace in which they can preserve their order; and it is to be a rule that the two men of the same file never separate on any account whatever. Never to run unless ordered.

The utmost care to be taken to avoid confusion, which too much hurry, even in the smallest bodies, will certainly occasion.—The intermixture of files can never be allowed of. Avoid confusion.

Though all movements should be made in *front* as much as possible, yet, from the nature of those of light Infantry, and the ground they are more particularly liable to traverse, file movements may frequently be necessary.---All such to be made from one of the flanks, previously facing to it, and the files to loosen, so as to march perfectly at ease, but not more. File movements.

In forming, the inversion of files or of ranks is not to be attended to, if time is thereby gained.---*Forming to the front* to be done by the file moving briskly up to the right or left of the leading file as ordered. Forming to the front

Forming to right or *left*.---The leading file will halt and face as directed, as will the succeeding ones as they come up to their proper distances. Right or left.

Forming

Forward to right or left.

Forming forward to right or *left*.---The leading file halts and faces as directed; the succeeding files lead round the rear, and form to the same front as the leading file has done, and at their proper distances.

Marching to rear and forming.

When marching to the rear by files, and to *form to the front*.---The leading file will halt and front, the succeeding files will go round the rear of the leading file, and form on the right or left of it as directed.--*Forming to right* or *left*, or *forward to right* or *left* is done in the same manner as when marching to the front.

Signals, &c. for officers commanding.

All *signals*, *words of command*, and *directions*, are for the Officer commanding the company or division, who gives the necessary orders in consequence.

Signals.

The *necessary signals* will be previously settled, and as they will be very few and simple, the officers and non-commissioned officers are expected to be masters of them.

Post of Officers.

The Officer commanding the company will be on the right, covered by a serjeant.—The next on the left also covered by a serjeant.—The youngest officer in the rear.—In extended order the post of the officers and serjeants is always in the rear equally divided, where they must pay particular attention that the men preserve their order, and that they level, fire, and load coolly and properly; they must likewise be attentive to direct them to the supposed object of attack.

In marching by files the officer commanding leads; by divisions each officer leads one.... The supernumerary officer, if there be one, is in both cases, with the officer commanding, ready to obey any directions he may receive from him.

Taking post.

When a light company or detachment is ordered to take post on any particular spot, it is to be the business of the officer commanding it to take the best advantage of the ground, observing that he must never disperse his company; but if it should be necessary to make small detachments from it, he must still preserve a part of his company or detachment as a reserve on which those detachments may fall back; and this is to be a general rule in all cases where the strength of the party is sufficient to allow of making detachments from it.

To cover in situations of defence.

The officers must also see that in situations of defence the men cover themselves with trees, walls, large stones, or whatever may present itself.—in firing from behind trees, large stones, &c. they are to present to the right of the object which covers them; and in changing places with the other man of the file, after firing, they will step back, and to the left, so that the rear rank man may step forward without being exposed.

Arms how carried.

The arms of light infantry in general will be carried sloped, and with the bayonets fixed.—Flanking and advancing parties however, or parties in particular situations, may carry them trailed, and without bayonets, for the purpose of taking cooler and more deliberate aim.

Light Infantry attached to respective Regiments when in Line.

Divisions cover 2d and 7th companies.

Post of commanding officer.

The light company will be posted in the rear of its respective regiment, divided in two divisions; that on the right will be in the rear of the second company, that on the left in the rear of the seventh company, and they will at all times observe the distance of thirty paces.---The captain, or officer commanding, will be with the right division.

Line breaks into column.

When the line breaks into column, if the light companies receive no particular directions for covering either the front or flanks of the column, they will wheel as the companies of the battalion do, and conform themselves exactly to the movements of the second and seventh companies, so as at all times to be in their proper places.

Line forms close column.

If the line forms a close column, and the light companies receive no particular directions, they are to form by companies, and close up in the rear of the column, in the same manner as their respective battalions.

Line deploys.

When the column deploys into line, the light companies will face each, as its battalion does, file with it in the rear; and when the battalion forms in the line, will take its proper post in divisions behind the second and seventh companies.

If

If the light companies are ordered to cover the line to the front, either by word or fignal, the divifions will move to the front, from their inner flanks, round the flanks of the battalions; and when at the diftance of fifty paces, the leading flanks will wheel towards each other, fo as to meet oppofite the center of the battalion, opening their files gradually from the rear, fo as to cover the whole extent of the battalion; the ferjeant-coverer of each divifion attending to the files taking their proper diftance, the files are to halt and front of themfelves.---In this pofition, and in all extended order, the poft of the officer commanding is in the rear of the center, and the movements are to be regulated by the company belonging to the battalion, which regulates thofe of the line. Cover front of Battalions. Poft of commanding officer.

When the light companies are called in, the line may either be halted or advancing. In the firft cafe they will retire towards the line, clofing to their outer flanks by degrees, fo as when they come near their battalions they may be in two divifions, ready to file round the flanks of the battalion to their places.---If the line is advancing, they will only clofe to their outer flanks, fo as to be in two divifions, by the time the line comes up to them, when they will inftantly face outward, and file to the rear. Line halted or advancing when light infantry are called in.

Light Infantry Companies formed in Battalion.

When the Light Infantry companies are affembled in battalion, their movements muft be on the fame principles as thofe of the line; the officers and non-commiffioned officers pofted in the fame manner, and, as far as poffible, the fame words of command fhould be ufed; it is in their rapidity alone that they muft be diftinguifhed, to facilitate which, the files are to be loofened to the diftance of fix inches, but great care is to be taken that rapidity does not degenerate into confufion. Movement fame as the line.

When two or more companies are together, they are to confider themfelves as a battalion, the fenior officer is to take the command, leaving the immediate command of his own company to the next officer belonging to it.---As Light Infantry feldom act in large bodies, all their movements may be in quick time; but, when in column, the fame attention muft be paid to the pivots covering, and the prefervation of diftances, as is done by the line; the doing fo will always be found the quickeft way of forming, by precluding the neceffity of much after-dreffing. Quick time. Covering pivots, &c.

In marching in line to the front, a regulating company muft be named, by which the others muft carefully drefs, and whofe movements they muft follow.---The officer leading this regulating company muft take points on which to march perpendicular to the front of the battalion, and muft lead fteadily on them, though in quick time; without thefe precautions, and great attention being paid to them, the march in front muft foon become irregular, the files will inevitably intermix, and great confufion muft be the confequence. Regulating company.

A battalion of light infantry may occafionally be ordered to run, for the purpofe of anticipating an enemy going to occupy any particular poft; but, in doing fo, the utmoft care is to be taken that confufion do not enfue; for which purpofe the velocity muft never exceed that at which the divifions can keep together and be dreffed; the diftances muft be preferved as much as poffible.—Running muft generally be in a column; but in a cafe of abfolute neceffity to make a very quick movement to the front, with a battalion of four or five companies or more, the beft and eafieft way of doing it without confufion will be in *echellon*, by companies, each retired fix paces from the preceding one. May occafionally run. But generally in column. May in Echellon.

All columns of light infantry to be formed by fub-divifions, that is, half companies.

The forming from open column to the front may frequently be done by the divifions obliquing to right or left of the leading divifion, and if neceffary firing as they come up.—Light infantry firing in divifions is to be always by fingle men, as directed in general attentions. Forming from open column. Firing in divifions.

Battalions of light infantry may frequently find it neceffary to move by file through woods, and over every rough countries: in all cafes where it is practicable, it is to be done from the right or left of companies, and diftances muft be preferved for forming in the quickeft manner poffible—Whenever one company *forms*, the reft are to do the fame, even fuppofing they do not hear the word or fignal for that purpofe. Movement by files.

If to *form to the front* the leading file of each company halts and dreffes, the reft move up to the right of them to their proper places. Forming in front.

If

Forming in right or left.

If to *form to the right* or *left*, the companies first form separately, and move up and dress with what will then be the front company, by which means the officer commanding will have it in his power to keep such companies in reserve as he thinks proper, as also in forming to throw them to the right or left of the front company, as circumstances may require; the companies which are to dress with the front company are to move up to it obliquely in line.

Advanced and flanking parties.

A battalion of light infantry marching through a wood should have parties in front and on its flanks, in proportion to the strength of the battalion.--The parties should march in front with extended file, and if attacked must take post and defend themselves till supported or called in.

To secure a wood.

When ordered to secure a word of no very great extent, the battalion should go through it, and take post on the opposite side, within its skirt, so as to have the plain before it: In this, as well as in all other cases, parties should be detached 30 or 40 yards on the flanks.

Firing in line.

When firing in line advancing, the march must be very slow, the line must be preserved, and the officers must take care to point out the supposed object of attack, and see that the men direct their fire to it;--very particular attention is to be paid that the fire is directed to the proper object, and that it ceases on the first word or signal for that purpose.

Co-operation with line.

When the light infantry in battalion is detached from the line, the officer commanding must take care to understand thoroughly the nature of the intended movement, so as to be certain of co-operating with the line with exactness and precision.

To take post.

In general, the method of taking post with a battalion of light infantry, whether large or small, must depend upon the intelligence of the officer who commands it, but he must observe the same rule as was given for a company, viz. Whatever detachments he may find necessary to make, always to keep the most considerable part together as a reserve.

Commanding officer.

The success of any engagement in a wood or strong country depends upon the coolness and presence of mind of the commanding officer, and the silence and obedience of the men, fully as much as upon their bravery.

Arms how carried.

The arms of the light infantry, when in battalion, while in movement, are generally to be sloped, but always by order, and their bayonets are to be fixed.

Light infantry in line.

If at any time a battalion of light infantry is ordered into the line, the files must be closed, and it must in every respect act as other battalions of the line.

The Signals.

The SIGNALS—To *Advance*; To *Retreat*; To *Halt*; To *cease* firing; To *assemble*, or call in all parties; are to be always considered as fixed and determined ones, and are never to be changed.—The bugle horne of each company is to make himself perfect master of them.

All signals are to be repeated.

All of those signals made from the line or column are to convey the intention of the commanding officer of the line to the officer commanding the light infantry, who will either communicate them to the several companies or detachments by word or signal.

PART IV.

OF THE LINE.

ALL great bodies of troops are formed in one or more lines.

Each line is divided into right and left wings.
Each wing is composed of one, two, or more divisions.
Each division is composed of one, or more brigades.
Each brigade is formed of two, three, or four battalions.

These bodies have their immediate commanders, subordinate to each other.

Battalions are formed in line at a distance of 12 paces from each other, and this interval is occupied by 2 cannon, which are attached to each battalion.---There is no increased distance betwixt brigades, unless particular circumstances attend it.---In exercise, should there be no cannon betwixt the battalions, the interval may be reduced to 6 paces.

MOVEMENTS OF A LINE.

1. The movements and manœuvres of a considerable line are similar to, and derived from the same general principles as those of the single battalion; they will be compounded, varied, and applied, according to circumstances, ground, and the intentions of the commanding officer; but their modes of execution remain unchangeable, and known to all.---The greater the body, the fewer and the more simple ought to be the manœuvres required of it.

2. If several regiments exercise or manœuvre together, the commanding officer of the line or column gives his short orders of caution or execution to the commander of the regulating battalion of the line, or of the head of the column, where he himself generally is; and sometimes to the commander of the battalion to which he is then nearest, and each battalion commander repeats them loud without delay.-- When any complicated or combined movement is to be made, which requires previous explanation, it must be communicated clearly to the commanders of corps by detached officers, before its execution can be ordered to commence.---The several chiefs of brigades, &c. watch over, and direct the interior movements of their respective bodies; they repeat the general orders of execution given, if they see that it is necessary, and announce such preparatory ones as are verbally sent to them. Circulation of commands.

3. When the general order is not heard or understood by part of a line, each battalion commander, (where the intention is obvious) will conform as quickly as possible to the movements which he sees executed to his right or left, according to the point from whence the movement begins: but platoon officers execute only on the orders of their battalion commander.

4. The commander in chief will always himself loudly announce his commands of execution, as MARCH, or HALT, and the commanders of battalions will, without waiting for each other, endeavour in the same moment to repeat them: If officers are quick, observing, firm, and decided in their commands, such repetition will be instantaneous. Commands of execution.

5. It is impossible to ascertain the words of command to be given in all cases.—Where such are not pointed out, they must depend on the circumstances of the situation, and be short, clear, and expressive of what is to be done.---Where they are not comprehended, they must be repeated, and no operation begun, 'till its intention is well understood; otherwise that disorder, which may be originally prevented, is not easily remedied if once it has taken place.

When

Cautionary commands.

6. When troops are halted, explanatory cautions are proper before they are put in march; but when they are in motion, and in ſituations where perfect correctneſs is expected, as in the march in line, and in the prolonging of an alignement, no caution ſhould precede the word HALT, but the whole ſhould at once firmly halt.---This is to be underſtood of a column of manœuvre, but where a column of march is unavoidably, from impediments of the route, a little opened out, and that its head ſtops in order to remedy ſuch extenſion, or to form in line, the ſeveral rear battalions will be halted ſucceſſively at their juſt diſtances.

Regulating body in movement.

7. The movements of all great bodies are made either in line or column.---In line they are in general regulated by a battalion of that flank which is neareſt to, and is to preſerve the appui, or which is to make the attack: In column they are directed by its head, and the commander of the whole is with the regulating body.—There are very few caſes in which the center ought to regulate, although the direct march of the line in front appears to be the eaſieſt conducted by a battalion of the center.--If an enemy is to be turned, or an attack made, it is by that flank that ſuch movements are led: It is the flank that muſt preſerve the line of appui in all movements in front: If the line is thrown backward or forward, it is generally on a flank point: If the line breaks into column, it is the head or leading flank of that column which conducts, and whoſe writhes and turnings are followed by every other part of the body, and ſuch head becomes a flank when formed into line: It is ſeldom that an attack is formed from the center, and a movement ſeldomer need be....The commander will therefore be on which ever flank directs the operations of the line, and by which he propoſes to make the attack, or to counteract the attempts of the enemy.

Reſerves.

8. No conſiderable body ſhould ever be aſſembled, or formed for action, without a proportion of it being placed in reſerve, or ſecond line, and more or leſs ſtrong, according to circumſtances.

Supporting lines.

9. Where ſeveral and ſupporting lines of attack are formed, the ſecond ſhould out-flank the firſt, the third the ſecond, &c. the advanced one being thereby ſtrengthened and ſupported on its outward wing.

Cannon.

10. The cannon attached to battalions, whether in line or column, will accompany in all ſituations the movements of their proper battalions.—Thoſe that are brigaded, make a ſeparate object.

Firings.

11. The general firings of the line are executed ſeparately and independently by each battalion.

Neceſſary aids.

12. The chief commander of a line muſt have ſeveral mounted officers, or other intelligent perſons, at his diſpoſal, both to circulate his orders, and to mark and determine ſuch original points as become neceſſary in movement.—The adjutants of battalions are in general wanted to aſſiſt in the ſeparate formations of their battalions.

Signals of the drum.

13. Partial ſignals of the drum for a battalion muſt not be given in line.—But from the battalion where the chief commander is, and by his particular direction, ſuch ſignal may, when proper, be made for the whole (but not repeated): If halted and ſtanding at eaſe to aſſemble: if aſſembled to be ready to march: If firing in line for a general ceſſation: and before a march to mark the proper cadence by 5 or 6 ſtrong taps.--Signals that cannot with propriety be applied in ſervice, ſhould not be uſed in exerciſe; and it is evident, that no loud ſignals, or even commands, or muſic, or drums, can be uſed in columns of route, or in movements made near to, though not in preſence of, an enemy, as it is moſt important on ſuch occaſions to conceal them, and not unneceſſarily to diſcover them to the enemy.

Inverſion of the line in formation ſometimes neceſſary.

14. Although in general the INVERSION of all bodies in line is to be avoided, yet there are ſituations where this rule muſt be diſpenſed with, and the quickeſt formation to a particular front thereby obtained.—The battalion or line may be obliged to face to the right about, the more readily to oppoſe a danger, inſtead of changing its poſition by a countermarch: it may even be under the neceſſity of forming to a flank with its rear rank in front. The column with its right in front may arrive on the left of its ground, and be obliged immediately to form up and ſupport that point, ſo that the right of the line will become the left.— Part of a ſecond line may double round on the extremity of a firſt line, thereby to out-flank an enemy.—A corps moving to a flank by lines, may be obliged in the quickeſt manner to form up to the front of its march, ſo that the new lines ſhall be compoſed each of parts of the old ones.—Many other ſituations may be imagined, where oppoſing the rear rank admits of no choice, and where an inverſion of the diviſions of the line will gain much time, and becomes abſolutely neceſſary when the formation is required from the

the point of appui, and near to an enemy. —Troops must therefore be accustomed to such operations; but the application of them requires great method and recollection, otherwise, in such critical situations, confusion is very easily produced, and will even be attended with the most fatal consequences.

OPEN COLUMN OF THE LINE.

1. The great changes of situation of the line are performed in open column of manœuvre.

2. The line breaks into open column by wheels of the quarter circle.

3. The general circumstances attending the open column have been already explained under that head, part the 3d.

4. The several general directions given for the single battalion in open column, extend to each battalion that makes part of a considerable column, and their minute observance is then most especially essential, and must be carefully recollected.

5. In open column, the leading division of each battalion, will preserve the distance of intervals betwixt battalions, in addition to that of its own front.—The column of companies or sub-divisions marching at half or quarter distance will preserve an interval between battalions equal to the front of the column. — *Intervals.*

6. Battalions are to a line, what companies are to a battalion.—Not only the whole divisions of a battalion, but the whole battalions of a line or column should MARCH off, and HALT together; and to ensure this in the exercise of considerable bodies, signals of cannon are often given for such purpose.—In most situations the quick circulation of verbal commands must be sufficient.

7. The same rules that direct the entry and march of one battalion in an alignement on which it is to form, (S. 115. 118.) apply with encreased attention to those of the most considerable column.—The point where the head of the column enters an alignement, and which is never quitted by a mounted or other officer but as he is relieved, and until the whole have entered; the point where the head of the leading battalion halts, in order to form; the several adjutants who place themselves in the true line; the prolongation of battalions which may have formed up; all these are so many marked points within the line itself, on which the dressing of pivots or battalions can be regulated, either while marching in the line, or when each halts and is to be corrected, in order to wheel up into line. — *Points of formation in open column.*

8. When the head of a battalion in a general column, or in its individual column, halts on a line on which it is to form, the commanding officer must invariably be at that head point, instantly to correct his pivots on the adjutant, who is invariably at the rear of the battalion in the true prolonged line on which it is marching, or which it is to take up.—In like manner the commanding officer is with the leading division of an Echellon coming into line, and the adjutant marks the other flank of the battalion on which the divisions are successively corrected. — *Post of commanding officer and adjutant in formations.*

9. In formations or changes of direction the commander in chief will if possible preserve and procure conspicuous distant points in their prolongation, which, when known, will assist others as well as himself, in keeping the line in the position he intends. — *Distant points are of great advantage.*

10. The movements in open column of manœuvre are particularly necessary.—When a line formed in order of battle is to extend in the same direction to either flank, in order to follow the march of an enemy, or to outflank him if he remains posted; nor is any movement more important, or can be more securely or effectually practised against an enemy inaccurate and inferior in discipline, who, in attempting the counter-movement is generally thrown into confusion.—Or, when arriving in column of march on any ground, the commander, in determining the general direction that his line is to take, shall not have been able to ascertain the points where he would fix the flanks of it; but after entering into it, is obliged, in consequence of the position or manœuvres of the enemy, either to stop his own movement sooner than he intended, or to prolong it, beyond the point he originally meant. — *Situations in which movements in open column are essential.*

GENERAL CHANGES OF POSITION OF A LINE.

CHANGES of POSITION of a LINE composed of several battalions, are according to circumstances effected by the *Echellon* march, the *filing* of divisions, or the *march*, of battalion in open column,---and points in the new line will always in due time be ascertained, at which the leading division of each battalion is to enter.

Fig. 96. E. D. — 1st---*When a considerable line is to take up a new position* PARALLEL *or nearly so to the old one, in front or rear of it, and facing either to, or from the old line.*

If in front of, and facing as the old line. — It may be done (according as the new line out-flanks the old line, connected with other circumstances,)---by the march in *line*: the march in *Echellon* divisions: the *filing* of platoons.

Or, the line will break into open column to whatever hand the new position out-flanks the old one.---The several battalions are then disengaged, and put in march in separate columns; flank points of entry for each are in the mean time preparing by the detached adjutants.---The leader of the 2d battalion from the directing flank has a point in or before the new line ascertained to him, his adjutant not being yet fixed, and marches upon it: The leader of the first battalion will preserve the parallelism, or give gradually the new inclination to the heads of the other battalions.---These during the march never having overpassed the line of their leading ones, nearly dressing up, and preserving their battalion distances, arrive at their adjutants and form in line by wheeling, filing, or Echellon marching, as may have been ordered.

If in front of, and facing to the old line. — The battalion columns will as before enter and form on the line,--Within themselves they need not be inverted, but the right of the line will now be the left, nor can it well be avoided, unless---by countermarching the line before the movement: or, by a complicated operation during the movement: or by countermarching first the battalion, and then the line, after the movement.

If in rear of, and facing as the old line. — The same identical operations, according to circumstances, are applied as when the position in front is taken, *facing as the old line*.--The line or echellons after facing about; or the heads of battalion columns after breaking; *march* to the rear, and front or form in line *facing as the old line*.

If in the rear of, and facing from the old line. — The battalion columns will lead to the rear, and enter and form on the new line, the other circumstances will take place as when the new line is in front of and *faces to the old line*.—The Echellon movements will not apply in this case without inverting the ranks.

Fig. 96. C. B. — 2d. *When a considerable line is to take up a new position which (or whose prolongation)* INTERSECTS *to the right or left of the old line, and which faces either to or from the old line.*

When the new line faces from the old line. — The line will break to which ever flank is nearest to the new position.---The heads of battalion columns will be separately conducted to their points in the new line, being regulated by the leading flank battalions; they will again enter into the general open column, and form in line by wheeling up.

Fig. 97.

Or, the line after breaking to the flank may continue its march in column, enter and prolong the new line, till its head halts at its point in that line.—The divisions of the leading battalion or of such other as then ought, will *file*; and the other rear battalions will disengage their heads, and separately march off in column to their several points of entry on the new line, which are marked by their adjutants. (Fig. 109.)

If the angle formed by the two lines is not above the half of a right one, and that the flank of the new line is not very distant, this change may be made by the Echellon march of divisions.

When the new line faces to the old line. — The line will break into open column towards the new position.—The general column will enter the new line at its nearest point, prolong it if necessary, and when the head halts, the rear battalions will disengage and march to their points of entry on the new line.

3d When

Fig. 96. F. 3d. *When a considerable line has to take up a new position, which (or the prolongation of which)* INTERSECTS *the body of the line, and which faces to, or from the old line.*

When the new line interfects the body of the old line, and faces to either flank.

The position will be changed by the Echellon march of divisions on the central point.

Or, The division which is in the point of interfection will place its pivot flank perpendicular to the new direction, and the line will break inwards and backwards facing to that division.—The divisions of the central battalion and of the one on each side of it will *file* and place themselves in column, before and behind the standing division.---The other battalions will each be conducted in a separate column to its point of entry on the new line, where it will throw itself into the general column, and wheel up into line when ordered.

When the prolongation of the New line interfects the body of the line and faces to either flank.

The line will break to the division, which stands in the point of interfection.—Every thing between that division, and the flank which is to be farthest removed from the old line, will make a change of position on the named division, and stand in open column on the new line; facing to the named division.—All the divisions that have so changed position will each countermarch by files: The line will then be prolonged, 'till the rear of the column arrives at its point.

Or, The part of the line which is first thrown into the new direction may so effect it by the Echellon march on the named fixed division.---The whole will then wheel into open column, and prolong the line 'till the rear arrives at its point.

Or, The named division being placed with its pivot perpendicular to the new direction, and fronting the way the line is to extend, the rest of the line breaks inwards and backwards towards it.---That division is then put in march, and is itself followed in column by that part of the line whose flank will naturally first come to its ground: The other part of the line moves on at the same time in a separate column abreast of it, the whole being thus in a double column of divisions as marched off from the center.---The head and the column immediately behind it, *halt* when its following flank arrives at its proper point, but the other column proceeds, and throws itself into open column in front of the named division.---The line is formed by the wheeling up of divisions. Fig. 107.

S. 179. *Taking up lines of March, and Formation.*

Lines of march and formation, best given by mounted officers.

1. The general direction of any straight alignement on which troops are to form, is always determined before they enter on it, and the point in that line at which their head is to arrive must next be ascertained. --Whenever the troops are to march on it, in column, or to form correctly, the line must be accurately traced out, and sub-divided by mounted officers; and such officers when trained to that purpose, are the most general and surest points to move upon; particularly in situations where heights, and valleys intervene, and where no remarkable objects distant or intermediate occur in the direction, which (perhaps as relative to that of the enemy) must be chosen.---Another great advantage thence arising is, that although a distant object of march may not be seen or known but by those a the head of the column; yet the detached marking officers must be known by every pivot leader to be there placed for the purpose of marching or forming upon.—Such officer, if he remains mounted, and which he always will do when he can depend on the steadiness of his horse, will face to the line and have his horse's head directly over it: If he is dismounted, he will himself stand on and faced to the line; and with the hand which is farthest from the column, he will hold his horse by the head, and rather behind himself.

Distant objects of march or formation.

2. Before a column of march or manœuvre approaches the ground, where it is to form, the commander will ascertain, as circumstances may determine him, the advanced and distant points at which the flanks of his line are to be placed, or which he intends to be in the prolongation of the line when formed.—If he enters his alignement at one of those determined points, he continues his march straight upon the posted intermediate officer and the other point.—But if he enters the alignement, somewhere between them, it then becomes necessary to ascertain the spot where the direction of his march intersects the new alignement, for at that point the head of the column arrives in it.

3. W.

Method of finding an intermediate point between two diſtant objects.

Fig. 99.

3. When the head of the advancing column approaches whatever part of the ground it ought to arrive upon.—Two officers, R, S, are ſhewn the flank diſtant points of the alignement, P, T, and are ſent forward to determine the intermediate point S, at which the head of the column ought exactly to enter into the new direction.—They ſeparate from each other 80 or 100 paces, go to the ſide to which the column is not to wheel, and R, immediately places himſelf in the line of S, P, advanced before the head of the column.—They then both move on R, always preſerving, S, in a line with P, and each deſcribing the portion of a circle upon P, as a center.—S, looks to R, and moves on, while the point T, continues to be advanced before him; but the inſtant he has brought, R, in a line with, T, they both halt, and the 4 points are then in the ſame line: R, remains fixed, till S, has ſhifted to the point S, of interſection, and to enter at which the head of the column is now approaching.—This done R, alſo moves, if neceſſary to within 50 or 60 paces of S, and S, R, thus become a general baſe, which the appointed officers and adjutants immediately prolong for the march of the column, and in which they are aſſiſted and corrected by the known diſtant points.

This method of finding an intermediate point between two given, and perhaps inacceſſible objects, muſt be thoroughly underſtood; and more than one column may in this manner aſcertain their relative points of entry in the ſame line.—Officers employed to give the direction may with moderate practice take it up at the gallop, and therefore no halt, or ſtop of the column is to be apprehended.

To determine which of two columns arrive firſt at given point.

Fig. 98.

4. When two bodies are in march to gain the ſame given point; the above method may moſt uſefully be applied to aſcertain which of them can firſt arrive at it.—The column B, and enemy D, are both in march on the point S. The leader of B. obſerves a diſtant point at C, beyond and a head of the enemy D. If he can continue to keep this object open, and in front of the enemy, it is a certain ſign that he approaches faſteſt to his wiſhed for point; but if it appears as if moving towards the rear of the enemies march, it indicates his advantage, and the attempt muſt be given up in time.

S. 180. *When a conſiderable Open Column—Enters—Marches—and Forms—on a ſtraight Alignement.*

Neceſſary points of entry and march.

Fig. 101.

1. Before the head of a conſiderable column of march enters a ſtraight line which it is to prolong and form upon, the point s. of entry muſt be marked by a fixed perſon, who is to remain there till he is relieved; alſo another point r. at leaſt 60 or 70 paces from the firſt, and in the exact direction which is to be given to the new line.—Three other perſons, m. n. o. immediately and ſucceſſively prolong themſelves on r. s. as the original baſe; and being alſo corrected from s. upon ſuch diſtant point (if any), as the commander ſhall have taken, they place themſelves at leaſt 200 paces from s, and from each other.

Prolongation of the line by adjutants.

Fig. 103.

2. The line being thus in time prepared, the head of the firſt battalion arrives and wheels into the direction at s. and the adjutant of that battalion remains at the point of entry till the laſt diviſion of his battalion has entered; he then gallops on for about 200 paces, and poſts himſelf on the line.—The adjutant of the 2d battalion, who has in his turn placed himſelf at the point of entry, as ſoon as his laſt diviſion has entered at it, gallops on and relieves the firſt adjutant, who goes on about 200 paces farther, and again poſts himſelf.—When the 3d battalion has entered, its adjutant relieves the ſecond, that ſecond relieves the firſt, and the firſt proceeds 200 paces farther, and again alignes himſelf.—In this manner, and till the laſt battalion has entered the line, do the adjutants ſucceſſively and diligently relieve each other.—If any of the adjutants overtake or interfere with the advanced perſons, who in the front are prolonging the line, ſuch adjutants may return to their battalions, as being no longer of ſervice.

Prolongers of the march.

Fig. 103.

3. As to the perſons m. n. o. who are in the front of the column, two of them at leaſt having taken their ſtation by the time that the leading battalion enters the line, as ſoon as the head of it approaches the firſt of them, he gallops on and new alignes himſelf beyond the other two; and this operation each ſucceſſively repeats till the column halts, which has always had (independent of any accidental diſtant point) two ſuch perſons to march upon.

Commanding officers of Battalions.

4. So many fixed points being thus aſcertained, all which are ſucceſſively paſſed by the pivots of the column, the accuracy of direction cannot but be preſerved; but as a farther aid, each commanding officer of a battalion is at the point of entry invariably to himſelf

himself on the flank of his leading division, and in this situation, moving on the posted adjutants, he (allowing for the breadth of his own horse) cannot fail to keep his battalion in the true line, by frequently going before his division, turning round, and correcting his flanks, if necessary, on the nearest adjutant in the rear, which the wave of a hand will suffice to do.—As each commanding officer arrives at a posted adjutant, he must go behind him, and again take up the flank of the division.

Attentions in the march.

5. Every division of the line having carefully taken its just wheeling distance before arriving, or at latest when it does arrive at the point of entry, and from thence having invariably preserved the step by a steady march; the pivots also (occasionally corrected backwards) having preserved the just line of the several adjutants, and no halt, or alteration of step, or distance, having been made by any one division or battalion from the instant that it has entered the line:—The whole HALT at the same moment, on that word being loudly and rapidly repeated by each commanding officer, who immediately examines and corrects his pivots, and the column is thus prepared for the next order of wheeling into line.

Adjutants.

6. If the column halts when the last battalion has entered, the adjutants remain fixed till the line is corrected and formed: but if the column is still carried on, then the person posted at the point of entry, when he sees the rear of the column approaching the last adjutant, quits that point, relieves that Adjutant (who proceeds, &c.), and repeats that operation till the column halts and forms in line.

Correction of pivots.

7. When the column halts in an alignement to form, the various marked points in it which then exist give the greatest facility to commanding Officers instantly to correct their pivots, if necessary, each (as has been mentioned) on the next posted adjutant in his rear; and which will also generally be on the pivot of the front division of the succeeding Battalion, in the same manner as companies dress from the pivot of one to the pivot of the next; for, such correction should be merely internal, unless some inexcusable mistake has deranged the whole, and thrown the rear of the column out of its true direction.

8. If great accuracy is required in the movements of a Single battalion, it is evident how much more essential it becomes in a considerable one, where faults would operate in the proportion of its extent, if they are not immediately prevented by the facility with which mounted officers can line and correct upon each other.

9. When a column halts to form, such persons as are then marking that line are not to quit their posts till so ordered, or till the line is put in march.

10. In marching in an alignement, if the rear or front of a battalion has evidently deviated from the true line, the head of the succeeding one is not to follow its bad example, but must preserve the general given direction into which the other is immediately to return.—And no commanding officer of a battalion, when marching in an alignement, is on any account to alter the rate of march, or partially to halt, and thereby to derange the whole column.

Aids in preserving the alignement.

11. Although the posting and successive relieving of adjutants on the line will undoubtedly preserve the direction, yet troops that are sufficiently trained ought certainly to prolong and form justly on any line, by having two given points of march always a head of the column, one point of entry marked and remaining, the commanding officers of battalions moving correctly on the flank of their leading divisions, and the adjutants, or other mounted officers only occasionally stepping in the true line till the battalion they belong to has passed....This should suffice to correct any small inaccuracy of the pivots, and keep the whole in the general direction given by the officers advanced in front of the column.

Step.

12. As the exactness of step determines the accurate movement in column, that taken by the first leader must be frequently referred to and examined by the plummet; and every battalion marching in column should, in order to regulate its march, have in its front a non-commissioned officer, trained and steadied to the equality of step.

Fig. 102.

Distant objects of march advantageous.

13. Where circumstances determine the march of the column, on a conspicuous distant object, T, it is an essential help, and must be immediately declared to the leaders of the column, and as soon as possible looked out for, and remarked by all mounted officers; and if such another object also happens to be in its prolongation to the rear, it will aid in the direction of the march, and in the formation of the line: but it will oftener happen that no such objects can be taken, and that the alignement depends on the direction (determined by relative circumstances) that the commander at first gives to two posted persons, and which is afterwards prolonged by others.

14. When

Fig. 103.

14. When part of a column is in low ground, or croffing a valley, its march can be directed and affifted by the rear points, at times when the front points of march are not to be feen.

Movement of battalion guns and juftnefs of intervals.

15. No circumftance whatever is to occafion an increafe of the proper diftance betwixt battalions in column.—The battalion guns will therefore march a-breaft, and always well clofed up to the rear divifion of the preceding battalion; or, according to circumftances, they will move on one of the flanks oppofite to their proper intervals; and if ordered on the front or pivot flank, they can occafionally fire if fo required.--Mufic, pioneers, &c. are never in the intervals betwixt battalions, in line or column of manœuvre, but are on the flanks of the column, or in the rear of the line.

Correctnefs of Movements.

16. The moft confiderable column ought to be able to MARCH in the alignement with perfect exactnefs; to HALT; to WHEEL into line; to MARCH forward; to HALT; and to FIRE; without more than a momentary paufe between each operation, and without any neceffity of dreffing, correcting diftance, or any alteration whatever, and unlefs the battalions are equal to, and can be depended on for fuch operations, no critical or advantageous meafure, when clofe to the enemy, can be attempted.

Poft of commanding officers of battalions.

17. It is only when the column of manœuvre is marching in a ftraight alignement that the commanding officer is invariably attached to the head of his battalion; for, in other fituations of march he muft by no means remain fixed at its head, but be moveable on its flank in order to watch over its general progrefs.

Prolongation of a line.

Fig. 103.

18. *When a line already formed is to wheel into open column, and prolong its direction.*—Three perfons m, n, o, take their ftations in the front as points of march, and the adjutants place themfelves each clofe to the pivot flank of his own fecond divifion.—The column is put in motion, the laft adjutant, when the rear approaches the one next to himfelf, relieves him, and he going on they fucceffively relieve each other.

Fig 102.

Change of direction.

19. *When a line, prolonging a ftraight direction, changes into another ftraight direction,* the advanced perfons m, n, o, will of courfe be firft placed in that direction, the front adjutant will be at the point of change till he is relieved, and the column will proceed as before.

General aids in marching in column.

20. *If the march of the column* (although in open ground) *is not meant to be critically ftraight,* then the placing of adjutants can be difpenfed with, and the divifions, at their true wheeling diftances, will fcrupuloufly follow the line which the head of the column traces out: but, the better to prevent any improper deviation of the rear, commanding officers or adjutants will frequently ftop at true points of the march, until the rear of their battalion has paffed, and always at points where the head of the column makes any confiderable change of direction.—If every divifion of a column does not accurately follow the path traced out by the leading one, opening or clofing of diftances muft take place, running up, or ftopping fhort, will enfue, and the column will not be in a fituation to form in line with precifion.

When the open column changes its fituation on any fixed point within itfelf.

Fig. 45. 48.

21. *When the open column of manœuvre has prolonged a ftraight line, ftands halted, and is directed to make a change of fituation on any fixed point within itfelf.*—All the divifions before that point countermarch and ftand faced to it; the battalion, if fingle, or the central battalion of a line, and the one on each fide of it will file by divifions into the new column; the others will march in column, and enter where their *Rears* are to be placed.—If the column is intended to proceed, the divifion facing the given one having taken fingle diftance, and the others of that wing being arranged behind it, they will all countermarch, and the column may then move on.---If the column is meant after fuch change of fituation not to proceed, but immediately to form in line, then the divifion facing the given one having taken double wheeling diftance, the line will be formed by a wheel up to the pivot flank---In either cafe a previous caution will determine the pofition of the divifion facing the given one.

S. 181. *Formation in Line on detached Adjutants, from the affembly or Mafs of Battalions in Columns of Companies.*

Fig. 106.

1. If a column of feveral battalions has halted at half, quarter, or clofe diftance, or that its battalions have affembled in contiguous columns with fmall intervals, and that they are to extend into a line which is at fome diftance from their then fituation, on their refpective adjutants and facing either to the front or to the rear.

2. A

2. A battalion is named as the one to be formed upon, and which may be either a flank or central battalion of the new line, but should be that one, which, being placed at the point of *appui*, determines the position of the line, and therefore will commonly be a flank one.—The general column, when arrived at, and standing on the new line, should always front to the point of *appui*, whether flank or central.—Each adjutant marks one certain flank of his battalion in the new line: and each in taking up his ground, allows for the front and interval of his own battalion from the last placed adjutant before him.——Each adjutant always marks that flank of his battalion in the new line, at which its head is to enter, and that which its REAR division in column is to rest, and therefore it is that flank which is farthest from the point of *appui*; if his battalion is to march with its right in front, he marks its left, and if with the left in front, he marks its right. It is therefore often necessary, as will be mentioned, that some or all of the battalion columns should separately countermarch (S. 101.) at their point of assembly, in order to move off with their proper flank divisions in front, and thereby enter the new line at their respective adjutants.

General preliminary attentions.

3. Supposing therefore that the battalions are standing in columns (the right in front) either in general column, or in contiguous line.—If the position is to be taken from the *right* B, of the new line, the adjutants will from thence prolong it, each successively marking his own left.——If to be taken from the *left* C, the adjutants will from thence prolong it, each successively marking his own right; and the battalions, on separating from the general mass, will each countermarch, so as to arrive at its adjutant a column with the left in front.——If to be taken from a *central* point D, both flanks of that battalion must be marked; its adjutant, and those of the battalions standing to its left (or behind it if in column) will mark each his own left; the adjutants of the battalions to its right (or before it if in column) will mark each his own right, and those battalions will in consequence countermarch, so as to enter with their left in front; and in this manner will the whole stand on the new line facing to the central point.

Fig. 106.

Point of appui determined.

4. These circumstances determined and understood, all the adjutants are sent forward to the ground of the named battalion; the general direction of the line is ascertained by stationed objects; the flank point of entry is taken by the named adjutant; and all the others from him successively prolonging the line, mark their respective ordered points of entry; they are expected to give ground quickly, according to circumstances, both by their eye, and their own step, as well as by the step of their horses.

Adjutants mark flanks.

5. In the mean time, the whole are put in motion, and when sufficiently advanced, they HALT.—Such battalions as are to countermarch, are ordered so to do, and each then diverges to right or left, avoids crossing or interference, and marches quick to its own point of entry, opening its divisions in the course of the march.—At that point a momentary halt is made; the head division wheels into the line, the others successively follow it at open distances, and in ordinary time (S. 125. 115.) till the word HALT is given on the arrival of their rear division at that point.—The battalion thus standing in open column, and its pivots being corrected on the adjutant, is ready to wheel up into the line, which is in this manner separately entered by each battalion, whether it is to face to the front or to the rear of the march.

Battalions enter the new line.

6. As the adjutant always marks the point where the REAR division of his battalion column is to be placed, so the point where the head one is to rest, will be of course easily known (and may be also marked in due time by another detached person) being at the distance of a proper interval, and the front of a division from the preceding adjutant.—The several adjutants, when placed, become so many points of march to the battalions, that are prolonging the line.

7. Altho' unnecessary ground may seem to be gone over by the head divisions of some of the battalions, when they enter at their rear point, yet the rule that each of them shall enter the line where its REAR is to rest, is simple, general, and most readily corrects any mistakes that may be made; and, all circumstances considered, it is a quicker and surer manner of forming on the new position, than if the battalions were to enter at their head, or intermediate points.

General rule.

8. When the enemy cannot possibly interrupt the movements of the detached battalions, this is an expeditious method of taking up ground in a defensive position: but it requires great exertion in the distances given by the adjutants, for, if they misjudge their points there will be false intervals in the line, which can only be remedied by the battalions marching on to their proper distances before they HALT.—If the battalion of *appui* is nearest to the new line, and the first to form on it, then, as all the others must enter it successively, any inaccurate marking of the adjutants may be remedied; because each battalion, without

without interfering with any other one, can, before it HALTS, march up to it's just distance from its preceding one; but if the battalion of *appui* is the last to enter the line, each must then HALT at the point marked by its adjutant, and no correction can be attempted till the battalion of *appui* has halted, and that the whole are in one general column.

9. Should adjutants be ordered to mark the head (instead of the rear) point of their battalion columns, and should such columns not countermarch, as is before required: in such case, each must sometimes take distance not for the front of his own, but for the front and interval of an adjoining battalion, and the column would not face to the point of *appui*; these circumstances would much tend to embarrass the formation of the line.—When an adjutant has to allow for the front of another battalion, he must be apprized of the number of files, officers included, in such battalion.

10. Although the adjutant does always mark the REAR flank of the battalion column, yet as its head point, or any intermediate one, is afterwards easily ascertained, it can be directed (when particularly so ordered) to enter at either of those points, as well as at the rear one, for, any of those operations places the whole in open column in the new line.

11. When battalions assemble in line of contiguous close columns, they should be so placed that no crossing or retardment of the after-march may be occasioned.---If the new position to be taken faces the same way as the columns do, the battalions should stand in their natural order from right to left.---If the position to be taken faces to the rear of the columns, the battalions should assemble in the reverse order, so that the right one shall be on the left: or, if they otherwise assemble at first, they must countermarch in mass, in order to stand so.

Positions taken to front or flanks.

Fig. 105.

12. If positions are to be taken up to the front E. or to the flanks B. C.—The circumstances already mentioned will determine from what point the general line will be given, and what flank of his battalion each adjutant shall mark.—The several battalion columns (having countermarched, if necessary, and if standing in general column having disengaged into an Echellon position) march towards their adjutants, taking care to diverge to that hand which does not cross the path of the leading battalion, or of each other; and when they approach the new line, whatever way it fronts, each is in a situation to enter it as its REAR point, or, if particularly so ordered, at any other given point.

Positions taken to the rear.

13. If positions D. are to be taken in the rear.—Each battalion will countermarch its divisions by files, so that the columns stand with their left in front; the battalions then having the new positions before them, will proceed accordingly.

14. As in changes of position, the arrival and formation of battalions in line is generally successive; the head point of each can be readily ascertained from the situation of the preceding battalion, even before the whole of it may be steadied in the alignement, and an under officer may in time be sent forward the more exactly to determine it.—But the *rear* point of each, at which the adjutant places himself, must as to distance often depend on his eye alone, and being mounted he will always have sufficient time to take it up; as to the direction of the line, which is the great object of his attention, he can never fail in it, if he takes it carefully from the prolongation of such objects as he sees are placed in it, and of such part of the troops as may be formed on the line.

15. The quickness and accuracy of all formations of the line, and of all changes from one position to another, depends totally, on the intelligence of each commanding officer, who always conducts the leading division of his battalion to its point of entry in the new line, and also the adjutant, who, prolonging that line, marks the point of his last division, and is himself the object on which the pivots of the column, or the divisions of the Echellon or column that successively come into line are dressed upon.—When the adjutant marks the *rear* point for the entry of the battalion column, he must be accurate both in his distances and direction: When he marks it only as a point of dressing for divisions that successively arrive in line, the justness of direction is then the material object.

S. 182. *When the rear Battalions of a Column break from it, in order to enter, and form on an Alignement, in which the head ones have halted.*

If a confiderable open column has at any time partly wheeled into and prolonged a new direction, and that the head being arrived at its point, the whole are ordered to HALT with an intention of forming line in the new direction.—On the ceffation of march the entire battalion neareft the line, and any partial divifions of the one preceding it, that have not entered when the whole halt, fhall immediately, by FACING and FILING, gain the new line. But all the other battalions in the rear fhall break from the general column, and each MARCH quick and feparate in individual column till it arrives at its adjutant, who, having expeditioufly lined himfelf on the head objects of the new line, will be placed at its *rear* point of entry ; the battalions will then prolong the line, and, as they muft have fucceffively arrived in it, each will halt when its head is at a due diftance from the preceding battalion, its pivots will be corrected on its adjutant, and it will thus be ready to wheel up into line, when the next battalion behind it fhall have three divifions at leaft correctly ftanding in column on the line.—Or, the adjutants ftill marking the rear points to their battalions, if fo ordered, the head of each may be conducted to its refpective head point (which is readily afcertained), it will then HALT, FACE, and FILE into the new line, and its pivots being corrected on its adjutant, it will be ready to WHEEL up into line as in S. 124. Fig. 104.

A column marching at half, or quarter diftance, may in the fame manner take up its ground.—The divifion that is to ftop at the point of *entry* being afcertained, fuch part of the column as is before that divifion will fucceffively there enter the line, and prolong it at open diftances.—In the mean time fuch battalions as are behind that divifion, breaking from the general column, will march to their refpective points, and extend along the line.

S. 183. *When a Line of feveral Battalions, thrown into Open Column, changes Pofition on a fixed flank Divifion.*

The direction of the new line being afcertained and prolonged, and the flank company placed perpendicular to it, as already directed (S. 120.), the whole wheel backward into open column, facing to the ftanding company.—The flank battalion FACES and FILES into column on the new line (S. 120.), but the head divifion of each other battalion wheels and MARCHES off quick in feparate column to its adjutant, who marks its *rear* point in the new line ; it there enters, prolongs, and wheels up, each fucceffively, as directed (S. 123.)—Or, if fo ordered, each battalion may enter as its head point, as in (S. 124.) Fig. 47.

S. 184. *When a Line of feveral Battalions, thrown in Open Column, changes Pofition on a fixed central Divifion of any one Battalion.*

The direction of the new line being afcertained and prolonged, and the central company placed perpendicular to it, as directed (S. 122.), the whole line breaks backward into open column, fo as to ftand faced to the central company.—The companies of the central battalion, and of the one on each fide of it, proceed to FACE, FILE, and place their pivot flanks in column on the new line (S. 122.)—But the head divifions of each other battalion wheels and MARCHES quickly in feparate column to which ever hand neceffarily conducts it towards its proper *rear* point in the new line, which is marked by its adjutant, it there enters, prolongs, &c. as in the preceding fection. Fig. 48.

In central changes of a battalion or line,—The movements of the right wing, whether thrown forward or backward, are thofe of a column with the left in front, the rights being the pivot flanks ; and the movements of the left wing are thofe of a column, with the right

in

in front, the lefts being the pivot flanks.—In changes of pofition on the right of a battalion or line, the movements are thofe of a column with the right in front.—In changes of pofition on the left of a battalion or line, the movements are thofe of a column with the left in front.

S. 185. *When a Line of feveral Battalions, thrown into Open Column, changes Pofition on a moving central Divifion:*

Fig. 107.

1. The direction of the new line being afcertained and prolonged, the named company, a. will be wheeled and placed with its pivot flank perpendicular to and on the new direction, fronting the way the line is to extend; and if to the rear it muft therefore countermarch.... The line will then break backwards by companies, fo as to ftand faced to the named company.—That company, a. will now be put in march along the new direction, and be followed in double column by the remaining companies of the central battalion, and covered by one of thofe columns, viz. by that whofe flank in prolonging the new line will naturally first arrive at its proper ground, and which march with their pivots upon that line.—when the named divifion arrives at its new point, a. 2. it will, together with thofe that are marching behind it, receive the word to HALT: fuch divifions of its battalions, which are to be in front of it, and are now marching by its fide in column, and are feparated from it by a diftance of 3 or 4 paces, will move on, and by *filing* from their pivot flanks, will fucceffively pace themfelves in column, before and facing to it, at a double wheeling diftance.

2 The other battalions which moved when the central one did, which in the mean time have been marching, each in feparate column led by its inward flank divifion, and which have been pointing to front or rear, relatively to the movements of the central battalion, approaching, but not entering, into its direction, except fuch as would naturally follow on the prolongation of the line: Thofe battalions will, when the central one halts, march quick towards their feveral adjutants who have been detached to mark their *rear* points, enter, prolong, and wheel up into line, as already directed.---In this movement, fome of the battalions near the central one might form to advantage on their head points, by filing from their pivots flanks into line, and if fo ordered, they may do it accordingly.

3. If the named company is a flank one of a central battalion, in that cafe the whole of that battalion will follow it in one column only, and the adjoining battalion will compofe another column, and march a-breaft of it, feparated by 3 or 4 paces, till the named battalion comes to its ground and halts; the adjoining battalion will then proceed, and by filing round from its pivot flanks, will (ftanding faced to the directing one) take its place in the general column, in order to form into line.

4. On many occafions, when the named company is to be moveable, and that it is a central one of a battalion, the whole of that battalion, if it is thought advifable, may without much lofs of time be thrown into one column before and behind that company, and the companies of that battalion, which are in front of the named one, will be countermarched, in order that the whole may face the way the column is to move.---This done, the general movement of the central and other battalions, each in feparate column, may begin; and in fuch cafe, the front company of the central battalion will be the firft to arrive and HALT at the point where the column is to wheel up into line.

5. This movement of the given divifion is equivalent to the line marching from the center either to front or rear, and from that fituation forming away to the flanks: or to the whole line firft marching forward, or backward, and than making a central change on a fixed point.—At the fame time that it changes the front of a line, it carries the flanks to whatever point in that line it is meant they fhould reft at: it is the movement, which a fecond line does make, in order to comply with a change of pofition made by the firft line, on a fixed point.

S. 186. *When the head of a confiderable open Column in March arrives at, or near the Point from which it is to take an oblique Pofition (B) facing to its then Rear, and at which Points its 3d, 4th, or any other named Battalion is to be placed.* Fig. 109.

1. In general, the column after entering the new line would continue its march in that direction, till the named divifion arrived and was halted at the point of interfection; the battalions that had not entered into the line would then break off from the old direction and gain the new one.—But if fuch a column was marching parallel to an enemy's flank point as far as was intended, and that the object was to take an oblique line and attack that flank: In fuch fituation, it might be too hazardous to allow the rear of the column which was deftined to become the refufed flank of the new line, to remain fo long in its parallel direction, and it might be effential to draw it farther from the enemy as foon as poffible. Fig. 109. B.

2. Suppofe the column confifts of fix battalions, and that it is determined that the head of the 5th fhall be placed at the point of interfection (d).—The column moves on, and when the head of it arrives at the point (d) in the new line, the two, or any proportion of the leading battalions, may by the fucceffive wheeling of their divifions enter it and march along it in the ordinary manner; but as foon as the leading divifion of the column does enter it, the 3d, 4th, and every other battalion breaks off feparately to the rear, and march quick in columns to gain the new line: the 3d and 4th battalions affemble in clofe column a little beyond the point of interfection (d) and the new line; the 5th entering at its adjutant who marks its rear, forms in open column on the new line, with its head at the point (d), and all the other rear battalions form alfo relatively in open column on the new line. —The two leading battalions having in the mean time prolonged the line, when it comes to the turn of the 3d, it gradually takes its diftances, follows in open column, as alfo all the others, till the whole are ordered to halt, and the line to be formed by wheeling up.

3. The juftnefs of this movement depends; on the points in the new direction being taken up quickly, and with precifion; on the previous determination that a certain battalion or divifion of a battalion, fhall pafs or halt at the point of interfection; and that every part of the column which is behind that battalion fhall throw itfelf into open column on the new line behind the point of interfection, ready to prolong or to form the line whenever it comes to its turn.

4. This movement will often take place in the change of pofition of a fecond line, and is performed by all thofe that are behind the divifion which is to ftop at the point where the old and new lines interfect.—And at all times when the open column changes into a direction on which it is to form, and that the divifion which is to be placed at the point of entry can be determined, it much facilitates the operation to make every thing behind that divifion gain the new line as quickly as poffible, without waiting till the head of the column halts.

5. Suppofe the column marching on a line parallel to an enemy's front, to have entered oppofite one flank, and to be marching towards the other, as if meaning to form in parallel line, but that circumftances determine to form in oblique line C, and attack the flank it has paffed.—The column will be halted when the rear has arrived at a determined point; the direction of the oblique line C, will be given; each divifion of the column will countermarch; the battalion that is to reft at the point of interfection will be named; the whole will be put in motion.—Two or three of the leading battalions continuing their march will by the fucceffive wheeling of their divifions prolong the new direction; fuch following ones as are to be before the point of interfection, a. will affemble clofe to it; fuch others as are to be behind it, will at once march off quickly and feparately to their point of entry in the new line, and ftand in open column upon it: in proportion as the head advances the whole will extend along the line in open column, be halted, and formed by wheeling up. Fig. 109. C.

6. A line formed parallel to an enemy, may change fituation in the above manner, by wheeling into open column, marching on to the point of interfection, and then taking up the new oblique pofition.

7. If a column moving parallel to an enemy, fhould ftop and take up a new pofition on any point then within itfelf, fuch formation would be a central one, and made either on a fixed or moveable divifion.

CLOSE.

CLOSE COLUMN, OF THE LINE.

1. The great object of a considerable close column is ; to form the line to the front in the quickest manner possible ; to conceal numbers from the knowledge of the adversary ; and to extend in whatever direction the circumstance of the moment may require ; which till it is nearly accomplished cannot be obvious to an opposite enemy : It is a situation for the assembly, more than for the march of troops : It is not formed until the head of the troops is arrived in column of whole, half, or quarter distance, near the ground where they are to extend into line.—The formation from close column into line is an original one, generally protected by cannon and cavalry, made at such a distance as not to be interrupted by the attempts of an enemy, and avoiding the enfilade of artillery. Its positions cannot fail to be truly taken.

2. The close column should not exceed 5, or 7, battalions ; where there are more troops, it is best to form more columns if it can be done ; therefore the columns of march may often be sub-divided when they come near the points of forming into line, be directed upon them, and then closed up.

Fig. 70. 72. 3. In general the battalion close columns before they begin to deploy, should stand 2 companies in front, and 5 in depth : In this situation, the right company has its officer and his serjeant on its right flank, and the left company has its officer on its left, and his serjeant on its right. (S. 147.)

4. From close column, the whole or any part of the body may be ordered to extend into line to either hand, as circumstances may require.

5. When a close column is halted, each battalion of which it is composed is 3 paces from the one before it.

6. A close column must loosen its divisions before it can march in front, and its changes of direction must be made circling and on a moving point, to enable its rear gradually to comply : If too great intervals should be made in the column, they can best be closed by a halt of the head.

7. Battalions standing in mass should be 6 paces distant from each other before deploying into line.

8. A close column of 2 or even 3 battalions, may occasionally deploy in the same manner as a single battalion does, and on any divisions ; but in proportion to the number of divisions does the difficulty of execution encrease, and at any rate the formation will probably be inaccurate and defective.—Therefore, when several battalions are halted in a close column, they do first deploy in mass on any named one, and thus stand in contiguous lines of battalion columns, with any ordered interval between each. If the columns are of companies, the intervals will be equal to the front of a company and a half, they will then form columns of 2 companies each in front ; and the whole will then deploy into line on any named division of any battalion.

S. 187. *When a column of March (by companies) of several Battalions forms close column, and then extends into*
Fig. 111. *Line.*

CLOSE TO QUARTER DISTANCE. ORDINARY. — When it is found proper to shorten the column of march, the rear divisions are ordered to close up to a certain distance.—The leading division of the column either halts or shortens its step, and the rear divisions close up to quarter distance : an interval of a company is reserved betwixt each battalion, and the divisions when closed resume the ordinary march.

FORM CLOSE COLUMN. HALT. — When arrived within about 200 yards of where the line is to be formed, the head is halted, and the rear divisions move on to close column.

Th

BATTALION COLUMNS WILL DEPLOY ON THE 3d BATTALION. — The third or any other battalion is then named as the one which is to give the ground on the line, and points in it are already marked out by the advanced adjutants.

OUTWARDS FACE. — The 3d battalion ſtands faſt, each other one in maſs FACES to its proper hand.

Q. MARCH. — Each marches quick to the flank without opening out.

MARCH. HALT, DRESS. — When the 3d battalion is uncovered, it marches forward to its place in line, and halts at its given points.

HALT, FRONT. DRESS. MARCH. HALT, DRESS. — The battalions that are marching to the flanks, as ſoon as they have acquired an interval of one company and a half from each other, will ſucceſſively HALT, FRONT, DRESS--MARCH--HALT, DRESS, with the 3d Battalion which is now on the line. Muſic, drummers, &c. are in the rear of each battalion column; and alſo artillery, unleſs otherwiſe placed.

FORM GRAND DIVISIONS, &c. — The battalions being thus placed on the line with the above intervals, and in columns of companies, are ordered to form columns of two companies in front, as in (S. 147.)

THE LINE WILL BE FORMED ON THE 3d DIVISION OF THE 3d BATTALION. — The line being now prolonged to both flanks, a CAUTION is given that the whole will deploy on any named diviſion of any one battalion: for example, on the 3d diviſion of the 3d battalion.

OUTWARDS FACE. — The two right battalions, and the front diviſion of the third, FACE to the right, and all the reſt to the left.

Q. MARCH. — The whole MARCH quick to the flanks, except the named diviſion, which advances into the alignement, and the reſt of the 3d battalion proceeds to make a central formation on it. (S. 150.)

—DIVISION, HALT, FRONT, &c. — The other battalions continue their march till each arrives at the point where its inward flank is to be placed; and when each does ſo, ſuch flank diviſions, whether it is the front or rear one, HALTS, FRONTS, and occupies its place in line, while the other diviſions proceed and make their deployment upon it.--In this manner the battalions ſucceſſively deploy (S. 148. 149.), obſerving the general attentions already given.

2. The points of marching and forming upon muſt be well defined: The head diviſions of battalions that move along the line muſt do it accurately, and by no means get before it: The files muſt march correct, and the beginning of the deployment of each battalion muſt be well timed, otherwiſe the general line will be ill taken up.--The general line is that on which the battalion ſtood before the deployment began, and the ſeveral adjutants will carefully and quickly prolong it, each giving a point near to where the outward flank of his own battalion will extend.

3. The battalion columns FACE, and ſeparate from the general column by a command given for the whole by the chief; but each column is halted, fronted, and brought up into line by its reſpective commanding officer.—In like manner, when the ſeveral columns are on their line of formation, they will FACE and MARCH by word of command from the chief; but each will be ordered to DEPLOY at the proper place by its own commanding officer.

4. When ſeveral battalion cloſe columns ſtand arranged along ſide of each other, and are in concert to deploy into line.—The named one of formation only can be required to form, either on the front, a CENTRAL, or the rear diviſion; but each of the others neceſſarily form, either on its front, or on its rear one, as the circumſtances of ſituation demand.

5. After the column of march has cloſed up to quarter diſtance, the leading battalion may, when thought proper, be at once directed to its point of halting; and the others may ſucceſſively diverge from the column, arrange themſelves as before along-ſide of it, and double up to columns of 2 companies.--The line of battalions in maſs being thus formed, at ſuch a diſtance from the poſition, it is to extend on as circumſtances point out, may from thence advance on a front 1-5th of its extended one (as the ſeveral battalion columns are now 5 diviſions in depth) and may then deploy into line, as near to the enemy as appears ſafe,

ſafe.—In ſuch ſtate of deployment the troops have not much to apprehend, as they are in a ſituation to reſiſt any ſudden attack; nor until they do begin to deploy, can the enemy provide againſt, or determine what poſition they will take up, as 4-5ths of their number may be thrown to either hand, and as an oblique direction may readily be given by the previous placing of the ſeveral battalion columns in ſuch intended direction, which is an eaſy operation.

S. 188. *Oblique Deployments.*

Oblique deployment. The deployment of the cloſe column into a line OBLIQUE to the one on which its head then ſtands, may in ſome ſituations be required where circumſtances do not permit of the previous operation of placing the column perpendicular to ſuch line; as when a wing is to be lengthened out but refuſed, or an enemy's flank to be gained by throwing forward one or more battalions which have advanced in cloſe column behind the point of a wing; or when the nature of the ground on which the column ſtands demands a deployment that will give a ſupport to a flank, or preſerve the advantage of a poſition.

Fig. 112.

Such deployments muſt be made by the troops as ſtanding in one column and by the whole as if one battalion, according to the mode preſcribed for it; they do not apply to battalions ſeparated and ſtanding in maſs on the ſame line. If more than one or two battalions take up an oblique line, it will require great attention in the commanders to preſerve order, and to form with juſtneſs.—Such formations are required on the front diviſion of the column: hardly on the rear or on a central one; the attendant difficulties are ſufficiently obvious: The column muſt be well cloſed up, and two companies in front.—Whenever circumſtances permit the column to be placed perpendicular to its line of formation, it must always be done: oblique formations are unvoidable exceptions.

S. 189. *If a Battalion cloſe Column of Companies ſhould be required to form the Square.*

Fig. 108. B. The column being halted with the uſual interval of one pace between the companies, receives the cautionary command to FORM THE SQUARE, on which the front half of the companies in the column, take one pace forward; the firſt company then falls back to the ſecond one pace, and the 2 laſt companies cloſe up 1 and 2 paces to the company before them.—The whole companies make an interval of 2 paces in their centre, by their ſubdiviſions taking each one pace to the flanks; 2 Officers with their ſerjeants place themſelves on each of the front and rear intervals; 2 Officers with their ſerjeants alſo take post in each of the encreaſed intervals in the center of the ſides; and a ſerjeant takes the place of each flank front rank man of the 1ſt diviſion, and of each flank rear rank man of the laſt diviſion; all the other officers, ſerjeants, diſplaced men, drummers, &c. &c. assemble behind the center of the companies which are to form the flank faces.—On the word OUTWARDS FACE, the 2 rear companies face outwards, and 4 files (ſuppoſing the companies of 12 file each) on each flank of all the companies (except the firſt and laſt) alſo face outwards, the whole lining with the flanks of the front companies, and dreſſing in rank from front to rear.—At the word Q. MARCH, the fifth file from each flank of all the companies except the 2 firſt, and 2 laſt, followed by the front rank man of the 6th file, move to right and left, and reſpectively fill up the intervals between the flanks of their own and preceding diviſion; the remainder of the men of the ſide diviſions arrange themſelves to their right and left, forming cloſe in the rear of their own diviſions reſpectively.—The whole thus ſtand faced outwards, and formed at leaſt 4 deep, with 2 officers and their ſerjeants in the middle of each face to command; all the other officers, as well as ſerjeants, &c. &c. are in the void ſpace in the center behind their companies; and the files of Officers in the faces may be completed by ſerjeants, &c. &c. from the interior, in ſuch manner as the commandant, may direct.—The mounted field officers muſt paſs into the center of the column, by the rear face, if neceſſary, opening from its center 2 paces, and again cloſing.—When ordered, the 2 firſt ranks all round the column will kneel and ſlope their bayonets; the 2 next ranks will fire ſtanding, and all the others will remain in reſerve; the coverers behind each officer of the ſides will give back, and enable him to ſtand in the rank.—Whatever is the ſtrength of the companies which compoſe the flank ſides, the whole of them will face outwards except their 4 center files, which are always reſerved for filling up the intervals.

To reduce the square.—On the word FORM CLOSE COLUMN, the files that faced outward will come to their proper front, and the files that moved into the intervals will face about.—At the word Q. MARCH, the grenadiers take one pace forward, and the 2 rear companies take one and two paces forward, and then face about; the files from the intervals take their proper places; officers, serjeants, &c. will quit the interior, move to their several stations, and the companies that composed the flank faces will be completed; the companies will also close inwards by sub-divisions one pace.

S. 190. *When several close columns are formed from Parts of the same Line.*

The parts of the line which are to compose each column are named; each battalion forms a close column on one of its own named divisions: The several battalion close columns march by a flank, and place themselves before or behind the directing battalion of that general column to which they are to belong.

S. 191. *If several considerable close columns are halted at accidental Distances, but with their Heads dressed, and are ordered to form in one Line.*

Fig. 113. 114.

At whatever distance the heads of the close columns are halted from each other, the separate battalions will move up into line, each column upon its own named battalion: The point and division on which the whole are to form will be named: The whole will extend from it: The distances and commencement of movement will be taken from the named point, so that the outward battalions may move successively as it becomes necessary to preserve their distances from the inward ones.—Or, the adjutants taking their points from the given one of *appui*, the columns will in the mean time be previously so placed as not to cross or interfere in the march; the battalions of each will then disengage, march, enter, and form on the line.

S. 192. *If two columns halted at open, half, or quarter Distance are to exchange Places.*

Fig. 115. E.

The divisions of each will face inwards and file; when they have nearly approached each other, one of them halts, the other continues in march, and passes through the intervals of the halted one.—Both columns then move on until they arrive, halt, and front on the ground which each other occupied, and which has been properly marked and preserved for them: during this flank march, the heads of the files are kept nearly dressed, and are regulated in each column by the 2 leading divisions.—This operation is necessary when a line is to be taken up and formed on facing the reverse way to what the columns then do; and if such line is in the rear of the columns, they also countermarch their divisions by files, in order to enter and prolong it.—This mode of columns exchanging situation, which is equivalent to the passage of lines, may be required on several occasions.

S. 193.

S. 193. When two columns are to form in Line in any given Fig. 115. Position.

Points are prepared.---The columns, by marching, countermarching, exchange of situation by files, or by whatever other operation is necessary, are brought up with their heads to the given points in the new line; the columns close up: the battalions disengage, place themselves on the new line: the division or divisions of formation are named, and the whole respectively deploy into line.-- Or, points being prepared by the several adjutants, the battalions will disengage at a due distance, march on their respective points, and form in line.

S. 194. If there are two columns, composed each of parts of two Fig. 114. Lines, which are to form.

The battalions of the second line will halt at a proper distance from the first, and deploy or form in line in the same manner as the first one does.---Or, if the first line is to form facing to the rear, the second one will have to proceed and to pass it, in order to arrive at its relative situation.

If two lines march off to the front in 2, 3, or 4 columns, each composed of part of the two lines; advance at certain distances from each other to where their heads enter on 2 given parallel lines; wheel their heads to a flank into and prolong those lines to any extent: Then as the columns of each line have of course joined each other, the whole will be moving in columns of lines, ready to form by a wheel up to the flanks, when the object of the movement is accomplished, which probably may be that of out-flanking, or turning the flank of an enemy.

If two lines, marching in columns of lines to a flank, are unexpectedly obliged to make front to that flank, Then the new lines will be composed each of part of the old ones, by forming to right and left.

ECHELLON MOVEMENTS OF THE LINE.

Echellon movements of a great corps.

1. The ECHELLON movements of a great corps place it in an advantageous situation to disconcert an enemy, to make a partial attack, or a gradual retreat.---Different previous manœuvres must always have diverted the attention of an enemy, and prevented him from being certain of where the attack is to be made. It may be formed from the centre or from either of the wings reinforced: If successful the divisions move up into line and improve the advantage: If repulsed they are in a good situation to protect the retreat.--In advancing, the several bodies move independent, act freely, and are ready to assist: In retiring they fall gradually back on each other, and thereby give mutual aid and support.

Strength of Echellons.

2. The Echellons of a line are according to its strength, of one, two, or three battalions each. Though their flanks seem multiplied they are not exposed, as they cover each other and if they are far asunder, they may be protected by artillery and cavalry relatively posted.

Oblique march.

3. Echellons seen at a distance appear as if a full line: being short and independent lines, they can the easier march obliquely to outwing an enemy, or to preserve the points of appui to a wing; and such movement may not be perceptible to an enemy.

Echellon formed on any division.

4. The Echellon may be formed direct from line, on a flank or any central division, either marching or halted, to front or rear.

Partial formations in Echellon.

5. The whole or only part of the line may be thrown into Echellon, and that either to the front or rear. In the first case with a view to gain the flank of an enemy, or obtain a cross fire; in the second to refuse or cover one's own flank.

6. Wh

6. When the Echellon is unconnected with a line, the advanced flank or division regulates all its movements; when attached to a line, it must depend on the motions of that line. Direcing point.

7. The same general principles of movement and formation apply to all Echellons similarly formed, however great or small they may be, and whether they are acting to the front or the rear.

8. Echellons of half battalions or less move forward by their directing flank, which is always the one advanced from, or wheeled to.—Echellons of battalions move by their advanced serjeants—Echellons of several battalions move in line each by its own center, and the whole by the battalion next the directing flank. General directing points of great Echellons in movement.

9. By at any time halting the Echellon the leading division may be changed, and instead of one flank the other may be made the advanced one: or, instead of an Echellon formed from a flank, it may be converted into an Echellon formed from the center; this is effected upon any named division, by the relative and perpendicular movements of the others to front or rear.—In this operation when the Echellon is a direct one, the divisions of it will exactly pass each others flank: when it is an oblique one, which has been formed by wheeling, a part of each in passing will necessarily be intersected by the one preceding it, and must therefore double in passing, and afterwards extend into its proper place. Change of directing flanks or divisions of the Echellon.

S. 195. *When a considerable Line changes to an Oblique Position by the Echellon March of Companies.*

1. *If the new line intersects any part of the old line.*—The battalion so intersected will make its change of position on that fixed point flank or central (S. 159. 161.); and all the others will march in Echellon, whether forward or backward, to their respective points in the new line, before they successively begin to form in it. (S. 162.) Fig. 77.

2. *If the new line intersects the prolongation of the old line.*—A point will be given in the new line where the leading flank is to be placed.—The leading division will be wheeled so that it may move perpendicular on that point, and all the other divisions of the line will wheel up the same number of paces: the whole will march up in Echellon, regarding their leading flank as a moveable center, and as each battalion arrives at the new line it will halt, and form in it by a new interior arrangement. (S. 157.) Fig. 79.

In these changes of position, the whole Echellons of a line are situated, and may be considered relatively the same as the platoons or Echellons of a battalion: the whole move together and connected at the ordinary step; each battalion arrives successively at its point in the new line, and each as soon as it arrives begins its formation on it.—So that whether it is the battalion or a line which so changes, the march is made with precision, and each Echellon forms up in succession.

S. 196. *When the line marches obliquely outwards in Echellon of Companies, and changes position inwards to move upon a flank which it has gained.*

The line formed and halted marches to the flank in Echellon of companies (S. 155.) forms in line parallel to the one it quitted (S. 156.) and if it then instantly makes an oblique change of position, (S. 159.) it will be placed in a situation to march forward with the greatest advantage on the weak point of the enemy.—Or, according to the distance from the point of attack, the line, after resuming its parallel situation, may move forward a given space, then makes its oblique change of situation, and again march on in the new direction it has acquired, on the enemy's flank. Fig. 35.

S. 197.

S. 197. *When from Line parallel to an Enemy, conſiderable Echellons advance from a Flank to the Front.*

Fig. 118, 119.

The diviſions of the line and the diſtance of Echellons being announced ; the flank Echellon moves on ; when it has taken the given number of paces, the next one follows, and that ſucceſſively till the whole is in motion ; the whole halt, when the leading Echellon halts.

Fig. 118.

1. Two under officers from each following Echellon will march in the line of each preceding one, ſo as to ſtop (when the preceding one does) in its juſt prolongation, and at the points at which the inward flank and center of the following one is to be halted when it is required to move up into line, and whoſe poſition in ſuch line muſt be thereby eaſily and accurately determined.——-If the Echellon is compoſed of more than one battalion, the others, when ſuch detached under officers ſtop, will ſend forward to mark alſo their ſeveral centers in the prolonged line.

2. It depends alone on the conductor of the leading Echellon when it halts, to give it ſuch a direction that its prolongation ſhall paſs before the enemy's front ; and if the others are to move up into line, and are then within reach of the enemy's fire, it is evident how much care each muſt take, not to throw forward its outward flank, and be thereby expoſed to an enfilade.

3. Notwithſtanding every meaſure taken to obtain exact parallel lines, the following Echellons muſt, and on the march will be guided by and conform to the leading one ; Their great object is to preſerve in moving on, their parallel and relative ſituations, their ordered diſtances, and proper flank interval : In this they are to act in the ſame manner as when advancing in line, and having the leading Echellon to guide them, together with the aſſiſtance of the mounted officers who attend to their movements, and prevent their outward flanks from being thrown too forward ; they will execute with juſtneſs this important manœuvre. ---The preſervation of intervals is alſo as eſſential an attention, as in the attack in line.

Fig. 119.

4. *When large Echellons* having marched forward are to wheel up to their advanced flank, and form in line oblique to the one from which they departed. The outward flanks which are to be the ſtanding ones, muſt be halted as ſoon as each touches the line on which the formation is to be made : and for this purpoſe a line muſt be ready marked by advanced officers (prolonged from the leading Echellon) on which ſuch flank is to halt, and on no account to paſs it.---Each Echellon forms in line by a change of poſition on that flank: but if there is not a previous arrangement of diſtances, and a degree of doubling of each in proportion to the intended obliquity of the line, there will be increaſed intervals between the Echellons.

S. 198. *When a line formed on, and beyond an Enemy's flank, moves to the Attack in great Echellons.*

Fig. 124, 1[illegible]

The Echellon which is then placed perpendicular to the point of the enemy's flank will move on, the reſt will ſucceſſively follow it from each hand, and at the preſcribed diſtance ; the Echellons on one flank will be refuſed, and on the other they will advance beyond the leading one, to envelope the enemy.

From whatever ſituation of Echellons a body is placed in ; a CHANGE in thoſe Echellons may be inſtantly produced, by altering the leading one, and all the others immediately taking new relative poſitions to conform to it.

S. 199. *When a Line formed in front of, and obliquely to the Enemy, is to move forward from a flank to the Attack in great Echellons parallel to the Enemy.*

The number of Echellons and strength of each being ascertained and announced, the Echellons will naturally be formed to and led by the advanced flank.---As the oblique Echellons of a battalion are formed by the wheels of each company; so the oblique Echellons of a line are formed by wheeling up the 8th file of each flank company of each Echellon a given number of paces, and then correctly dressing the company to it; the other companies of the battalion or body which compose the Echellon, wheel each their 8th file half that number of paces, dress up to it, and the whole march and successively line upon the prolongation of the given one, proceeding as in the Echellon change of position of one or more battalions on a fixed flank. (S. 159.) Great pains must be taken in the correct placing of the flank directing division of each Echellon. *Fig. 120. 121.*

1. It must be observed that when the *Echellons* have been formed from the *oblique* line, so as to stand parallel to the enemy's front, they will be doubled behind each other in proportion to the degree of wheel made, and that were they to move directly forward to form in line with the leading one, a portion of each would be thereby cut off, and the general extent of the line reduced.---To endeavour by obliquing in the course of marching to rectify this defect, would be very difficult, and is hardly to be attempted: It must be remedied either by an early attention to taking the necessary and greater intervals than usual before forming the oblique line: or, before the whole advances, making the Echellons take ground to the flanks, and place themselves in their proper relative situations, as they would be when formed from parallel line: This done the whole may move on, either from the advanced or retired flank, and when proper march up into parallel line: Should this not be done, part of each Echellon would of course be excluded on forming the general line, and must remain behind it.---The line may also be formed (provided the front Echellon halts in a situation that will allow it) by each other, one at that instant making such a change of direction backward on its regulating flank, as will allow it to march perpendicularly forward to its proper point in the new line, where, by another change of direction forward, it will take up the prolongation of the leading Echellon.

2. Whether the original line is formed *parallel* or *oblique* to the enemy's front, the Echellons before marching are always to be placed perpendicular to the line on which they are to move.——From this situation a diagonal march on the enemy's flank may be made, and in such case large Echellons must be broke into companies; but it is an operation difficult in the execution, that would require much circumspection, and if attempted too near would be very dangerous, as the flank thrown up is much exposed to the enemy's enfilade.

3. This ATTACK can be at once formed from a column of march, or the open column of a line, which is prolonging a direction upon, and oblique to that of the enemy.——The column will halt, wheel into line, and without any sensible pause the leading flank of each Echellon will wheel up parallel to the enemy, the other divisions of the line will each wheel the half of that space, and move on into their several Echellons, the whole will then be ready to advance led by any named Echellon. *Fig. 121.*

The ATTACKS of considerable bodies are almost always conducted on the principles of the ECHELLONS; there are few situations where the whole could act at the same time, or where it would be prudent or eligible so to do: they are therefore made by fractions of a line well supported and reinforced.

S. 200. *With respect to the Enemy, and the intended Movement; the* ECHELLON *position may be taken from the* { *Parallel* / *Oblique* / *column* } *Position.*

1. *If from the line parallel to the enemy.*—It is previously divided into the several Echellons which are to compose it; and the distance at which they are to remain behind each other is announced.—The reinforced flank or center which is to attack is then ordered

to advance; each Echellon of 2 or more battalions moves on when the preceding one has gained the ordered distance of (perhaps 100) paces, and thus being regulated by the head, acts according to the event of the attack.

2. *If from the line oblique to the enemy.*—This position having been taken from the column of march, or in the course of advancing in line; and the divisions of the Echellons being ascertained; they are formed by wheeling up parallel to the enemy and to each other: The advanced or retired wing reinforced may then proceed to the attack, and supported by the others will act according to circumstances.—One may attack upon any degree of obliquity, and by absolutely refusing one wing, place it in a situation the more readily to protect a retreat should it be necessary, and which will be greatly strengthened if a point of appui can be given to such refused wing.

Fig. 120. 121.

3. *If from columns halted perpendicular or nearly so to the enemy.*—Their heads are halted at given relative points, and given distances; the attacking bodies form in one or more lines; the others extend to the flank in Echellon, being separated perpendicularly a space equal to the distances they halted at in their several columns: This space is augmented, if necessary, when the whole move on, and lines of two or more battalions each are thus formed.—From the Echellon position by flank marching the order of column may again be resumed.

Fig. 122. 123.

4. *The advanced Echellon* being arrived at its object, the attack begins, and the others attend the event.—If it succeeds they move up into line to perfect it.—If it fails, each falling back on each is strengthened and supported every instant of the retreat; this will generally be done by the Echellons in the course of retiring, at the same time making a gradual wheel backwards on the posted flank of the corps, from which the fire of artillery will much check and enfilade an advancing enemy.

5. *The second line* when there is one, follows in every thing the Echellon movements of the first.—The battalions make the same degree of wheel, preserve the same relative position, and serve as a support to the first; the attack of the second line moves on therefore at the same time with that which it is to support.—The Echellons of one or more lines are generally retired from 100 to 150 paces, each behind the one preceding of its own line.—When necessary the Echellons of the first line may retire through those of the second, and be relieved in the attack.

6. *Where a line is passing a defile to the front, and from or near its center.*—After passing it may first form at the head of the defile, in the Echellon position; the several divisions are then ready to move up into line, or by wheels towards the flanks to form in oblique lines, and protect those flanks.—It may also in the same manner pass a defile to the rear, retiring from the flanks by Echellon, while the center protects the movement.

7. *When the line has to advance a considerable distance in front*, it may occasionally be done with much convenience in a degree of Echellon position, by each battalion being retired 5 or 6 paces or more behind its preceding one.—The battalion of direction is the leading one, which must march with the greatest exactness, and, when so ordered, the whole can in an instant move up into line.

8. *A line* B, *formed parallel or oblique* to the enemy E, threatens and commences an Echellon movement from its left; but on the arrival of the left at a favourable point of appui C, the whole halt, and an Echellon attack from the right (which has been strengthened) then begins; this attack D, having been supported as long as is proper and having failed, the whole fall back in Echellon F, on the left which remains posted.—From this situation an oblique line G, is taken to the left and from the left, by each Adjutant marking his own right in the prolonged line: the battalions successively again retire, and then break into column the left in front, march behind each other, enter at their adjutants, and take up the new line.—This position G, may be quitted by throwing back the left of the line; retiring by alternate lines; or in any other manner as circumstances may require.

MARCH OF THE LINE IN FRONT.

General intentions.

1. The chief object of every other movement is the quick and just formation into line when necessary, and the consequent advance of that line in front towards the enemy.—If the correct march of a single battalion requires so much attention and precision, it is evident that these must be redoubled to procure the just movement of a line, which is the operation that immediately leads to the enemy, and is the most difficult, and material of all manoeuvres.—To hurry and bring up troops to the attack in imperfect order, is to lose every

every advantage which discipline proposes, and to present them to the enemy in that very state, to which after his best efforts he has hoped to reduce them.

2. The same principles that direct the march of the battalion direct that of the line; besides which several peculiar observances are required, and in proportion as difficulties increase, must attention be given.

3. No body of troops can advance in line with firmness and order, unless the original formation of that line has been perfectly straight, and its correct preservation during the march requires every attention.

Justness of the line.

4. The cadence of the march is not to be altered by particular battalions; but when it is necessary each will lengthen or shorten its step by word from its own commander.

Cadence.

5. The march, and halt, and attention in line of the officers and men of each battalion, are by its own center; the commander alone regards the regulating battalion.---Dressing to a flank is by a separate direction, and given when necessary and proper after halting.

Attentions.

6. Battalions in line, marching over heights, or across vallyes, will require more time to pass them, than others who are moving on the same extent, but of level ground; in order to preserve equality of front; the last must therefore in general be ordered to shorten their step.

March.

7. The march of a considerable body in line can only be at the ordinary step, a quicker movement would produce disorder, nor could artillery well attend its motions when advancing to the enemy; But there are situations, where a brigade or smaller front should move on to a particular object or to an attack at a lengthy step, or where even a quicker cadence may be required from them.

General pace.

8. When a line of several battalions is formed and halted; there is an interval of 12 paces between each for two pieces of artillery; the men are generally dressed to a flank; ranks are closed up; the whole stand ready for movement; and for which the directing serjeant of each has prepared himself as required in the single battalion.

Intervals.

S: 201. *When the line is to march in Front.*

One of the battalions is *named* as the regulating one, to whose movements all the rest are to conform.—The *Commander* of the line is himself with that battalion, every precaution, as already prescribed, is taken to ensure its perpendicular march, and its directing serjeants are ordered to advance.

THE LINE WILL ADVANCE.

At a *Caution* quickly circulated, that THE LINE WILL ADVANCE, the directing serjeants of each other battalion, move out their 6 paces; it is almost impossible that they should not halt in perfect line; but if any small alteration is necessary, the serjeants on either side of the regulating one, being from that last ordered to move forward or backward as much as appears necessary for this correction, will, together with the regulating one, give a line to which all the others will immediately conform.

The *Directors* of the march being thus placed parallel to the line, must take care that their bodies are perfectly square to the front, and they will again remark their near points of march, for they must not look out for distant ones, but take such as accidentally occur on the ground; those of the battalion of direction are not liable to be altered, but all the others are to be considered only as relative helps to begin the march, subordinate to those of the regulating battalion, and liable to be changed from the instant that they appear to the commander of battalion to produce a movement which does not correspond with the regulating one, whose march is here supposed accurate, and as justly taken as possible; for, should that battalion take a false direction, universal disorder must take place, unless it immediately assumes and perseveres in a true one, perpendicular to the front of the general line.

From the circumstances in which lines must generally be expected to move, as thick weather, smoke of cannon, dust, &c. &c. it is evident that *distant* objects of march cannot be looked for or taken, nor any other observed than such as are near, and derived from the eye and the squareness of the body moving upon them.

The

The *Commander* of each battalion is ten paces behind the rear rank, in the file of the directing serjeant, and will there remain; his adjutant is behind the flank next that of direction, and the major is behind the other flank.—The commander of the line, or some person that he appoints, is near the directing serjeant of the regulating battalion, and with coolness and judgement may make such signal to the serjeant of a neighbouring battalion as will gradually bring him forward or backward, and by then being a direction to the others, will tend to preserve the parallelism of the line; but this correction is not to be attempted without great and gradual discretion, and so as not to occasion any considerable alteration to a flank of the line.

MARCH. — At the word MARCH given to the battalion of direction, and rapidly repeated, each battalion at the same instant is put in motion by its respective center.

From the first moment of movement the quickest and greatest attention must be given by the commanding officer, to observe whether the direction of the regulating battalion is just; this will be seen in the course of 20 or 30 paces; for, if the rest of the line is moving steadily, and that this battalion is closing to one flank, and opening to the other, its direction must be changed accordingly by advancing a shoulder; but if the whole are steady, or that the battalion is not altering within itself, or with respect to the general line, its direction must be persevered in, and not afterwards changed. 'Till this circumstance is ascertained with respect to the directing one, and which must be immediately done, its contiguous battalions will make no alteration in their position.

2. The *Regulating* battalion must be regarded as infallible, the commander of the line watches over it, and, from the moment that its direction is ascertained, the commanders of each other, and their directing serjeants, are to consider their movements as subordinate to it, and to conform accordingly: It is the helm which guides the line, and must not change cadence, nor will it lengthen or shorten its step, but from unavoidable necessity, and by particular order.

3d. The instant communication of the word MARCH is particularly important, that the advanced serjeants of the whole may step off together, and thereby maintain their line parallel to the one they quitted, and which becomes the principal guide for their battalions; each preserves its 6 paces from its advanced serjeant; this distance is to be kept by, and depends on, the replacing officer next to the colour, who covers the directing serjeant; and if these trained serjeants do step equally, and in parallel directions to each other, they must be dressed themselves in line, and of consequence the centers of their following battalions.

4. But as the *Flanks* of battalions are apt to be behind their centers, the majors and adjutants will particularly attend to this, and also the flank officers of each battalion, who, being unconfined in their persons, may preserve themselves in the general line of the colours.—When a flank Officer observes that the line drawn from himself, through the colour of his battalion, passes before the general line of colours, he may conclude that he himself is too much retired; but when such line passes behind the line of colours, he may conclude he is too much advanced, and will regulate himself accordingly.—The great object in movement is to have the whole of each battalion perpendicular to the direction it marches upon, the whole of the several battalions in one straight line, and their several marching directions parallel to each other.

5. As the movement of the *directing* battalion is infallible, and must be conformed to, and as the preservation of intervals is the first and principal attention in the march in line, it is to that object, and of consequence to the direction of the march, that the exertion of the commanding officer of each battalion must be turned, and therefore the preservation of his interval, from the directing hand, is what will determine and regulate every alteration he orders, and from the warning of his adjutant he will be always apprized when the interval begins to encrease or diminish. As to the other flank, he need never look towards it, that must necessarily follow and accommodate itself to the colours, under the correction of the major; but, previous to making any alteration, he is quickly and decidedly to observe whether the error arises in his own battalion, or whether it originates in one nearer than himself to that of direction, and which the battalion that alone has closed or opened to one flank will naturally remedy, by the counter movement, without affecting the order of the rest of the line.

6. The *regulating* battalion being supposed on the *right*, the commander of any other subordinate battalion, who finds himself closing the interval to the right, and that he ought to correct it, will instantly order the directing serjeant RIGHT SHOULDER FORWARD; or, if he is opening from the right, he will order LEFT SHOULDER FORWARD; these changes the serjeant makes by a small but gradual alteration in his own position, and of course must change

change his points of march towards the ordered hand---the degree of such change it is impossible to ascertain by words; but, by the subsequent movement of the battalion, the commander must farther correct it, if necessary; it must in all situations be very small, and will be proportionally greater or smaller, as made sooner or later after beginning to advance, or from the last time of correction.---If, for example, before he has marched 20 or 30 paces, the serjeant is ordered to change his direction, he may conclude that he had taken one considerably wide of the true perpendicular; whereas, if it is ordered, after he has advanced 100, or 150 paces, he may judge that he has deviated but little from it. When such change of direction has effected the first object, a very small *counter-change* will be generally required to preserve the distance gained and the required front.--The replacing officer and colour in the center of the battalion will, on each command of change given to the directing serjeant, make such relative movement as is necessary to correspond with his new position.

7. When a battalion is marching in a true direction, but that occasioned by the fault of others, an opening from, or closing towards, the regulating battalion comes from that hand and must be complied with, the word OBLIQUE (to right or left) is given; the battalion, without losing its parallel front, or eyes being altered, obliques, till it receives the word FOR-WARD, when the crossing of the step ceases; and the directing serjeant proceeds in full front, but in a line parallel to the one he quitted, and removed from it as far as the line did incline.

8. Should a battalion, from any partial reason, be behind or before the line.—It will receive the words STEP OUT, or STEP SHORT, and when the line is regained the word ORDINARY.

9. In *correcting* the movements of battalions in the line much judgement must be exercised, and wherever the fault does originate, the remedy should in general from thence begin.—The MARCH and HALT, and attention of each battalion in line is by its own colours, the commander alone is observant of the regulating one, and it is only from the centrical situation prescribed to him that he can truly adjudge and remedy the beginning of defects.—The major and adjutant, by being close to the rear rank, can keep up the flanks.

10. A battalion which is near to the point of appui, or the point of attack, will in general be the *regulating one*, therefore a flank battalion will commonly direct the movements of the line, and should the commander change it, he must announce such change.

11. In the course of marching should an *obstacle* break the center of the regulating battalion, immediately before such operation takes place, one of the battalions near it must be named to the adjoining ones, (but not necessarily to the rest of the line) as replacing it, and may continue to direct in future, or, at least, till the colours of the former one have, after passing the obstacle, again regained their true position in the original direction, and which, by the operation of detached persons, must have been truly found and traced, for them.—Whatever impediments present themselves to the march of the line will be avoided by the peculiar battalions, according to the modes already prescribed, and the openings made by such parts as are obliged to quit the line will be carefully preserved, in order to their re-entering into it as soon as the ground permits.

HALT. The *Line* thus marching in perfect order is at every moment prepared to receive the word HALT given to the regulating battalion, and in the most instantaneous manner circulated by the commanders of each other battalion, who, constantly looking towards the regulating one, can lose no time in its repetition.—The whole halt firm at the instant the word is given, and no dressing or correction of intervals should take place (till so directed,) but the line should be ready immediately, and without farther preparation, to commence its FIRE--The advanced serjeants on the halt fall back to the battalions.

S. 202. *When the Line is to Dress.*

If the *Commander* gives the word DRESS, it is immediately to commence from the center of each battalion, the men looking to their own colours, and the correcting officers lining them upon the colours of their next adjoining battalion; the platoon officer on the left of the Colours performs this operation for the left wing by placing his own platoon in the direction of the

DRESS. colour to his left; and the officer on the left of the right wing (or if there is none such the center directing serjeant) performs this for the right wing, by placing the platoon beyond him in a line with the next right colour: this done without delay, and without too much nicety, the wings of each battalion immediately conform to their two placed platoons, towards whom they are then looking.

By this means, when a single battalion halts, it is dressed on its right center company, and is therefore in a straight line.—Two battalions thus dressing from their several centers on each other's colours, and their outward wings conforming, must therefore be in a straight line.—When 3 or more battalions thus dress from the center of each on its next colour, if all the colours happen to have halted in a line, the general line will be straight; but if they have halted irregularly, then the portions of the line between each two colours will be straight and no flank will be exposed, which is giving it the best firing situation that dispatch and circumstances may allow.—In this operation, the two center dressers of each battalion must be very alert.

DRESS. But if the commander finds it necessary to give a more exact *dressing*, he immediately orders the first colour of one of the adjoining battalions to move out two or three paces, to be planted upright, and the bearer to FACE towards him.—He then himself advances a pace or two, and plants the colour of the regulating battalion, so that the line of the two prolonged shall occasion as little change as possible at the distant flanks, consistent with his views; the colours and flank officers of the other battalions instantly move into that line, all the colours facing to the regulating battalion, and the flank officers to their own colours. So many fixed points being thus ascertained, the platoon officers are immediately ordered to cover in it, facing to their own colour, and the men of each battalion to move up, as prescribed for the single battalion. The advantage that arises, if platoon officers can at once take their covering and distances from the left, has been already mentioned.

The line may also be correctly dressed, by one colour of a battalion near the directing one advancing a few paces; one colour of the directing battalion is then placed in the intended line: a colour from each other battalion immediately prolongs this line.—The grand divisions of each battalion are then successively dressed from their own colour upon the adjoining one.

With practice and alertness, the *dressing* of a line of very considerable extent may be quickly and readily accomplished; but the correction of an improper interval is not to be done without the side movement of every thing beyond it, which is no easy operation, and shews the necessity of the most indefatigable attention being given to this object; every increased interval presents a weak point, which is studiously to be avoided; and every ill-dressed line in movement will naturally create such intervals; nor is such a line in a proper situation to march up to an enemy whom its fire may have shaken, for disorder must attend its unconnected movements.

S. 203. *When the Line is to retire.*

When the line is to retire—the necessity of its being previously correctly dressed is full as essential as when it is to advance; if that preliminary is not taken care of, its movements must be disordered in proportion to its extent.—The several battalions will prepare for the retreat in the manner prescribed for the single one, by receiving the caution that *the line will retire*, and then by *facing* to the *right about*.

THE LINE WILL RETIRE. But, as there may not always be time to give it the wished-for degree of exactness before the *Retreat* begins, such aids may be applied as will greatly assist it in the course of its movement.—On the caution that THE LINE WILL RETIRE, the directing serjeants, &c. move to the rear 6 paces, taking their several directions as already prescribed, one of the colours next the regulating battalion will be considered as a fixed point, the colour of the regulating battalion will then be placed, so that the prolongation of the line which unites the (two

	two shall give the required front of the march; the other advanced serjeants and colours, without regard to distance from their respective battalions, will place themselves on this line.—The line then FACES to the RIGHT about.—At the word MARCH, the whole
R. ABOUT FACE. MARCH.	move on, the advanced serjeants preserving their position and line, and the battalions by degrees acquire their just distance of 6 paces from them.

When the *Line*, in moving to the front, *halts* and renews its march, without any previous dressing, the same method may, without delay, be employed to regulate its advanced serjeants, before the word MARCH is given,

HALT, FRONT.	*When the Line is to front*, each battalion receives the word HALT-FRONT, and immediately faces about; if it is then to move forward, the colours and serjeants are ordered to advance before the front rank, and are there correctly lined, ready to conduct its march.—But if it is to remain halted, the dressing is then ordered in the manner already prescribed.

1. Notwithstanding every direction that can be given for the *march* of the *line* in *front*, the success of its execution will totally depend on the complete dexterity, and training of its component parts; on the quick eye and ready decision of the commanders of the battalion; on the accurate cadence, length of step, and lines of march taken by the several advanced serjeants, and by the battalions; together with the perfect squareness of each individual's person; all these justly combined, are necessary to procure that precision which is not unattainable, and is so essential in this most difficult and important movement. For the halt taking place near to the enemy, and when the firing should begin, there is no time then to rectify errors, and redress the line, but every thing must remain in the situation of that instant; and though a line a little irregularly halted may not be deficient in fire, yet it will present exposed flanks of battalions, and will not be in a state to advance farther without disorder, or without first correcting its front, even should an enemy give way.

2. Although no *caution* should ever be given before the HALT, of the single battalion yet it might sometimes help to assist that of the line, if there was not a danger that, in permitting it, the march of the line would be habitually made with less accuracy, trusting to this correction, than if an instant *halt* was always to be expected; for, this ought to be required of a line of any given extent; and experience has shewn that it is to be attained when made with great attention, and on just principles.

3. *Echellons* of attack have generally a considerable front, as of three or four battalions, and equal to that, of the part of the body, against which they are directed.—But was a *Line*, in order to render its movements easier, to advance up to an enemy's line in echellon of battalion, retired five or six paces behind each other, although perhaps the intervals might be taken with sufficient correctness, yet in such situation flanks would be liable to be thrown up, the general line not so well attained, and the battalions as they halted would be exposed to an oblique, as well as direct fire, till the others came up.---The first part of a movement in front may be made in *Echellon* of battalions, but the *Line* should be completed before the last steps of it approach near to an enemy; for, nothing can then supply the place of, or be depended on, but the accurate *March* in *Line*, acquired from attentive habit, and just training.

4. *A change* in the direction of a line, when the whole is in movement, can never be considerable; and must be made gradually, with great attention, and on the same principles as those of the battalion. (S. 169.) — Change of direction.

5. When the line is advancing in full front, or in Echellon, or any considerable distance, the *Music* of one regulating battalion may at intervals be permitted to play for a few seconds at a time, and the drums of the other battalions may be allowed occasionally to roll. — Music.

6. Although a single battalion may, by opening its companies and files, *from* 3 *deep form* 2 *deep*, by introducing its rear rank into the other two, yet a considerable line posted, which is to be lengthened out to one or both flanks by its rear rank, must to greater advantage perform such operation, by each company wheeling the sub-divisions of its rear rank backward, and facing to the hand they are to march to; the last rank of each company closes up to its first; the sub-divisions of each battalion move up to open distances from their — Rear rank lengthening out a line.

respective

respective head ones, and from each other; officers from the rear are appointed to command them; those of each, or of every two battalions being considered as a battalion, they march on in column and prolong the line. By this mode of lengthening out the line, the two front ranks remain undisturbed, and they protect the movement which is made unseen behind them.

S. 204. *When a considerable Line has to pass a Bridge or Defile.*

Line passing defiles.

1. It will proceed in the manner prescribed for (and as if it was) a single battalion, in passing to front or rear.

2. When there are several bridges or defiles to be at once passed, the line will be divided into relative portions, each composing a passing column.

3. When such movements are performed in presence of an enemy, the safety and protection of them by artillery and posted troops, is a matter of previous disposition:

Advancing lines.

4. As the lines of infantry are generally formed not nearer than 12 or 1500 paces from an enemy's position, unless peculiar circumstances of ground favour a closer approach, there will often therefore be such obstacles to moving on, as besides the partial ones occurring to parts of battalions, may oblige large portions of the line to be again broken—This becomes a matter of particular arrangement, in which the great object is the subsequent quick formation of the troops, and where considerable close columns, or redoubled lines of battalions at small distances will be employed—Such situations are always hazardous if the enemy is so posted as to profit of the movement of passing, or if favourable ground, and a superior artillery, do not oblige him to keep at a considerable distance.

Columns of March.

5. Where defiles are to be passed in approaching the position of an enemy, the mouths of them must be strongly occupied; the columns of march must pass on the greatest front they will allow of, be previously arranged, well closed up, and ready to deploy in an instant.

Retiring Lines.

6. When in presence of an enemy, a retiring line is to break, and to pass defiles in one or more columns, much steadiness and disposition are required.---The line approaches near to the defiles before it fronts; the object is to pass quick, but without disorder; commanding grounds are previously occupied, and flanks are covered; if bridges are to be passed, protecting Artillery will be placed on the other side.

S. 205. *When the line advances or retires by half Battalions, and fires.*

1. *If the line is in march and advancing.*---On the order from the Officer commanding the line, the left wings HALT, and the right ones continue to march 15 paces, at which instant the word MARCH being given to the left wings, the right at the same time are ordered to HALT, FIRE, and load, during which the left march on and pass them, till the right wings, being loaded and shouldered, receive the word MARCH, on which the left ones HALT, FIRE, &c. and thus they alternately proceed.

2. *If the line is in march and retiring.*---The right wings are ordered to HALT FRONT, and when the left ones have gained 15 paces, and receive the word HALT FRONT, the right wings are instantly ordered to FIRE, load, FACE ABOUT, and march 15 paces beyond the left ones, where they receive the word HALT FRONT, on which the left wings FIRE, &c. and thus alternately proceed.

General attentions.

3. In addition to the battalion directions (S. 177.) there must be a regulating battalion named, by the half battalions of which each line will move, halt, and fire. The commander of each line will be with such half battalion, and in giving his several commands must have an attention to the general readiness of the line, especially after loading, that the whole are prepared to step off together at the word MARCH. The firing of the advanced wing succeeds the MARCH, or the HALT, FRONT, of the retired wing instantly; and each half battalion fires independent and quick, so that no unnecessary pauses being made betwixt the

the firing words, the fire of the line should be that of a volley as much as possible; and the whole being thereby loaded together, will be ready for the next command of movement? — In these firings of the line advancing or retiring, the two first ranks will fire standing, and the rear rank support their arms.

4. In this manner also may the alternate battalions of a line advance or retire, and when the whole are to form, and that the last line moves up to the first, every previous help of advanced persons will be given to ensure its correctness.

S. 206. *Firing in Line.*

Object of Fire.

1. The chief object of fire against cavalry is to keep them at a distance, and to deter them from the attack; as their movements are rapid, a reserve is always kept up.--- But when fire commences against infantry, it cannot (consistent with order, and other circumstances) be too heavy or too quick, while it lasts, and till the enemy is beaten or repulsed.

2. The fire of 3 ranks standing is hardly, with our present arms, to be required, especially if the ground should be broken, and that the Soldiers are loaded with their knapsacks.

Defensive fire.

3. Where Infantry are posted on heights that are to be defended by the fire of musquetry, the front rank will kneel, that one third of the fire that may be given should not be lost, for otherwise the rear rank in such situation could not sufficiently incline their pieces to raise the slope. As soldiers generally present too high, and as fire is of the greatest consequence to troops that are on the defensive, and who are posted if possible on commanding grounds, the habitual mode of firing should therefore be rather at a low level than a high one; and the fire of the front rank kneeling, being the most efficacious as being the most raising, should not be dispensed with when it can be safely and usefully employed.

In line advancing.

4. When infantry marches in line to attack an enemy, and in advancing makes use of its fire; it is perhaps better to fire the 2 first ranks only standing, reserving the third, than to make the front rank kneel, and to fire the whole; but volleys fired at a considerable distance, or on a retiring enemy, may be given by the three ranks, the front one kneeling.

Platoon firing.

5. A line posted, or arriving at a fixed situation, will fire by *platoons*, each battalion independant; and such firing generally commencing from the center of each.—The first fire of each battalion will be regular, and establish intervals; after the first fire each platoon shall continue to fire as soon as it is loaded, independent and as quick as it can, till the battalion or line is ordered to cease.

File firing.

6. Behind a parapet, hedge or abbatis, the two first ranks only can fire, and such fire may be *file firing*, deliberate and cool, the 2 men of the same file always firing together: It may begin from the right or left of platoons, and should be taught in situations adapted to it, not in open ground.—Should the parapet, hedge, or abbatis be but little raised, platoon firing may be used.

Oblique firing.

7. *Oblique firing* by battalions is advantageous on many occasions, as when it is proper, or that time does not allow to give an oblique direction to part of a line, or that their fire can in this manner be thrown against the opening of a defile, the flanks of a column, or against cavalry or infantry that direct their attack on some particular battalion or portion of the line.

Regularity of fire.

8. As long as the fire by battalion, half battalion, or companies, can be kept up regular, it is highly advantageous, and can be at any time stopped; but, should file-firing be allowed, and once begun, unless troops are exceeding cool and well disciplined, it will be difficult to make it finish, and to make them advance in order.

9. When a line halts at its points of firing no time is to be lost in scrupulous dressing, and the firing is instantly to commence.--- But a line that halts and is not to fire, or when its firing ceases after the halt, may immediately be ordered, to dress from colours to colours.

10. The attention of the officers and non-com-missioned officers of the rear to the locking up of the ranks in firing, cannot be too often repeated.

S. 207. *When the Square or Oblong is composed of more than one Battalion.*

Fig. 100. B. 1. Two battalions may form column of companies, each behind its inward flank one, and close the interval between them. The oblong when formed will be six deep, if the companies are at half distance and wheel outwards by sub-divisions, except the 2 first and 2 last which close and face outwards: The grenadier and light companies may be considered as making no part of the oblong, but be applied according to circumstances.

2. If a greater degree of space is required in the interior of the figure, the side columns will be of sub divisions, and formed behind the 2d or 3d company from the inward flank; a proportional number of the last companies will compose the rear face; the oblong when formed will be 3 deep, and the grenadier and light companies will be in the interior, to be applied as is found necessary.

Fig. 108. C. 110. C. 3. *If 3 or more battalions are to form a square or oblong.*—It depends on circumstances what part of the line, whether flank or center, composes the front face, but the line is sub-divided accordingly, and the parts of it protecting each other in the movement, march in echellon or column to take up their different situations.—The flank faces when the square marches will move in columns of sub-divisions.—*When the square is halted*, the 2 first sub divisions of each face wheel back the quarter circle, and obtain a cross fire at the angles. The grenadier and light companies are ready to reinforce any particular part. *When the retiring square* has arrived at a point where it can diminish in safety, the rear face may halt and front inwards; the side faces continue their march in column, and their heads if necessary unite; the front face, halts, fronts, when it arrives at the rear face; that face then retires in columns, followed by the front face, which in this operation is protected by such posted companies as make the rear of the whole. *If the retiring square* arrives at a favourable position, as a wood, heights, &c. which it is to occupy, the flank faces extend along it in columns of subdivisions, protected by the other 2 faces, which afterwards take up their own ground. These operations being supposed of necessity, will invert parts of the line, which must be afterwards remedied as opportunity offers.

4. *The square or oblong* is a shape which infantry have at all times taken, when obliged in open ground to march in the face of cavalry.—Though the mode of placing one or two battalions in this manner may be prescribed, yet the various formations, of which a greater number are susceptible, depend on ground, the position of the troops, the movements of the enemy, &c. and must be made in consequence of the local orders of the commander. It is therefore from circumstances, and from the flexibility of the military order; that in an instant, he will determine into what shape the body which he conducts must be thrown. ——Should such bodies be at the same time liable to the united attacks of a very superior infantry or artillery; such situation would be critical indeed, and from which nothing but the most determined resistance could extricate them.

CHEQUERED RETREAT OF THE LINE.

1. *All manœuvres of a Corps retiring*, are infinitely more difficult to be performed with order, than those in advancing.—They must be more or less accomplished by chequered movements; one body by its numbers or position, facing and protecting the retreat of another; and if the enemy presses hard, the whole must probably front in time and await him; as the ground narrows or favours different parts of the corps must double; mouths of defiles and advantageous posts must be possessed; by degrees the different bodies must diminish their front, and throw themselves into column of march when it can be done with safety.

2. *The chequered retreat*, by the alternate battalions or half battalions of a line going to the rear, while the others remain halted, cover them, and in their turn retire in the same manner, is the quickest mode of refusing a part of a corps to the enemy, and at the same time protecting its movement, as long as it continues to be made nearly parallel to the first position.

Fig. 126. 3. If six battalions are in line, the 2d division or the three even ones (2d, 4th, 6th) counting from the right, will go to the right about, retire in line about 200 paces, and then halt front, having carefully preserved their intervals.—The two outward battalions of the retiring

retiring ones will each, when it first faces about, form a flank of its outward platoon.—As soon as the second division begins to retreat, all the battalions of the first one will immediately throw back their wing platoons 1-8th of the circle, and thereby when necessary procure a cross fire in the intervals, and along the front.

4. When the 2d division fronts, the first one moves up its flanks and is ordered to RETIRE through the intervals, and to form at an equal distance in the rear: As soon as the first division arrives near the second one; that second one begins to *fire* by platoons standing in the same manner as the first hath already done.---The wing platoons of all the second division battalions, place themselves on the flank, as soon as the first division hath passed them, and remain so, till their turn of retiring is again come.

5. *During the retreat* should favourable heights or situations present themselves to either of the divisions, they should be for the time occupied by the most contiguous battalions, who will halt, or incline as is necessary, without scrupulously adhering in that case to the alignment, or intervals; and any battalions that may happen to possess an advanced height, should throw their wings back, and aligne them on their neighbouring battalions, that they may be flanked by such battalions.

6. The retiring division will move by a directing battalion, and any faults in the halt of the line can easily and must be corrected, before the other division arrives at it.

7. The second retiring division having the intervals of the first to pass and to move on, as a guide, can have no difficulty in its movement or direction.

8. During the retreat should any of the flank platoons be ordered to preserve their flank position, such platoons will then march in file.

9. The operation is repeated till the commanding officer halts and fronts a retiring division in the intervals of a standing one.

10. *In the course of the chequered retreat, a position oblique to the original one may be taken up.*—The division of the line which is to retire, after facing to the rear, will immediately wheel up its platoons ( ) paces, according to the degree of obliquity which will be required for the line, it will then march on in this echellon position, and, when ordered, form, as before directed (S. 157.) to the leading battalion, and front: The other division of the line, when it is to retire, will perform the same movement, the battalions forming in their proper intervals, and completing the line as they severally arrive at it.—Or the retiring division, after facing to the rear, will march on, till arrived at the distance where one flank is to be posted, it will there halt, and upon that flank instantly make a change of position by the echellon march, and then front: The other division will then retire in the same manner, till it arrives at the posted one, and it will there instantly commence its change of position, take its place in the intervals, and front in full line, —From this situation the parallel retreat may continue to be made, or a new oblique direction be again required. Fig. 126. B.

11. In situations of retreat not very critical, the oblique position which the retiring division takes up, may be quickest and easiest gained by the filing of platoons.

12. *In the chequered retreat,* the following rules must be observed.---The battalions of the division nearest the enemy, will form flanks as soon as there is nothing in their front to cover them; but the other divisions will have no flanks except to the outward battalion of each. The battalions always pass by their proper intervals, and it is a rule in retiring, that the left of each shall always pass the right of the neighbouring one. —Whatever advantages the ground offers are to be seized, without being too critically tied down to intervals, or to the determined distance of each retreat.——The division next the enemy must pass in front, through the intervals of the division immediately behind, and any battalion that finds it necessary must incline for that purpose.——The retiring division must step out, and take up no more time than what is necessary to avoid confusion.——The division nearest the enemy *fires* by platoons standing: the flanks of its battalions only fire when the enemy attempts to push through the intervals; when that division retires, it fires on skirmishers by men detached from its light company if present, or from platoons formed of rear rank men of one or two of the companies, and placed behind the flanks of the battalions. But should any of its battalions be obliged to halt and to fire, a shorter step must then be taken by the line; and should the enemy threaten to enter at any of its intervals, besides the fire of its flanks, such platoons of the line behind it, as can with safety, must give it support.

13. *If a line with reserves,* finds it necessary to retreat in face of an enemy.——The alternate battalions, and the reserves will retire 200 or 300 paces, and then front. The other

other battalions will then retire: and when they join the firſt, the reſerves alſo will again march, and front at like diſtances, the reſerves always leading the retreat.——This will continue, till it is proper or ſafe to break into column of march; the cannon and ſkirmiſhers of the whole, covering the front of the retiring line.

14. *Two full lines* will generally make their retreat by paſſing alternately through each other.——Or they may retire by the chequered movement of each line.

15. *If by the chequered movement*; and that the diſtance between the lines is 300 paces, each will give to its ſecond diviſion 150 paces for its retreat, and thus divide the diſtance.—When the ſecond diviſion of each line hath retired and fronted; the firſt diviſion of the firſt line will retire through the intervals of its own ſecond diviſion; it will then when it arrives at the firſt diviſion of the ſecond line, paſs by files through the battalions of that diviſion; and in the ſame manner will it paſs through the intervals of the next diviſion; and when 150 paces in the rear of the whole, the platoons will halt front, and wheel up into line.——The 2d diviſion of the firſt line having prepared its flanks, begins to retire, as ſoon as its own firſt diviſion hath paſſed the firſt of the ſecond line: That ſecond diviſion will march through the intervals of that firſt; it will then proceed and paſs by files through the battalions of the ſecond diviſion of the ſecond line; it will continue in that ſhape, and paſs through the intervals of its own 1ſt diviſion, which is by this time re-formed, and when at its 150 paces in the rear of the whole, the platoons will halt front, and wheel up into line.—The diviſions of the ſecond line proceed in their turn, exactly in the ſame manner.

PASSAGE OF LINES.

In narrow grounds, where there are redoubled lines, and in many other ſituations, it becomes neceſſary for one battalion to PASS directly through another, in marching either to front or rear.—But this muſt particularly happen, when a firſt line, which has ſuffered in action, retires through, and makes place for a ſecond line which has come forward to ſupport it;—or—the ſecond line remaining poſted, when the firſt falls back, and retires through it, and thus alternately, till a ſafe poſition is attained.

Paſſage of a firſt line, when the ſecond line advances.

Should the ſecond line be ordered to advance, and occupy the ground which the firſt is to quit.——As ſoon as it has approached within 20 paces, and halts, the *front line* battalions receive the word paſs to the rear; each platoon is ordered to face to the right, and diſengage its head: at the word march, each platoon moves off in file, at a quick ſtep to the rear, and paſſes ſtraight through the ſecond line.—The officers of the retiring line having been cautioned that they are again to form at 150, or 200 paces from the other line, and having begun to take and count them from the paſſing of that line, will accordingly be ordered to halt and front; the officers place themſelves on the pivot flanks, take their juſt diſtances, and aligne to the front of the column, on the three or four firſt leading platoons, which will be inſtantly arranged in a true line by a mounted officer.

Fig. 127. A.

Wherever the heads of the retreating files preſent themſelves, the officers of the ſecond line cauſe four files of their platoons to fall back, and again to reſume their places when the others have paſſed. During the march to the rear, the heads of files muſt preſerve their accurate diſtances from the left, that when the column halts and fronts, it may immediately be in order to wheel up into line.

Paſſage of a firſt line, when the ſecond line is poſted.

If the ſecond remains poſted.—The *firſt* retires in front, till within 20 paces of the ſecond.—At the word paſs by files, each officer turns his platoon to the left—marches quick in file through the ſecond line, and halts fronts, at his determined number of paces from that line, by word of command.—The pivots of the column are dreſſed, and the platoons wheel up into line.

Re-forming the firſt line by a flank Battalion.

When a Line of ſeveral battalions hath paſſed in this manner, and fronted in column, it is neceſſary to dreſs their pivots correctly, before wheeling up into line.——The commander of the head battalion will inſtantly place the pivots of his three firſt platoons in a true direction, and order the officers of his other platoons to line on them, himſelf remaining with the head platoon at the point d'appui, will ſee that this is correctly done.——The firſt battalion thus ſteadied, will become a ſufficient direction for the ſecond, and every other one to prolong it by their adjutants; and this operation, though ſucceſſive from platoon to platoon, and from battalion to battalion, may be performed quickly and correctly; if the adjutants are timeouſly detached, and if the head of the column is quickly arranged,

ſhould

Should it be thought proper to give the *alignement from a central* (c), rather than a flank battalion.——In this case, after halting and fronting, the platoon pivots of the given battalion are from its head accurately lined by its commander, in the true direction.---This battalion being placed, from which distances and dressing are taken, the others will instantly proceed to line their pivot flanks upon it: those that are behind it will readily do this; those that are before it will find more difficulty, as they must take their distances from the rear;—to facilitate this, their platoon officers will face to the directing battalion, and will then successively take their distances and covering from their then front; as soon as each has acquired his true position, he will face about, and make his platoon join to and dress to him.—The line will then be ready to form by wheeling up to the pivot flank.

Re-forming the first line on a central battalion.

Fig. 127.

Should a new position (D), not parallel, be taken by the passing battalions.——The commander, with his two leading platoons, will first enter it, and direct the others to regulate their flanks by them; and if several battalions are passing the second line, the NEW alignement is thus made easier for them.

First line reforms in an oblique position.

Fig. 127.

When a height (E), in the rear is to be *crowned* by a retiring line.—Each officer must not dress exactly to the platoon that precedes him, but in joining it, he must *halt*, and arrange his own in such a manner, that the SLOPE of the rising can be entirely seen and commanded, which is here the great object, and would not be attained, if the troops were to adhere to a straight line.

Crowning a height.

Fig. 127.

A line which hath passed, will often before forming, throw back a *wing*,—in order to occupy a particular position,—to prevent the enemy's designs on that wing; or at least to make him take a greater detour to effect it,—or---that he may be obliged to aligne his own on a height which is occupied, and from which he may be flanked.

When the movement is foreseen, and according to the wing which is to be refused, should the platoons of the line pass. ——— If the left is to be posted, and the right refused, the platoons may pass from their *left*, the column will thereby have its left in *front*, will be more readily directed on the point d'appui, and the preservation of distances will be facilitated, as they will then be taken from the front. If the right is to be posted, the platoons may pass from their right.

The line (A B,) is here supposed to *refuse* its four right battalions (D,) after having retired and passed as a column with its left in front. ——All the battalions of the line to the left of the fourth, proceed as already directed, and take up their line from the left or head battalion, which, in the course of the movement, is conducted to the point d'appui, where its head is to rest, and from whence the direction of formation is to be given; but the left of the fourth battalion becomes a new point d'appui, upon which the four battalions of the right are thrown back into any situation which the nature of the ground, and the views of the commander may require.

Refusing a wing.

Fig. 128.

It may happen where the *passing* line is to *post* one flank, and *refuse* the other, that the officers will have their distances to take from behind; the original remedy for this inconvenience has been shewn; another also may be readily applied, which is to halt the whole, at any time after passing, and to countermarch each platoon, which will then cause the future formation to be taken from the front of the column.

A retiring line may also *refuse* a wing, by forming in line very soon after passing, and then taking up an oblique position to the rear, by the echellon march, or some other of the modes already prescribed.

OF SECOND LINES.

1. NO considerable body should ever be formed, without a proportion of it being placed in *reserve* or in *second line*, and more or less strong, according to circumstances.---The movements of such second line will always correspond to those of the first, and it will always preserve its parallelism, and distance.---If the first line makes a flank, or central change of position, the second must make a change also on such point as will bring it into its relative situation.

2. The

2. The march of the ſecond line in front, is regulated by its own diviſion or battalion of direction, which moves relatively to that of the firſt line. ——— In forming in line it will march upon its own points which are parallel to, and aſcertained in conſequence of those of the firſt.

3. When the lines break in columns to the front; the ſecond will generally follow thoſe of the firſt. — When the march is to the flanks; the ſecond line will compoſe a ſeparate column, or columns. — When the march is to the rear; the ſecond line will lead in columns.

4. The diſtance betwixt the lines, may be in general ſuppoſed equal to the front of two battalions, and an interval.

5. Second lines are ſeldom compoſed of as many battalions as the firſt; they are often divided into diſtinct bodies, covering ſeparate parts of the firſt line.

6 Second lines will not always remain extended, they will often be formed in column of battalions, or of greater numbers, ready to be moved to any point where their aſſiſtance is neceſſary.

7. Whenever the firſt line breaks and manœuvres by its right to face to the left, or by its left to face to the right.... The movements of the ſecond line are free and unembarraſſed, and it may turn round the manœuvre in flank of the firſt line, and take its new poſition behind it, by extending itſelf parallel to that direction, how oblique ſoever it may be.

8. The central movement generally required from the ſecond line to conform to that of the firſt, is equivalent to that line marching in two columns of platoons, from near the center obliquely to the front, and from that ſituation forming to both flanks.

9. The movements of the central columns being well underſtood.... Thoſe of the battalions of the wings, are ſimilar in the two lines.

10. The officer commanding the ſecond line, muſt always be properly informed of the nature of the change to be made by the firſt, that he may readily determine his correſponding movements.

11. It requires much attention.... To conduct heads of battalion columns of both lines nearly parallel to their lateral ones, and perpendicularly or diagonally to front or rear, according to the nature of the movement... To determine with preciſion, and in due time, their points in the new line, that wavering and uncertainty of march may be avoided... In great movements to allow the ſoldier every facility of motion, without encreaſing the diſtances of diviſions; and to require the moſt exact attention on entering the new line and in forming.... To avoid obſtacles in the courſe of marching, but as ſoon as poſſible to re-enter the proper path of the column... While out of that path, the colours of that battalion column may be lowered, (as a mark for the neighbouring column, not to be then entirely regulated, by it,) and again advanced when it regains its proper ſituation.

12. In many caſes, and where great concert of movement is not required, a ſecond line may form battalion columns at half diſtance, each behind its flank neareſt to the new poſition, and relative points being prepared, each will march up, and prolong the line.

13. All the battalions of a ſecond line, muſt at the completion of every change of poſition, find themſelves placed in the ſame relative ſituation with reſpect to the firſt, as they were in before the commencement of the movement.

14. All changes of poſition of a firſt line are made according to one of the modes already preſcribed; in general in critical ſituations they are made on a fixed flank, or central point, and by the echellon march of platoons.. -- But the movements of a ſecond line often protected, more complicated, and embracing more ground, are made by the march of battalion columns regulated by a certain determined diviſion of the line.

15. In all caſes where a change of poſition is made on a flank or central point of the *firſt line*, the movement of its *correſponding* point of the ſecond line determines the new relative ſituation of that ſecond line.

Fig. 117. 129.

16. *To find this point*, it is neceſſary to premiſe, that if a circle is deſcribed from any point A. of a firſt line AE, with a radius equal to the diſtance betwixt the two lines; then its correſponding point a, in the ſecond line, will be always in the circumference of that circle, at ſuch place as the ſecond line becomes a tangent to the circle.—Should the firſt line therefore make a change of poſition AR, either on a flank or central point A; its *correſponding* point a, at that time in the ſecond line, will move ſo as ſtill to preſerve and be at ... its relative

relative situation a, 2; and by the movement and halt of that part, preceded by the one d, of *intersection*, every other part of the second line, either by following them, or by yielding from them, is regulated and directed.---Betwixt the old and new situation of the correspon-ding point, a, and equi-distant from each lines the point d, where the old and new positions of the second line *intersect*, and which is a most material one in the movement of that line.

S. 208. *When two Lines change Position on a central point of the first Line.*

1. A. is the point on which the change is to be made; a. is obviously its corresponding point in the second line whose distance in paces is known.--The direction of the first line AB, being ascertained, it becomes immediately necessary to mark the *corresponding* point a, 2. in the second line, and also the point of *intersection* d, that the prolongation of that line may be also determined.--From the point A, therefore, and in a direction perpendicular to the new line, a person accurately paces the known distance between the two lines, and halts at a, 2; and from thence observes by his eye, the perpendicular to the line which he has just paced, and also its intersection with the second line, which gives the platoon of point d, together with the direction of the new second line.——The points a, 2. and d, being thus fixed, the lines proceed to make their movement, viz. the first line by the echellon march (S. 195); the second line B. breaks inward to the platoon d; that platoon moves its pivot flank along the new line followed by all those betwixt it and a, till a, arrives at the point a, 2.---The other platoons and battalions of the second line move relatively to the part a, d, the whole performing the precise operation already detailed in the change of position of the line on a moveable central point, (S. 185.) Fig. 129.

2. But in order to accelerate the movement of the second line in *central* changes; a platoon or flank point o, as much beyond a, as a, is removed from d, may be taken; this point is evidently the one, which will rest at the point of intersection d, when a, is arrived and halted at a, 2. —— As soon therefore as the points o, d, are ascertained, and without waiting for the progressive movement of this center part of the line, every thing that is in rear of o, may march and form in new position, regarding o, 2, as its leading flank point, and every thing that fronts to d, regarding d, 2, as its leading flank point, will march and form upon it, in the new line accordingly. (S. 186.)

3. In order the better to ascertain the parallel direction of the new second line, 2 persons separated from each other about 100 paces, may set out from different points of the new first line, and accurately pace the known distance of the second; when they halt, the line of their prolongation gives the new direction, and also the interfection of the second lines. —— Or if the first line points on any very distant object, the second line from the point a, 2, will be readily judged to pass a very little behind that object. Fig. 129.

S. 209. *When two Lines change position forward, on a flank of the first Line.*

The direction of the first line being ascertained, that the line will march into it by the echellon march, S. 195. In the mean time the corresponding flank point a, 2, in the new second line having been taken, and also the point d. in the intersection of the two lines; these points serve as the base of formation.——The second line will break into open column, facing to the platoon d, of intersection; the whole will proceed as in S. 185. that platoon marching along the new line till it arrives at a, 2: and when the other battalions which have moved forward are anew arranged in open column, they wheel up into line. Fig. 130

S. 210.

S. 210. *When two Lines change poſition backward, on a flank of the firſt Line.*

Fig. 131. The direction of the firſt line being aſcertained, that line will march into it, by the Echellon movement to the rear, S. 195.—The correſponding points a, 2, and d, in the new ſecond line ſerving as a baſe of formation, having been aſcertained as well as the point o, that line breaks into open column facing to the point of interſection: The part of the line between a, and o, marches on to the point of interſection, and from thence prolongs the new line: The part of the line behind o, regarding d, as its leading flank point of formation, will march and form upon it, in the new line accordingly. S. 186.

S 211. *When two formed Lines wheel into open Column, march to a flank, change direction, and take up a new Poſition.*

Fig. 132. 1. *If the new poſition is a retired one.*—Both lines wheel into open column (ſuppoſe the left in front) and move on.—C. is a point where the head of the firſt line is to change its direction into that of C. D. by wheeling on its pivot flank: The leader of the 2d line being apprized of this point, ſends forward to aſcertain his correſponding point c. and his parallel direction c. d.; theſe two points become the baſe of formation for the ſecond line, and d. is in the interſection of the old and new lines.—Both columns proceed in their firſt direction, and when the firſt line arrives at C. the head wheels on its pivot into the direction C. D. followed by the reſt of its column; but the ſecond line then changing its head on the point c. moves towards it, there to enter its correſponding direction.—The firſt line halts, and ſuch parts of it as are in the new direction remain ſo; while the rear of the column, by the movement of S. 182. gains the new direction, and by wheeling up forms in line; or, if the ground permits, it enters the new line by the Echellon march of S. 158. each diviſion firſt counter-marching by files, and then facing about, ſo that its rear rank may lead.

2. When the firſt line halts, if the head diviſion of the ſecond line *has not entered* the new direction, it ſtill moves on to its point of entry c. prolongs the line till it arrives behind its correſponding point A. 2. of the firſt line, it then halts, and alſo all ſuch others as have arrived in the new direction, while the rear of the column, which ſince the halt of the firſt line has been gradually (by obliquing) and regularly throwing itſelf to the left, places itſelf in open column on the new direction, and wheels up into line.

3. When the firſt line halts, if the head of the ſecond *has entered* the direction, it moves on till it arrives behind its correſponding point of the firſt one, and the rear of the column obliques to avoid interfering with, and to make place for the forming of the firſt line.—When the head halts, ſuch part of the column as is not in the new direction, gains it by the movement of S. 182.

4. If the head of the firſt line when it arrives at E, *waits* till the ſecond line arrives at the correſponding point c. they will then proceed equally.—Or, the march of the ſecond line may begin proportionally ſooner than that of the firſt.

Fig 133 5. *If the new poſition is an advanced one.*—The firſt line changes its direction at C. by a wheel to the reverſe hand into C. D. marches on till the head is halted; ſuch part of the column as is not in the new line enters it, by the diviſions of the column wheeling back into echellon, and then marching up ſucceſſively into line.—The ſecond line which has aſcertained its correſponding points c. d. moves on, enters the new direction at d. by a wheel to its reverſe hand, and prolongs the line till it arrives at its flank point, when the whole halt, and the battalions of ſuch part of the column as are not then in the new direction, gain it by the movement of S. 182.

6. The ſecond line muſt take care not to paſs its point d. but after arriving at it muſt wait till the head of the firſt line, which has more ground to go over, arrives equal with it in the new line; it will then move on.

OF THE COLUMN OF ROUTE.

1. The column of route formed by divisions of the battalion, is the foundation of all great distant movements, and even of evolutions and manœuvres.—It is in that order that the battalion should at any time be permitted to move; that the columns of an army should perform their marches; that an enemy should be approached; and that safety can be insured to the troops in their transitions from one point to another.—All marches are therefore made in column of divisions of the line, and never on a less front than six files where the formation is 3 deep, or 4 files where it is 2 deep, nor does any advantage arise from such column, if it is an open column, exceeding 16 or 18 file in front, where a considerable space is to be gone over. By companies or other divisions.

2. At no time whatever ought a column of manœuvre or of route to occupy a greater extent of ground in marching than what is equal to its front when in order of battle; no situation can require it as an advantage.—Therefore, the marching of great bodies in file, where improper extension is unavoidable, must be looked upon as an unmilitary practice, and only to be had recourse to when unvoidably necessary.—Where woods, inclosures, and bad or narrow routes absolutely require a march in file, there is no remedy for the delay in forming, and man may be obliged to come up after man; but these circumstances, which should be regarded as exceptions from the primary and desired order of march on a greater front, should tend the more to enforce the great principle of preventing improper distances, and of getting out of so weak a situation as soon as the nature of the ground will allow of the front of the march being increased. Disadvantages of file marching.

3. In common route marching, the battalion or more considerable column may be carried on at a natural pace of about 75 steps in a minute, or near two miles and a half in an hour: The attention of the soldier is allowed to be relaxed, he moves without the restraint of cadence of step, or carried arms; rear ranks are opened to one or two paces; files are loosened but never confounded; in no situation is the ordered distance between divisions ever to be increased, and the proper flank officers and under-officers remain answerable for them. Rate and circumstances of march.

4. If the column is halted, the whole must be put in march at the same time.—The movement of the head division must be steady and equal; the descending of heights must not be hurried, that the part of the column ascending may properly keep up.--Alterations occasioned by the windings of the route are executed without losing distance.--Soldiers are not to break to avoid mud or small spots of water.—The pivots must trace out such a path for themselves as will best avoid small obstructions, and the men of the divisions will open from, and not press upon their pivots.—When platoon officers are permitted to be mounted, each will remain on the flank of his division watching over its exactness, and that the proper distance of march is kept by the flank pivot under the officer appointed to preserve it. Attentions in march.

5. Where the arrival of a column at a given point is to be perfectly punctual, in that case the distance being known, the head must move at an equal cadenced step, and the rear must conform; and a person, expressly appointed, will, at the head of the column, take such step as the nature of the route shall permit the column to comply with.

6. Nothing so much fatigues troops in a considerable column, and is more to be avoided than an inequality of march.—One great reason is, that the rear of the column frequently and unnecessarily deviates from the line which its head traces out; and in endeavouring to regain that line, and their first distances, the divisions must of course run or stop, and again take up their march.—It is unnecessary to attempt the same scrupulous observances in common route marching, as when going to enter into the alignment; but even a general attention to this circumstance will in that case prevent unnecessary winding in the march, which tends to prolong it, and to harrass the soldier.

7. When the probable required formation of the line will be to a flank, then the column of march, is an open one, and, except the cannon, no impediment or circumstance whatever must be allowed betwixt the divisions or in the intervals of battalions.--When cannon can possibly move on the flank of the battalion they ought, and mounted officers or bat-horses must not be permitted betwixt the divisions.—If the probable formation may be to the front, then distances are more closed up, and bat-horses, &c. may be allowed betwixt the brigades of a column, but not betwixt the battalions of a brigade.

8. It is always time well employed to halt the head of a confiderable column, and enlarge an opening, or repair a bad ftep in the road, rather than to diminifh the front, or lengthen out the line of march. No individual is to prefume to march on a lefs front than what the leader of the column directs, and all doublings muft therefore come from the head only.—The prefervation of the original front of march, on all occafions, is a point of the higheft confequence, and it is a moft meritorious fervice in any officer to prevent all unneceffary doublings, or to correct them as foon as made; no advantage can arife from them, and therefore each commanding officer, when he arrives near the caufe, fhould be affured, that it is neceffary before he permits his battalion fo to double: On all occafions he fhould continuehis march on the greateft front, that, without crowding, the road or overtures will allow, although the regiment or divifions before himmay be marching on a narrower front.

Overtures of march.

9. All opening made for the march of a column fhould be fufficient for the greateft front on which it is to march, they fhould all be of the fame width, otherwife each fmaller one becomes a defile.

Avoiding of difficulties in the march.

10. At all points of increafing or diminifhing the front of the march, an intelligent Officer, per battalion or brigade, fhould be ftationed to fee that it is performed with celerity; and the commandant of a confiderable column fhould have conftant reports and infpections made that the column is moving with proper regularity; he fhould have Officers in advance to apprize him of difficulties to be avoided, or obftacles to be paffed, and fhould himfelf apply every proper means to obviate fuch as may occur in the march. (And at no time are fuch helps more neceffary than when regiments are acting in line on broken ground, and when their movements are combined with thofe of others.)—When the column arrives near its object of formation or monœuvre, the fricteft attention of Officers and men is to be refumed, and each individual is to be at his poft.

11. The great principle on all occafions of diminifhing or increafing the front of the column in march is, that fuch part as doubles or forms up fhall flacken or quicken its pace, as is neceffary to conform to the part which has no fuch operation to perform, but which continues its uniform march, without the leaft alteration, as if no fuch procefs was going on; and if this is obferved, diftances can never be loft, or the column lengthened out. Unlefs the unremitting attention and intelligence of Officers commanding battalions and their divifions are given to this object, diforder and conftant ftops and runs take place in the column; the foldier is improperly and unneceffarily harraffed; difeafe foon gains ground in a corps thus ill-conducted, which is not to be depended on in any combined arrangement, is unequal to any effort when its exertion may be required, and is foon ruined from a neglect of the firft and moft important of military duties.

Importance of exactnefs in the march.

12. The moft important exercife that troops can attend to is the march in column of route.—No calculation can be made on columns which do not move with an afcertained regularity, and great fatigue arifes to the foldier: A general cannot depend on execution, and therefore can make no combination of time or diftance in the arrival of columns at their feveral points: In many fituations an improper extended column will be liable to be beat in detail, and before it can be formed.—Troops that are feldom affembled for the manœuvres of war, can hardly feel the neceffity of the modes in which a confiderable body of infantry muft march and move.

Columns and their diftances.

13. The diftance of columns from each other, during a march, depends on the circumftances of ground, and the object of that march, with regard to future formations.—The more columns in which a confiderable corps marches, the lefs extent in depth will it take up, the lefs frequent will be its halts, and the more fpeedily can it form in order of battle to the front.

Combinations of march.

14. On the combinations of march, and on their execution by the component parts of the body, does the fuccefs of every military operation or enterprize depend.—To fulfil the intentions of the Chief every concurrent exertion of the fubordinate officer is required, and the beft calculated difpofitions, founded on local knowledge, muft fail if there is a want of that punctuality of execution which every general muft truft to, and has a right to expect from the leaders of his columns.

Nature of marches.

15. The compofition of the columns of an army muft always depend on the nature of the country and the objects of the movement.—Marches made *parallel* to the front of the enemy will generally be performed by the lines on which the army is encamped, each marching by its flank, and occupying when in march the fame extent of ground as when formed in

in line.—Marches made *perpendicular* to the front of the enemy, either advancing or retiring, will be covered by strong van or rear guards.—The columns will be formed of considerable divisions of the army, each generally composed both of cavalry and infantry; they will move at half or quarter distance, and the nature of the country will determine which arm precedes.

16. During a march to the *front*, the separation of the heads of the columns must unavoidably be considerable; but, when they approach the enemy, they must be so regulated and directed as to be able to occupy the intermediate spaces, if required to form in line.—Some one column must determine the relative situation of the others, and divisions must be more closed up than in a march to a flank, and in proportion as they draw near to the enemy must exactness and attention increase. The general, in consequence of the observations he has made, will determine on his disposition; the columns which are now probably halted and collected will be subdivided and multiplied; each body will be directed on its point of formation, and the component parts of each will in due time disengage from the general column, and form in line. General objects in marches to the front.

17. The safety of marches to the *rear* must depend on particular dispositions, on strong covering rear guards, and on the judicious choice of such posts as will check the pursuit of the enemy.—In these marches to front or rear, the divisions of the second line generally follow or lead those of the first, and all their formations are relative thereto. The heavy artillery and carriages of an army form a particular object of every march, and must be directed according to the circumstances of the day.—The safety of the march, by the arrangement of detachments and posts to cover the front, rear, or flanks of the columns, depends also on many local and temporary reasons, but are an essential part of the general disposition. General Objects in marches to the rear.

General Remarks.

1. ALL these OPERATIONS in Line, Column, or Echellon, are applied according to circumstances—As *Counter movements of Defence.*—*Movements of previous Formation.*—*Movements of Attack*—as well as *Movements of Retreat.*

2. Where there is equal skill in the execution of movements, the *defensive* alteration of position is sooner made than the *offensive* one, as much less ground is gone over to oppose than to attack; the great advantage however attending the latter is, that the measure being previously determined on, every thing is prepared for rapid execution before the design is obvious; whereas the counter-movement, depending on the appearance of the moment, requires quick observation, immediate decision, instant arrangement, and a disposition simple and that cannot produce hurry and confusion in the execution.—It is in these situations that the justness of distances and of the march in columns allows of decisive operations, which durst not be attempted, unless the moving body could be depended on as ready at every instant to form up in complete order.—Manœuvre will chiefly operate where an enemy is inferior in number, inexpert in movement, weakly posted, and where the weak point is found out and attacked before he can move to strengthen it. Advantage of offensive movements.

3. If the flank of one body is thrown forward, by the same means may that of the other be thrown back.—If one body prolongs its line to outflank, the other may by the same movement maintain its relative situation.—Whatever change of position is made by one body, the other may counteract it by a similar change.—If the wing of one body is refused, the wing of the other may be advanced to seize an advantage. Counter movements of defence.

4. A body of troops, which has a considerable march to make previous to the *attack*, must always approach an enemy in one or more columns, at open or other distances, according to circumstances.—Some general knowledge of an enemy's situation determines the manner in which he is approached, the composition of the columns, the flank of each which leads, and their combination in forming.—A nearer view determines a perseverance in the first direction, or a change in the leading flanks, and direction of the columns, in order to form in the speediest and most advantageous manner. Movements of previous formation.

5. *Original Positions* are taken up from the connected movements of columns of march, and entered upon in some of the modes prescribed.—Different feints are used to prevent an early knowledge of the position intended to be taken, or the point to be attacked, and light troops Original Positions

troops, cavalry and artillery, where the ground, &c. allows, cover all movements of the infantry.---Such original position is either *parallel* or *oblique* to that of the enemy posted, and is often changed previous to the attack.---When a considerable corps of troops is to act offensively, it must form in line at latest within 1200, or 1500 paces of a posted enemy, unless the ground particularly favours, and covers from the fire of his artillery, the enfilade of which is what chiefly prevents bodies in column from approaching nearer; and that space, under the unceasing fire of their own artillery, troops in line will march over in 18 minutes.--- However quickly columns could move up close to an enemy, yet, as they must then form in line, no time would be gained, and their loss be heavier than when the original formation is made at a due distance.

Movement of attack.

6. From *parallel* position the attack is made either in line, or by a flank of the line in echellon, that flank being reinforced, and the other refused; or, from a new and advantageous position taken up and not provided against by the enemy.---From *oblique* position the attack is directed against a comparatively weak point of the enemy.--Attacks from the *center* are more liable to enfilade, and sooner guarded against than from the flank.---It is generally wished to post one wing, and refuse it, and to make the attack with the other, reinforced by detached corps, to which the whole strength of the second line is endeavoured to be added: and for these purposes the movement in *echellon*, the *change of position* which gains the flank of the enemy, the *march* on one or more lines, and the *passage* of lines, when redoubled ones are destined to replace each other, are particularly applied.

Movements of retreat.

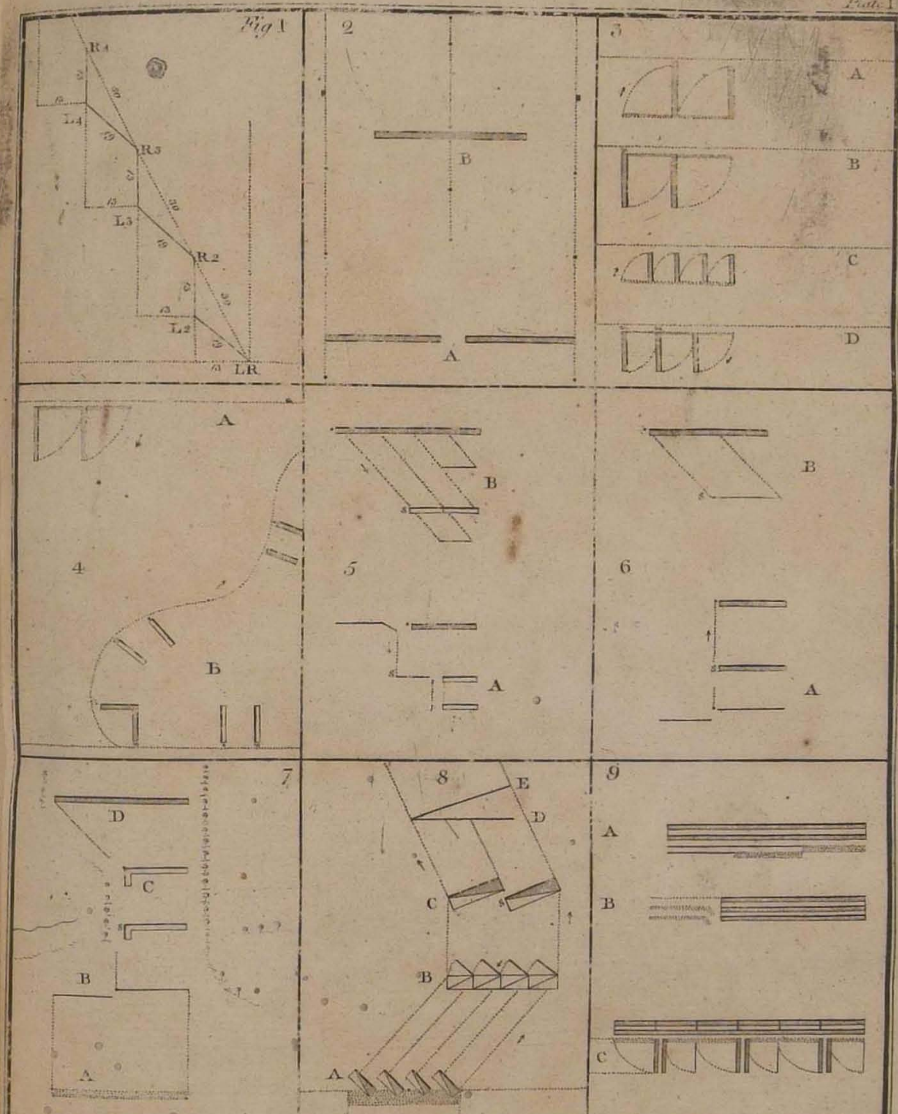
7. General movements of Retreat executed by an army must be considered as combinations of columns of march, covered by positions and a strong rear guard.--Troops are occasionally taken out of the retiring columns of march to occupy positions and heights; they remain till the rear has passed, and then become the rear guard; this they continue to be, till they find other troops in like manner posted; these last in their turn become also the rear guard, and in this way are the troops of columns in such situations relieved.--- A rear guard will fall back by the *retreat in line*--the *chequered retreat*---the *passage of lines* ---the *echellon* changes of position.

8. When a considerable line formed in front of an enemy must retire or relinquish an attack made, or intended, one wing ought to be originally so posted, that the other, by some of the above movements, can fall back upon it, and take a new position, being protected in the operation by the enfilade of the posted wing which in its turn can fall back upon the other.--The mixed considerations, and support of CAVALRY, INFANTRY, and ARTILLERY, on such occasions, require a very intricate discussion.

D. D.

End of FOURTH PART.

Plate 1



The Positions are in general represented

The first by Yellow

Intermediate: Blue, Buff, Green

The last by Red

The dotted Lines & Arrows express the direction of the Movement.

The round Dots express the position of Leaders of Divisions.

The Square Dots ▪ express points of March or Formation.

The Letters AB.&c. denote different Movements in the same Figure.

Carpenter Sculp. London

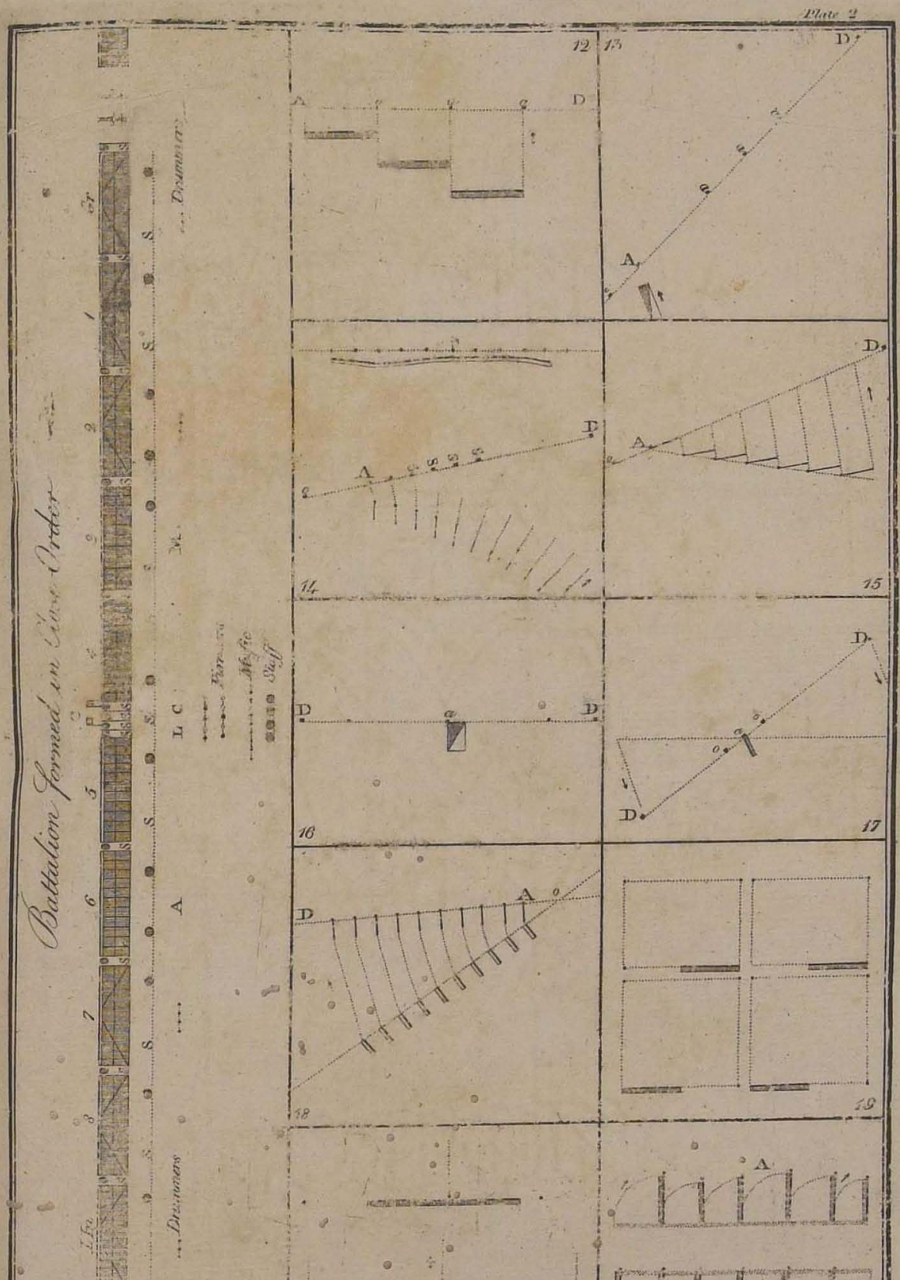


Plate 2
Battalion formed in Line Order
Drummers
Pioneers
Music
Staff
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
Carpenter Sculp. London

Plate 3

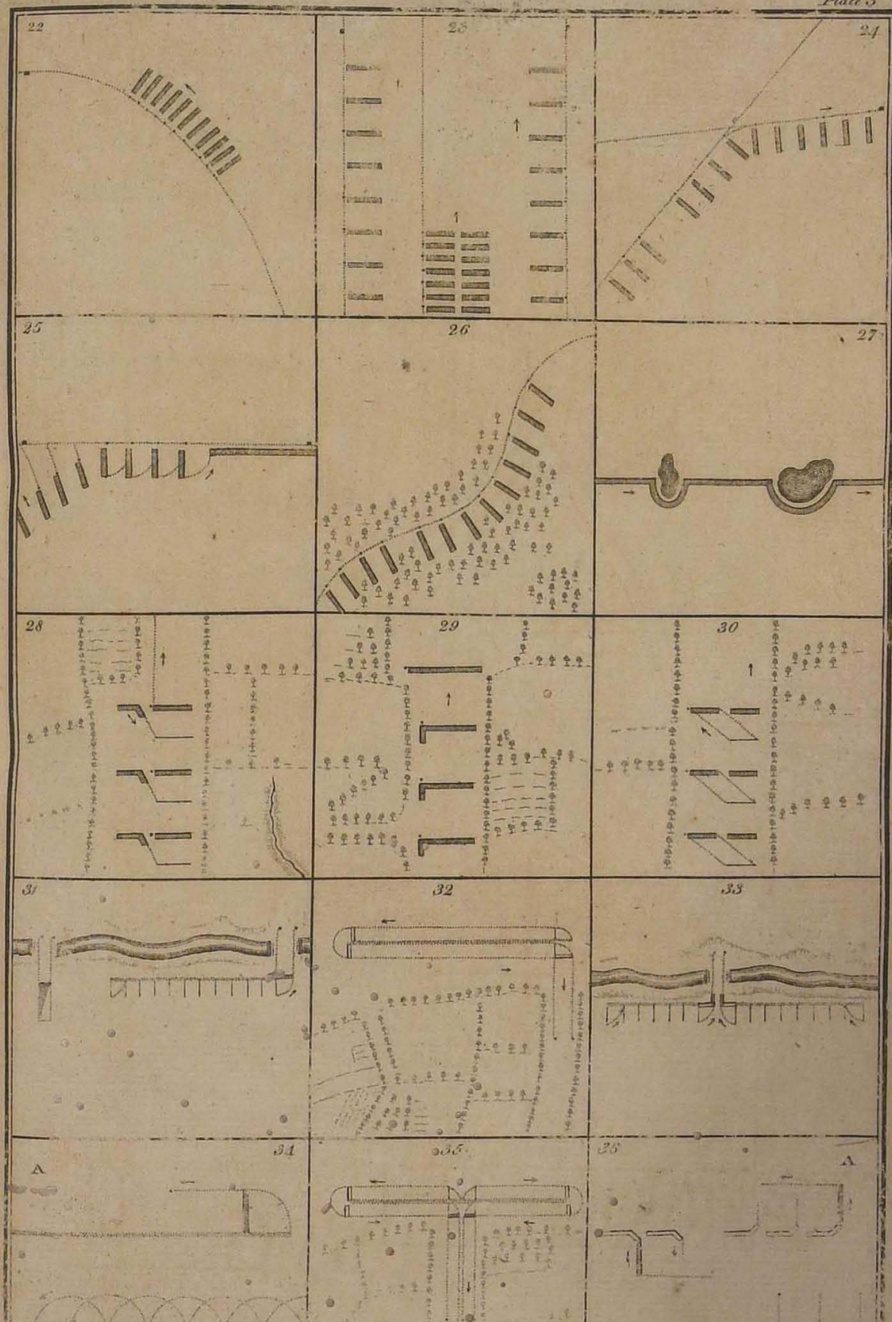
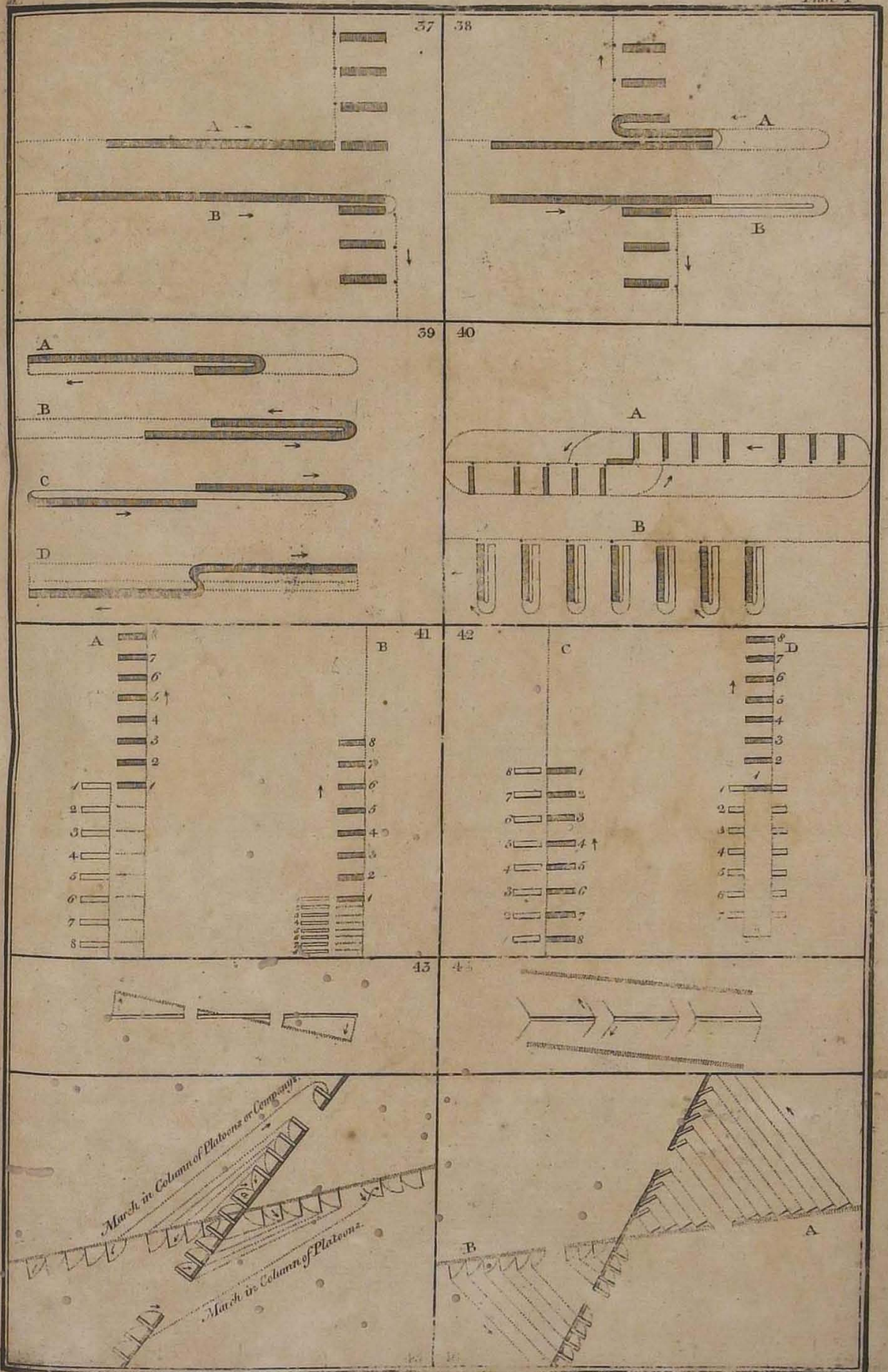


Plate 4.


37
A
B
38
A
B
39
A
B
C
D
40
A
B
41
A
B
42
C
D
43
44
March in Column of Platoons or Companys.
March in Column of Platoons.
B
A

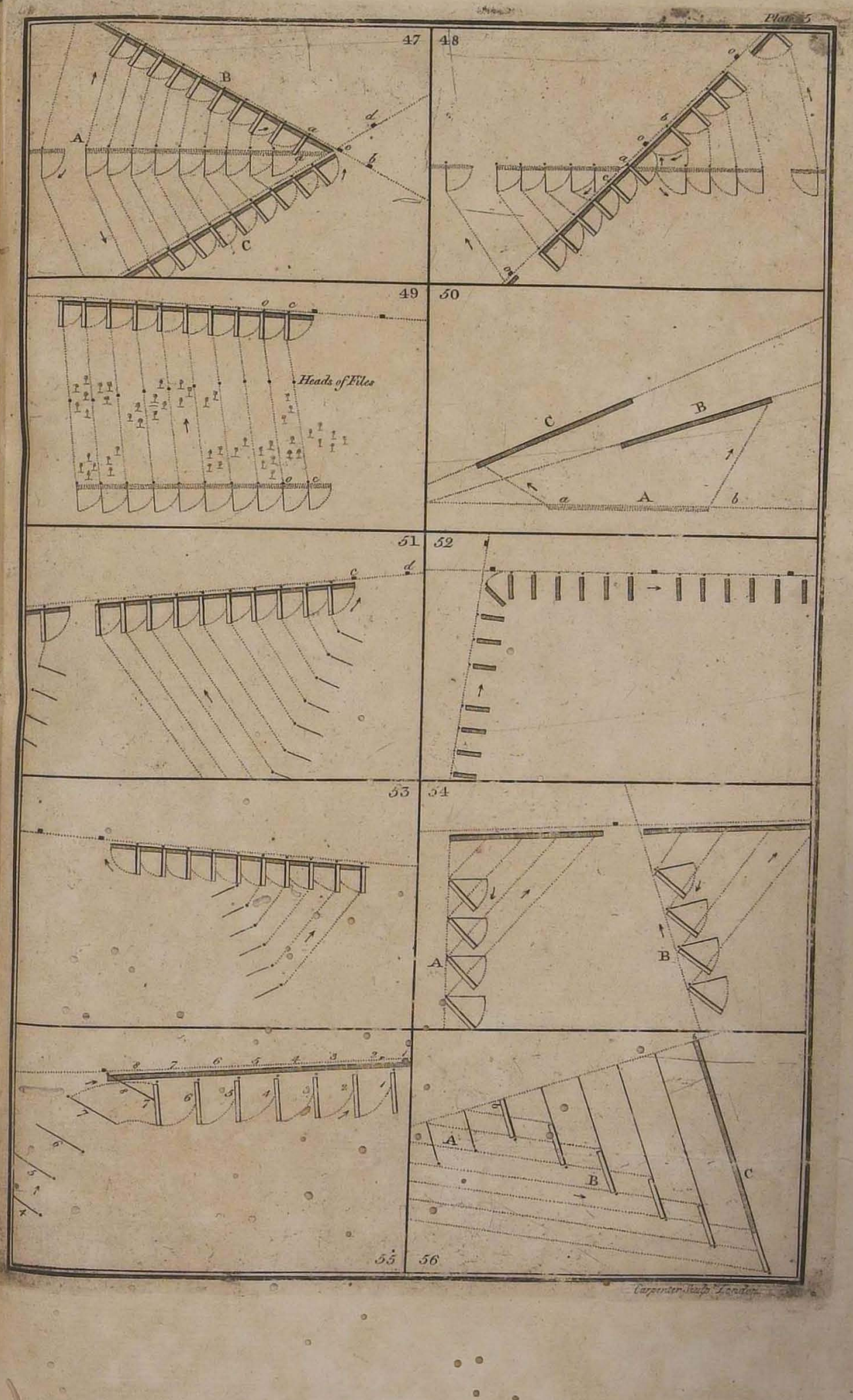
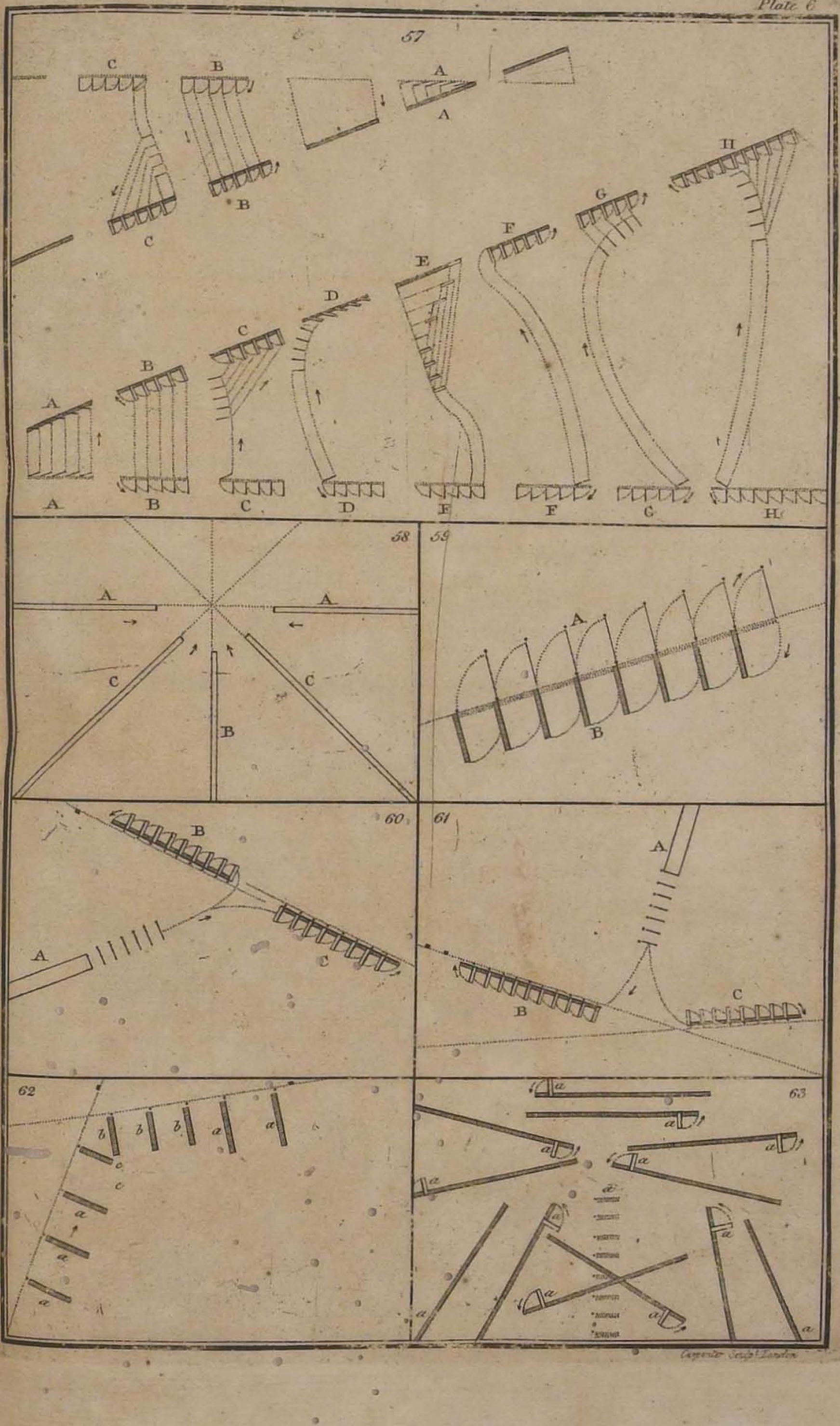
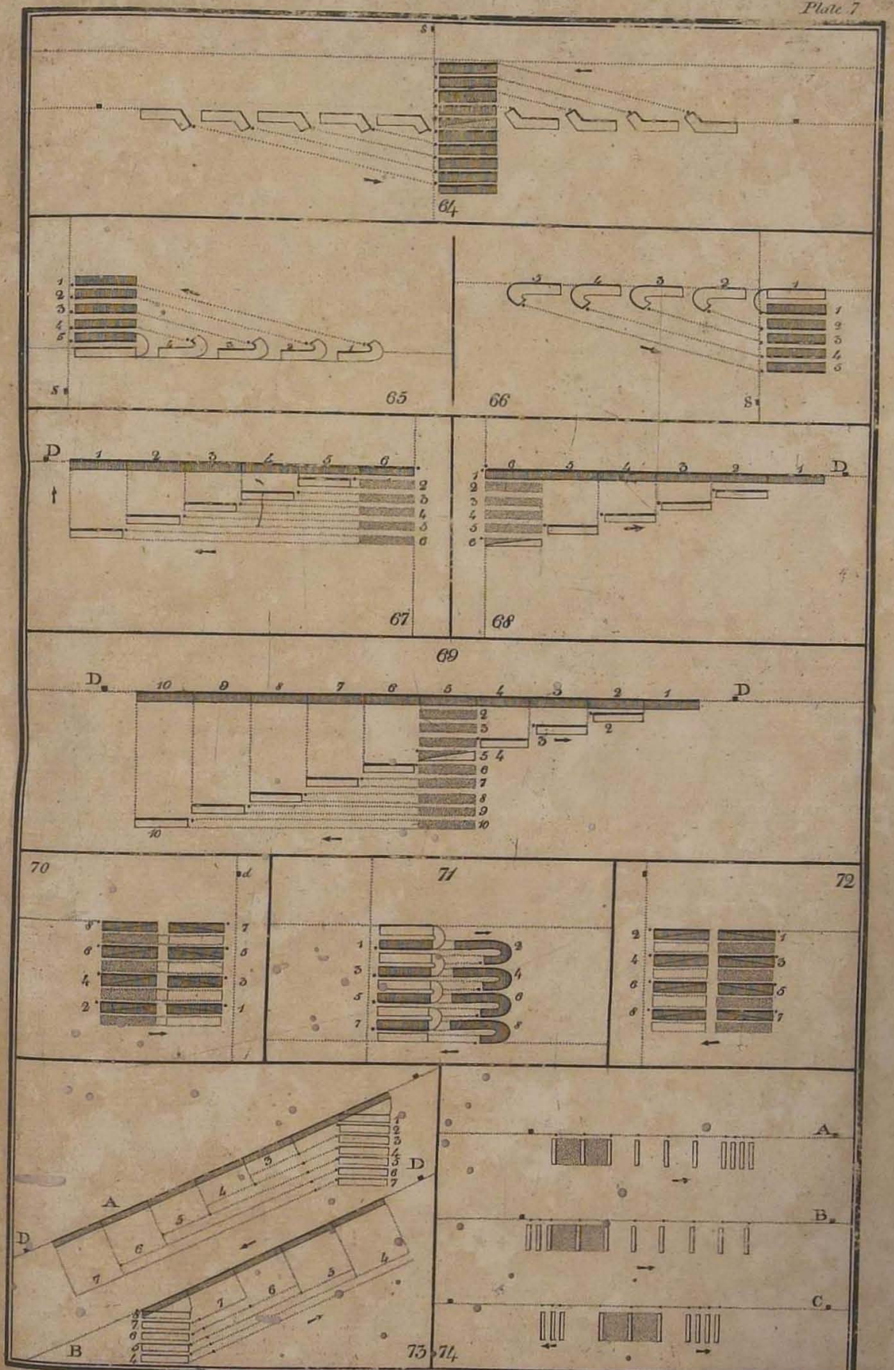


Plate 5
47
A
B
C
a
d
o
b
48
a
b
c
o
49
o
c
Heads of Files
50
A
B
C
a
b
51
c
d
52
53
54
A
B
55
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
56
A
B
C
Carpenter Sculp London



Carpenter Sculp.t London

Plate 7.



Carpenter Sculpt London

Plate 8

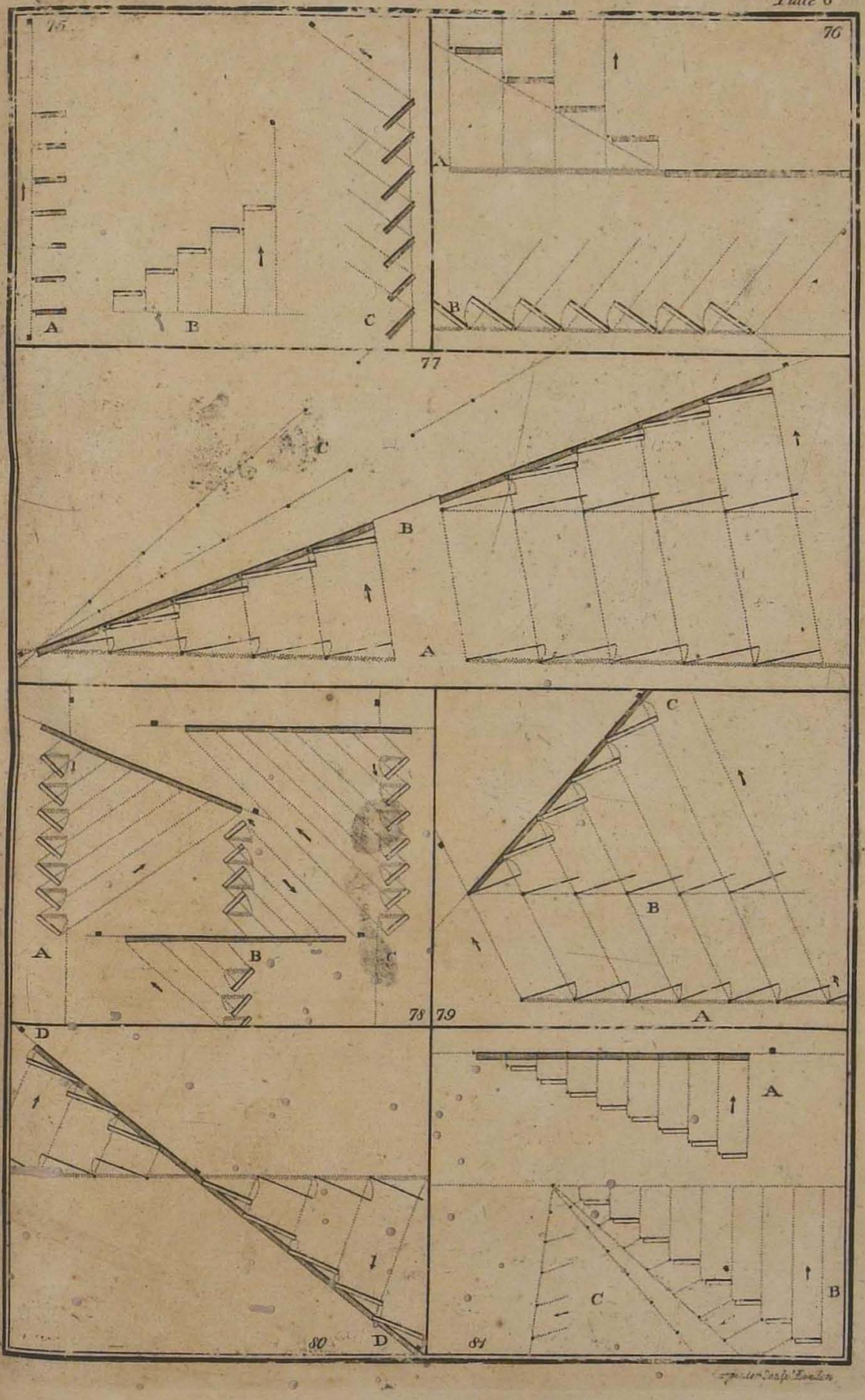
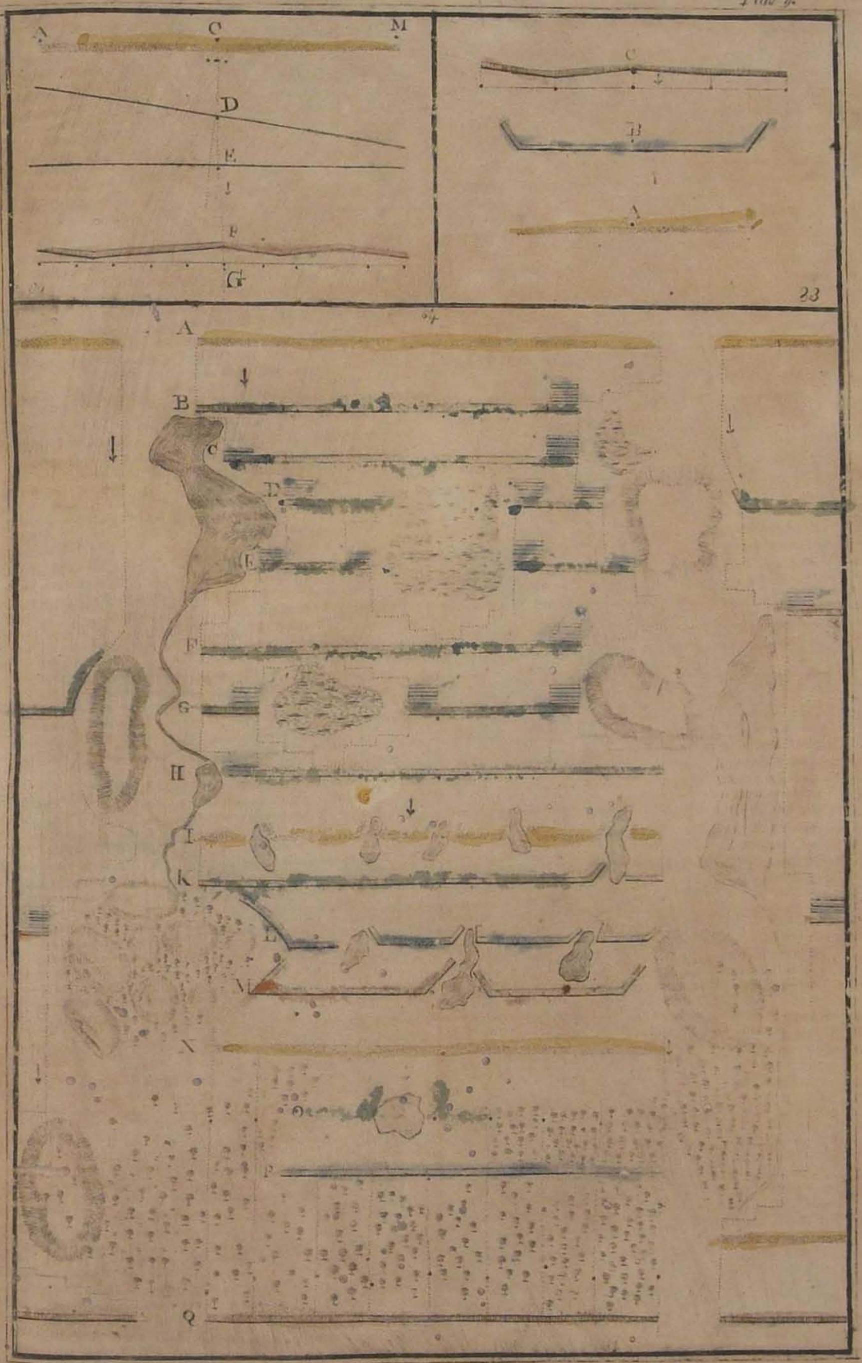
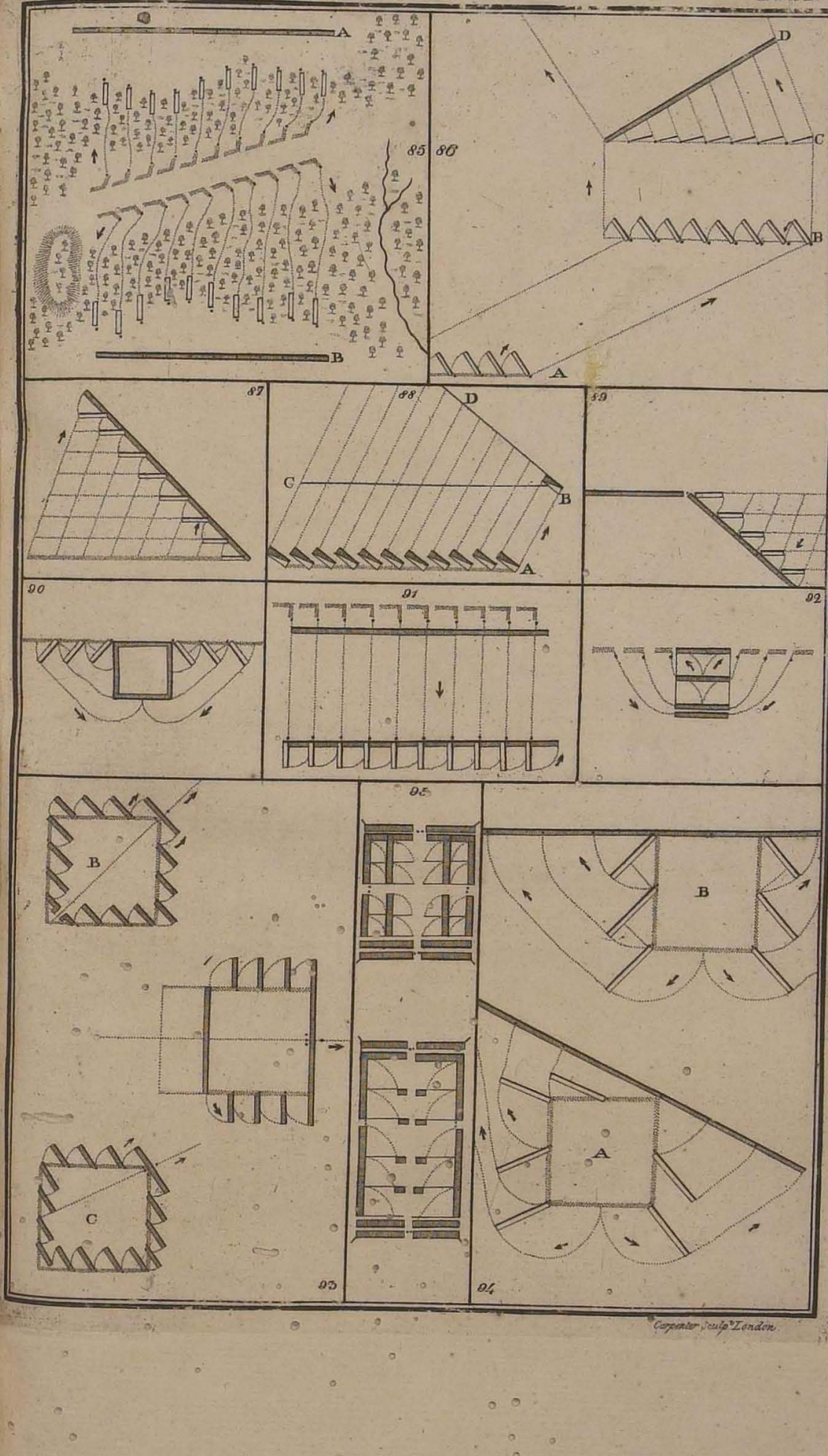


Plate 9.



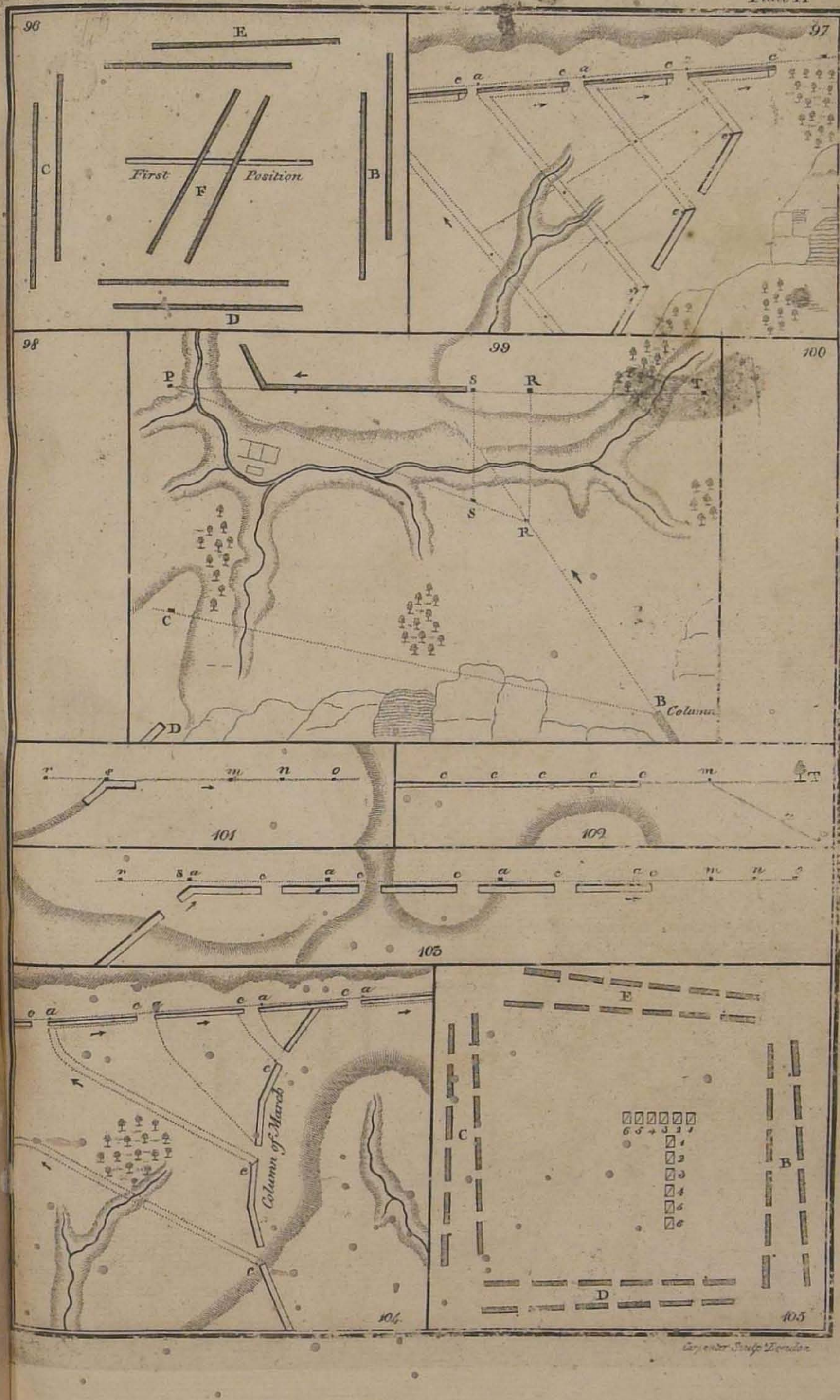
Engraved by Saml. Dew 28th of December Wale Asylum 1801

Plate 10



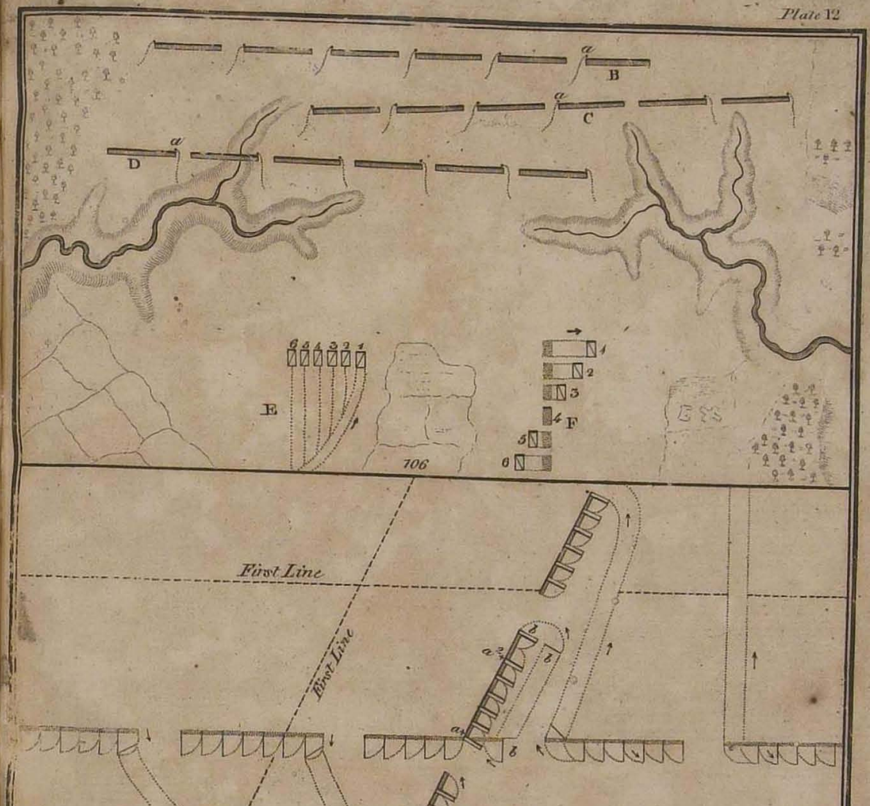
Carpenter Sculp.t London

Plate 11

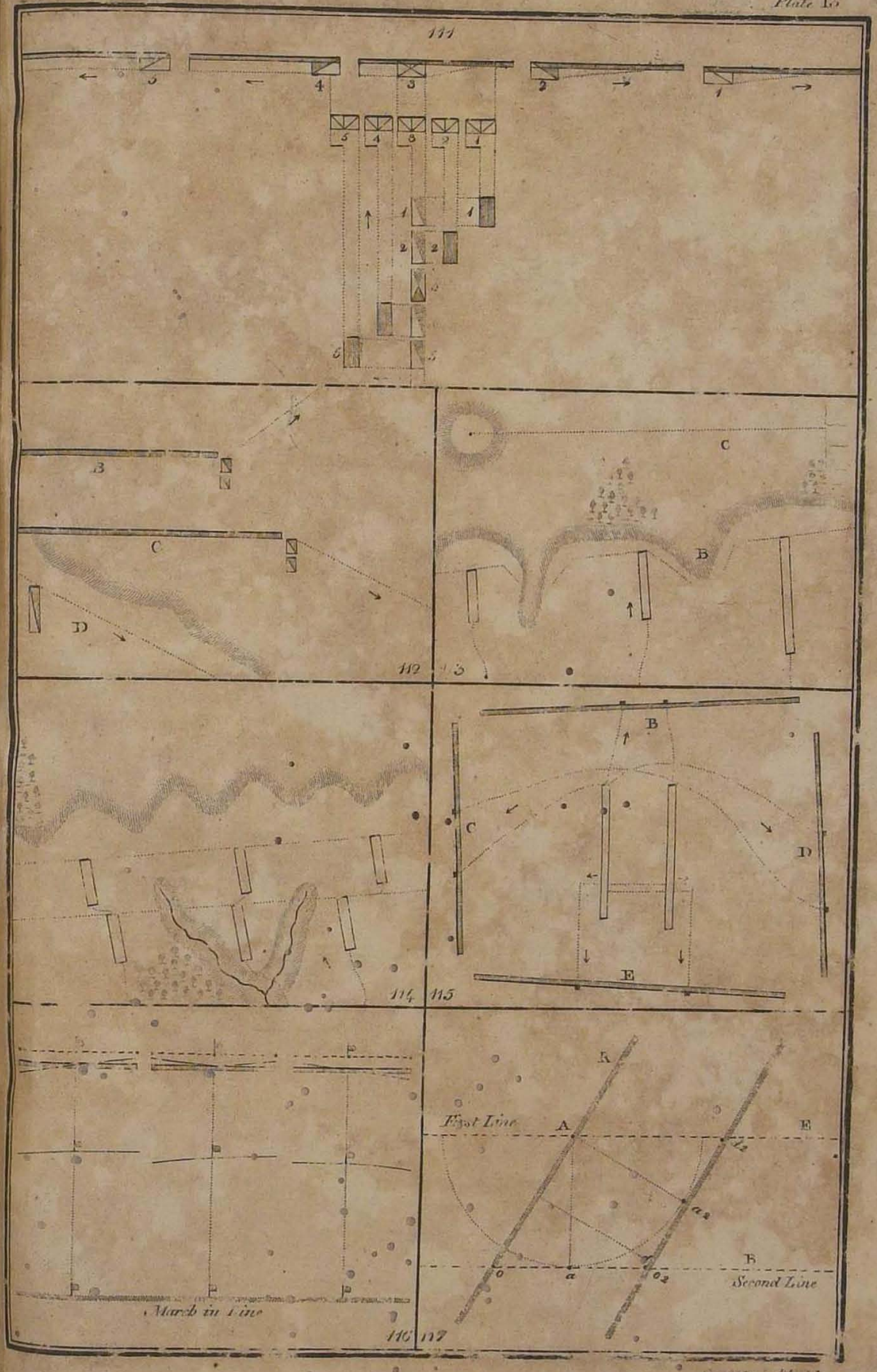


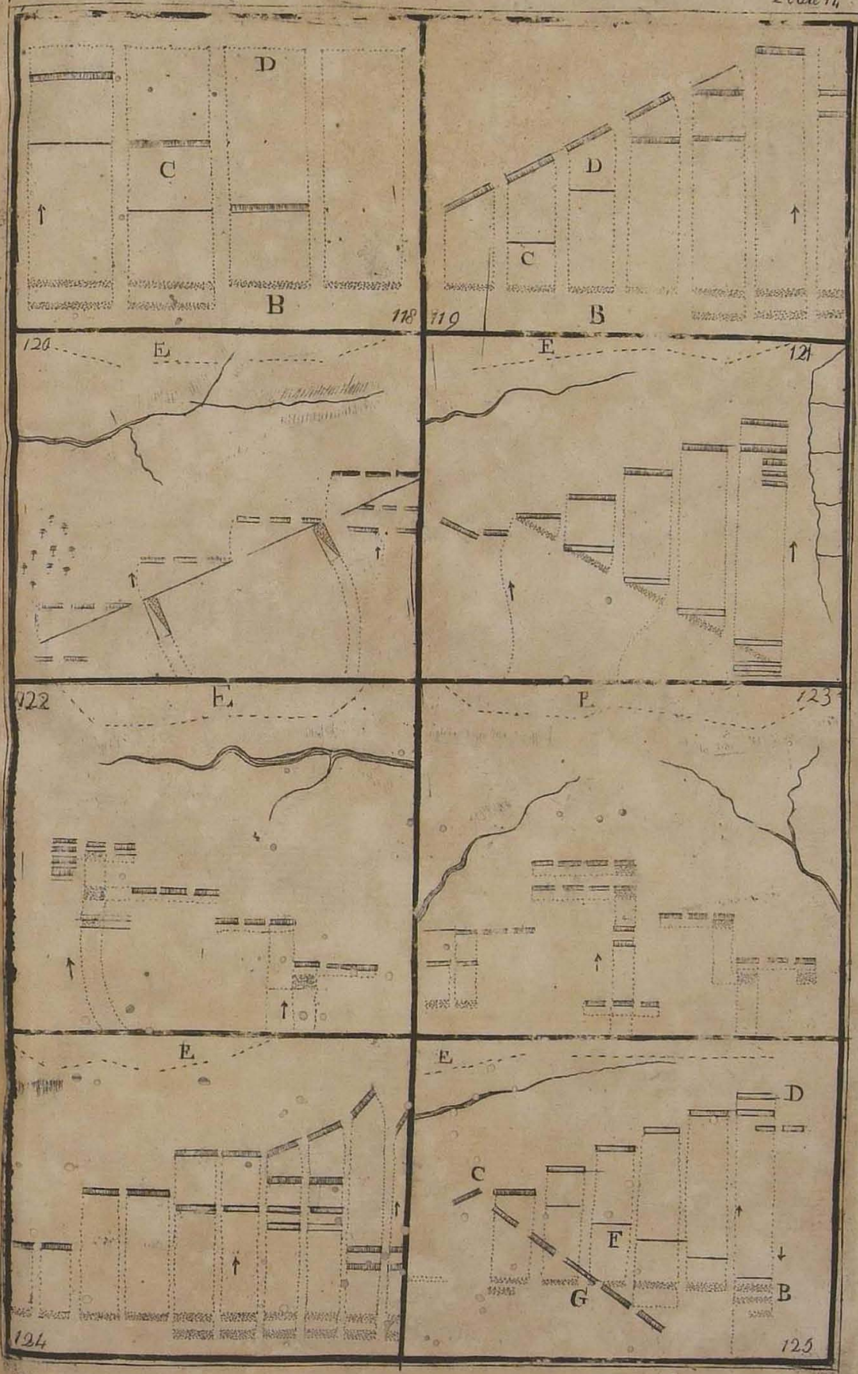
Carpenter Sculp. London

Plate 12

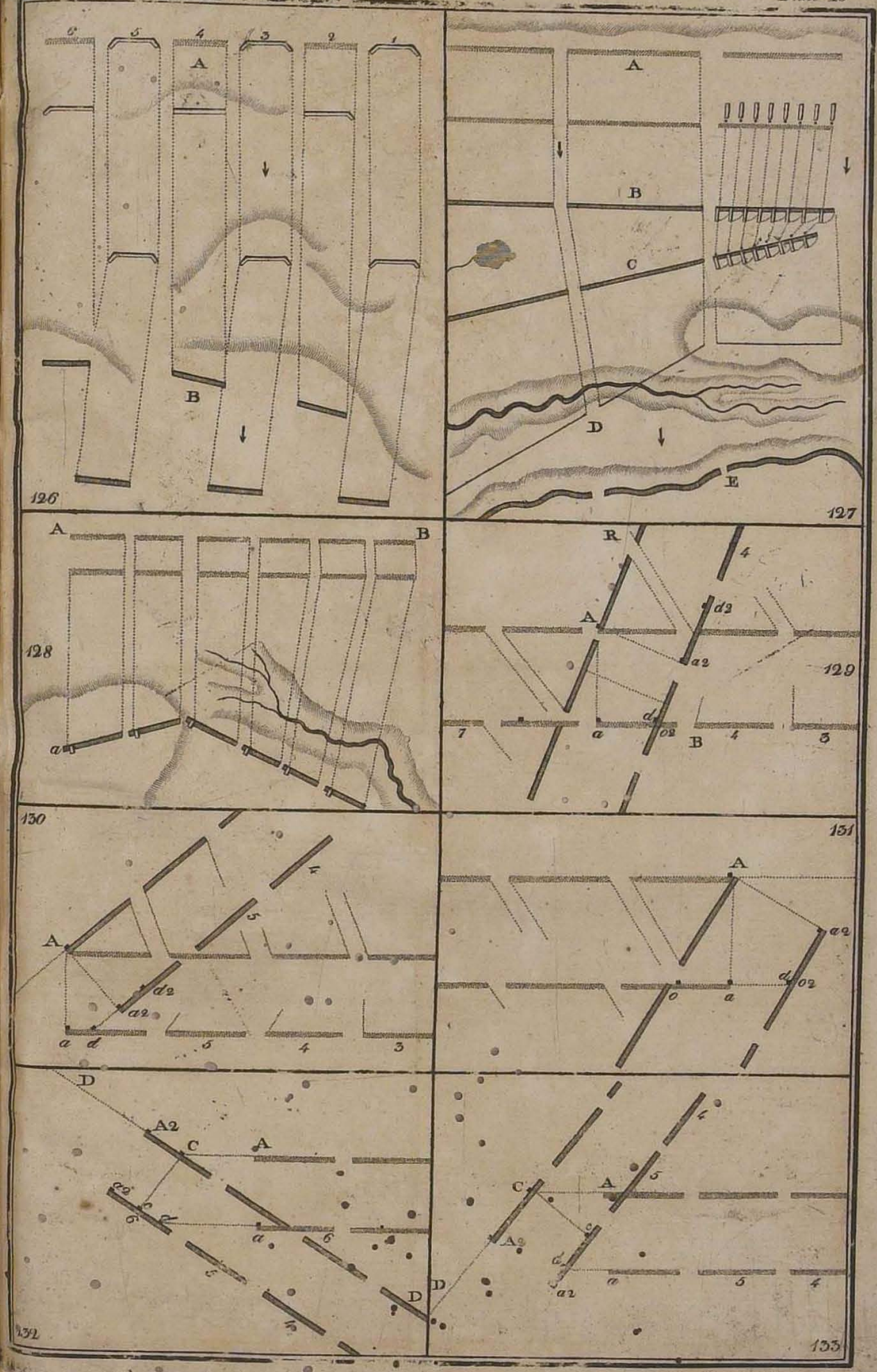


Carpenter Sculp^t London

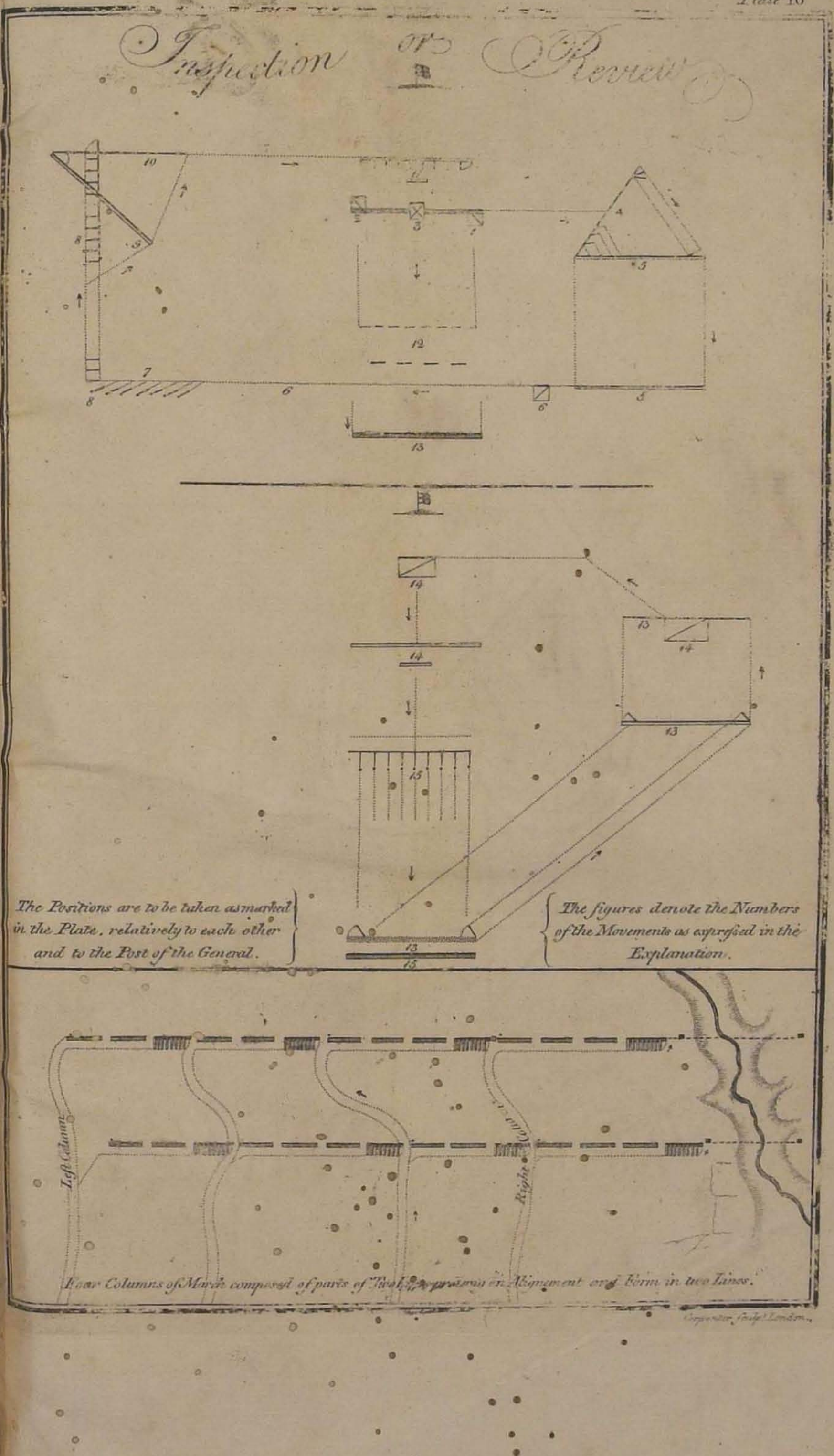

111
112
113
114
115
116
117
March in Line
First Line
Second Line
K
A
E
B
a
o
C
D



Saml. Dove Sculp
M: Asylum



Carpenter Sculp.t London



Carpenter, Sculp. London.